AVE ROMA IMMORTALIS

FIRST LATIN LESSONS - SCOTT

GIFT OF
Publisher

SIGILLVM · VNIVERSITATIS · CALIFORNIENSIS
LVX
FIAT
MDCCCLXVIII
EX LIBRIS

Education dept.

760
S426
f

UNIVERSITY OF
BERKELEY

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA



THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)

The Lake Classical Series

First Latin Lessons

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT
PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL LANGUAGES IN
OHIO UNIVERSITY, ATHENS, OHIO

With Selections for Reading
from *Decem Fabulae*

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO ATLANTA NEW YORK

Gift of Publishers
EDUCATION DEPT.

Copyright 1922, by
Scott, Foresman and Company

261.7

PREFACE

The fact that the work of the first and second years of the high school Latin course should give value in itself, apart from being merely a preparation for later study, has come to be generally recognized. The number of Latin pupils whose study of the subject does not go beyond these first two years is very large in proportion to the total number studying Latin, and probably this has always been the case. But in the effort to provide for those whose capacities and opportunities make it possible for them to continue the study of Latin through the high school and into the college, the needs of the larger group whose opportunities were certain to be more narrowly limited have not always been taken into account. Further, the fact that the values which we recognized were so far in the distance has probably tended to diminish the number who chose to continue beyond the two-year stage.

Evidently one of the chief values to be gained from two years' study of Latin is a better knowledge of the English language. This should involve on the one hand a clearer comprehension of grammatical structure and on the other an enlarged vocabulary and an increased accuracy in the use of words. If these are to be among the major objectives, they should be recognized in the organization of the material which is first presented.

But young pupils will not study patiently mere lists of words for any long time. Words must be employed in the expression of thought if they are to make an impression on the mind of the boy or girl which is sufficiently vivid to add to the store of memory. The exercises through which the

vocabulary of the Latin language is to be made familiar should have something of the same kind of appeal as that made by the reading material employed in the first steps of learning to read the pupil's own language.

The material presented in this book has been prepared in accordance with the point of view above stated. Its distinctive features are the following:

1. The study of English derivatives is introduced from the first through exercises which illustrate the use of the words given.

2. The principles of English grammar are presented in connection with the early Lessons in such a way that they may be reviewed or studied if necessary, while they may easily be omitted with classes which have mastered them.

3. Connected paragraphs for translation are employed instead of isolated sentences, in order to make possible the more rapid acquisition of vocabulary.

4. The vocabularies and study of forms have been so arranged as to lead up to the reading of easy plays dealing with classical stories and myths, which are likely to make a more natural appeal to the beginner than *Caesar* or *Viri Romae*.

5. Regularly only one new principle or set of forms is introduced in a Lesson.

6. The Lesson vocabularies are small, never exceeding ten words and often not reaching that number.

7. A relatively small number of English sentences to be written in Latin has been given. In their place completion exercises have been employed, through which the pupil's attention can be concentrated on the specific usage to be taught.

8. Most of the irregular inflections have been postponed to the second year.

9. Only the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods of the verb are given. The forms and uses of the subjunctive

are presented in *A Junior Latin Reader*, the second book of this same series.

10. The small amount of syntax or form study given in each lesson, and the simplicity of the reading matter will commonly make it possible to complete a lesson in a single recitation. Naturally no such plan can be made to meet the needs of every class, and the teacher may sometimes choose to omit or leave for later review part of the exercises of a lesson.

The plays "Horatius", "Circe", "Polyphemus", "Reditus Ulixis", and "Medicus" are used by the kind permission of Miss Ryle, the only survivor of the co-authors of *Decem Fabulae*, from which they are taken.[1] A few changes have been made in the text of the plays, chiefly for the purpose of decreasing the vocabulary or avoiding idioms which seemed likely to prove difficult for young pupils.

The character *j* has been used to represent the consonant value of *i* in the spelling of Latin words in order to enable the young pupil to recognize more easily the relation between Latin words and their English derivatives. The origin of such words as *injury*, *juvenile*, *conjunction*, and the like is more readily seen by the beginner when the Latin words from which these words are derived are spelled *injuria*, *juvenis*, *conjunctus*, than when the classical spelling is used. Other variations from the classical spelling have been made for the same reason. Among them are *afficio*, *appropinquo*, *expecto*. The uncontracted genitive of *filius* and nouns in *-ium* is given to avoid confusion. The standard of spelling (including the use of *j*) represents in general the prevalent usage in Latin textbooks in this country and in England until a comparatively recent period. If the pupil should at a later time in his course use textbooks which employ a slightly different spelling he will have little difficulty in becoming accustomed

---

[1] Captains Paine and Mainwaring, who were Miss Ryle's associates in the writing of these plays, were numbered among those who gave up their lives in the World War.

to the forms which are used. Our Latin textbooks have never at any time been uniform in spelling, and it seems preferable in such a book as this to adopt the standard which will give the greatest value to the large number of those who are unable to continue the study for more than a few years.

The author wishes to make acknowledgment of obligation to Professor H. C. Morrison of the University of Chicago for encouragement in undertaking the preparation of this book, to Miss Marie Denneen of the University High School of Minnesota, Professor Victor D. Hill of Ohio University, and Professor F. W. Sanford of the University of Nebraska, who have kindly read the proofs. Professor Sanford and Professor W. L. Carr of Oberlin have also given valuable assistance in the preparation of the manuscript.

The colored picture of the Roman Forum is from *Le Forum Romain et la Voie Sacrée*, by M. l'Abbé H. Thédenat, membre de l'Institut, and is here used with the consent of the publishers, Plon-Nourrit et C[ie], of Paris, France. The other illustrations in color which are presented in this book are reproduced with the permission of G. Bell and Sons, London, England, from their admirable series of Latin Picture Cards, by Grainger.

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT.

OHIO UNIVERSITY
ATHENS, OHIO

CONTENTS

PAGE

Preface . . . iii

List of Illustrations . . . xi

Pronunciation . . . xiii

Elementary Principles of Grammar . . . xix

Lesson I. Importance of Latin . . . 1

II. Subject, Object, and Predicate (Singular Number) . . . 4

III. Agreement of Adjectives . . . 7

IV. Plural Number: Nominative and Accusative Cases 9

V. Genitive Case . . . 12

VI. Indirect Object: the Dative Case . . . 14

VII. Indirect Object: the Dative Case (continued) . . 16

VIII. Dative with Adjectives . . . 18

IX. Prepositions: the Ablative Case . . . 20

X. Nouns of the First Declension . . . 22

First Review Lesson . . . 26

XI. Conjugation of sum in the Present Tense . . . 28

XII. Verbs of the First Conjugation: Present Tense . 30

XIII. Nouns of the Second Declension Ending in -um . . 33

XIV. Nouns of the Second Declension Ending in -us . . 36

XV. Nouns of the Second Declension Ending in -er . . . 39

XVI. Summary of the Second Declension . . . 41

XVII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions . 43

XVIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (continued) . . . 46

XIX. Passive Voice, Present Indicative . . . 49

Second Review Lesson . . . 52

XX. Declension and Use of hic . . . 53

XXI. Prepositions with the Accusative . . . 56

XXII. Second Conjugation . . . 58

XXIII. Declension and Use of ille . . . 60

PAGE

XXIV. Imperfect Active of the First and Second Conjugations 62
XXV. Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective 65
XXVI. Imperfect Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations 67
XXVII. Declension and Use of is 70
Third Review Lesson 73
XXVIII. Future Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations 75
XXIX. Imperfect and Future Indicative of sum 77
XXX. Possessives of the Third Person 79
XXXI. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -um, Masculine and Feminine Genders 82
XXXII. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -um, Neuter Gender 85
XXXIII. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -ium, Masculine and Feminine Genders 88
XXXIV. Nouns of the Third Declension with the Genitive Plural in -ium, Neuter Gender 90
XXXV. Perfect Tense, Active Voice 93
Fourth Review Lesson 96
XXXVI. Past Passive Participle 98
XXXVII. Principal Parts: Stems of Verbs 100
XXXVIII. Perfect Indicative Passive: Past Infinitive 103
XXXIX. Verbs of the Third Conjugation Ending in -ō, Present Indicative 106
XL. Verbs of the Third Conjugation Ending in -iō, Present Indicative 108
XLI. Ablative of Means 110
XLII. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation 113
XLIII. Imperfect Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations 116
XLIV. Reflexive Pronouns 118
Fifth Review Lesson 120
XLV. Future Tense of the Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present Infinitives 122

PAGE
XLVI. Relative Pronoun 125
XLVII. Adjectives of the Third Declension with Two Endings and Three Endings 127
XLVIII. Adjectives of the Third Declension with One Ending 130
XLIX. Nouns of the Fourth Declension 132
L. Conjugation of **eō** and Its Compounds 134
LI. Expressions of Time with the Ablative and the Accusative 136

Sixth Review Lesson 139
LII. Imperative 141
LIII. Conjugation of **possum** 144
LIV. Personal Pronouns 146
LV. Past Perfect Tense 149
LVI. Declension of **īdem** 151
LVII. Future Perfect: Synopsis of Verbs 154
LVIII. Dative with Special Verbs 157
LIX. Forms of Questions 159

Seventh Review Lesson 161

HORĀTIUS 163
Vocative of Proper Names in **-ius** 164
Declension of **quīdam** 164
Conjugation of **volō** 165
Declension of **aliquis** 166

Lesson LX. Present Participle 172
LXI. Ablative Absolute 175
LXII. Quotations: Indirect Discourse 178
LXIII. Nouns of the Fifth Declension: Impersonal Verbs . 180
LXIV. Cardinal Numerals 184

CIRCĒ 187
Dative with Compounds 187
Ablative of Description 188
Comparison of Adjectives 190
Declension of Comparatives 191

PAGE

Comparison of Adjectives in -er 192
Special Adjectives in -lis 193
Adjectives Compared Irregularly 194
Formation of Adverbs 195
Comparison of Adverbs 196
Irregular Adverbs 197

POLYPHĒMUS 198

REDITUS ULĪXIS 206

Exercises for Translation into Latin 216

MEDICUS 220

Latin Songs 224

Grammatical Appendix 231

Supplementary Readings
I. The Story of Perseus 275
II. The Story of Hercules 287

Latin-English Vocabulary 323

English-Latin Vocabulary 354

Index 361

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

		PAGE
The Roman Forum (Restoration—*Colored*)		*Frontispiece*
Roman Farmer with Plow		6
Roman Children at Play		9
An Arch over a Roman Road		11
Roman Writing Materials		13
Roman Sword and Scabbard		17
View of Ancient Rome (Reconstruction)		25
Roman Seal Rings		27
Ruins of a Roman Aqueduct		38
A Roman Farm Scene (*Colored*)	*Facing*	45
Roman Coins		51
Three Roman Boys		54
Roman Javelins		55
Street of Pompeii		69
Roman Drinking Cups		72
Manner of Wearing the Toga		80
Roman Standards		91
The Capitoline Hill (Restoration)		105
The Appian Way in the Time of Augustus		112
Theater of Pompeii		115
A Roman Harbor (*Colored*)	*Facing*	116
Roman Helmets		124
View of Modern Rome from the Capitoline Hill		138
Entrance to a Roman Fortified Camp		143
View on the Appian Way		153
Roman Spoons and Bowl		156
A Roman Road (*Colored*)	*Facing*	163
Ruins of the Coliseum		171
Roman Oil Vault		174
Victims for a Roman Sacrifice		180
Roman Lamps		181
The Pyramid of Cestius		182
Roman Table		185
A Street Scene (*Colored*)	*Facing*	220
Roman Buckles		259
Jupiter		278
Minerva		281
Juno		290
Hercules		305

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

PRONUNCIATION

I. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no **w**.

a. The letter *j* was not introduced until long after the time of the great Roman writers. Its sound was represented by *i*, which was used both as a vowel and as a consonant. But since *j* was used in the spelling of Latin words during the period in which the greater number of the English derivatives from Latin were brought into the English language, and since its use is helpful to beginners in learning the pronunciation of new words, it is retained in this book. The sounds of *u* and *v* were also represented originally by one letter.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

II. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y.**[1] The other letters are consonants.

THE ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

III. The vowels in Latin are either long or short. In this book long vowels are indicated by a mark placed above them. A vowel which is unmarked is short. The vowel sounds are indicated in the following table:

ā = *a* in *father*	**a**[2] = first *a* in *ahá*
ē = *a* in *fade*	**e** = *e* in *net*
ī = *i* in *machine*	**i** = *i* in *this*
ō = *o* in *holy*	**o** = *o* in *domain*
ū = *u* in *rude*	**u** = *u* in *full*

---

[1] **y** is seldom used. Its sound is the same as that of *u* in the French language or *ü* in German.

[2] Like **ā**, but pronounced more quickly.

IV. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be noted:

c and **ch** have the sound of *k*.

g has only one sound, that heard in *go*.

j is equivalent to *y* in *yes*.

s has only the sound heard in *say*.

t always has the sound heard in *top*. It does not combine with *i* to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation*.

v has the sound of *w*.

x has only the sound of *ks*, as in *exercise*.

bs and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*.

ph and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*.

DIPHTHONGS

V. A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in one syllable. The diphthongs are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe,** and **ui.** Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*	**eu** = *eu* in *feud*
au = *ou* in *out*	**oe** = *oi* in *boil*
ei = *ei* in *vein*	**ui** = almost[1] *ui* in *ruin*

SYLLABLES

VI. A syllable is either a group of letters the sounds of which are taken together in pronunciation, or a vowel or diphthong which is taken by itself in pronunciation. The following words are divided into syllables by hyphens: *ac-ci-dent, re-li-a-ble*. A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong. The rules for the division of Latin words into syllables are as follows:

(1) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō, ha-be-ō.**

(2) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows. But if the second of two consonants is **l** or **r,**

---

[1] The u is shorter than in the English word, and the vowels are more closely blended.

and if the combination can be pronounced at the beginning of a word, as **bl**, **br**, etc., the two are taken with the vowel which follows, like a single consonant[1]: **man-dā-re, car-dō**; but **fe-bris, ā-cris.**

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

VII. (1) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **dō-num, cau-tus.**

(2) A syllable is regularly long if its vowel is followed by two consonants: **con-dō, mit-tō.**

a. But if the two consonants consist of a mute[2] followed by **l** or **r** the syllable is short, unless it has a long vowel or a diphthong: **pă-tris.**

(3) All other syllables are short: **me-mor, a-grī.**

a. **x** and **z** have the value of two consonants because they represent a combination of sounds. A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by either of these double consonants.

ACCENT

VIII. In pronouncing a word of two or more syllables we make one of the syllables more prominent than any other. Thus in the word *mem-o-ry* we make the first syllable prominent. This prominence in pronunciation given to a syllable is called *accent.* In the word *memory* the accent is said to fall on the first syllable. The accent of Latin words is determined by the following rules:

IX. (1) In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: **lū′men.**

(2) In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last, if it is long, otherwise on the second syllable from the last: **au-dī′re, con-ten′tus, me′mi-nī.**

a. The syllable before the last is called the *penult;* the second from the last is called the *antepenult.*

---

[1] In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: **ad-it.**

[2] The mutes are **b, p, c, k, q, g, d, t, ph, th, ch.**

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

THE NOUN

(1) Words which are used to denote persons or things are called *nouns.* Thus the words *boy, girl, house, tree, city* are nouns. Nouns are also used as the names of qualities or ideas, such as *bravery, kindness, happiness, truth, love, patriotism.*

THE VERB

(2) In the sentences *The boy walks* and *The tree has fallen* the words *walks* and *has fallen* denote actions. Such words are called *verbs.* Some verbs denote mere existence or continuance in a place rather than action. In the sentences *He is in the city* and *We shall stay here, is* and *shall stay* are verbs.

THE ADJECTIVE

(3) We often use some other word with a noun to tell something about the appearance or character of the person or thing to which the noun refers. Thus, in the expressions *tall trees* and *brave men* the words *tall* and *brave* tell something about the trees and the men. Such words are called adjectives.

a. There are a few adjectives which merely show what person or thing is meant without telling any quality of the person or thing. Such are *this, that, other, same. The, a,* and *an* belong to this class. These last three words are called *articles.*

THE PRONOUN

(4) In the sentence *The man saw the boy, but did not speak to him,* the word *him* is used instead of *boy.* A word which is used instead of a noun is called a *pronoun.* Pronouns, as well as nouns, are used as subjects or as direct objects.

(5) The word instead of which a pronoun is used is called its *antecedent.* In the sentence given above *boy* is the antecedent of *him.*

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS

(6) The pronouns *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, and *they* are called *personal* pronouns.

When *who*, *which*, and *what* are used to introduce questions they are called *interrogative* pronouns. When they are used in sentences which are not questions they are called *relative* pronouns. Thus, in the sentence *Who gave you a knife? who* is an interrogative pronoun. In the sentence *It was my mother who gave me a knife*, *who* is a relative pronoun. Sometimes *that* is used instead of *who* or *which*. Thus, *The man that just came is my uncle*. When so used, *that* is a relative pronoun.

(7) Point out the nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs in the following sentences:

1. The heavy storm had injured many trees. 2. My father has read this book. 3. The horses draw a heavy load. 4. Your uncle built a new house. 5. My letter has been sent. 6. Where was the money found? 7. This picture has often been admired. 8. Why did these men leave their homes? 9. Columbus discovered a new continent. 10. These books contain many interesting stories.

FIRST LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

IMPORTANCE OF LATIN

LATIN IN ANCIENT TIMES

1. Latin is the language which was spoken by the Romans. After they conquered the nations living in the region which is now occupied by Spain, Portugal, France, Switzerland, and part of Austria, Latin began to be known here as well as in Italy, and it finally replaced in large measure the languages formerly spoken throughout this entire region.

MODERN LATIN, OR ROMANCE LANGUAGES

2. When the Roman empire gradually lost its power, and when the barbarians drove back the Roman armies, the influence of the Latin language still remained. The Spanish, French, Portuguese, Italian, and Rumanian languages are simply modern Latin. Many changes have taken place in the spelling and pronunciation of the Latin words which appear in these Romance languages, as they are called, and words have been introduced from other sources. But in the main these languages are Latin, and their relation to the language spoken by the Romans can easily be traced.

3. Many words in common use in French, Spanish, and the other Romance languages, have been very slightly changed from the original Latin form. Thus, the French word *arbre*, meaning *tree*, is from the Latin **arbor**; *terre*, meaning *land*, is from the Latin **terra**; and *vendre*, meaning *to sell*, is from the Latin **vēndere**.

The Spanish *agua*, meaning *water*, is from the Latin **aqua**; *mar*, meaning *sea*, is from the Latin **mare**; *amar*, meaning *to love*, is from the Latin **amāre**.

4. In the greater part of Austria and in part of Switzerland, Latin was displaced by other languages. But the extension of the Romance languages over South America and part of North America has more than made up for this loss.

The Spanish language is used throughout the whole of South America, with the exception of Brazil. In Brazil the language is Portuguese. Spanish is also the language of Mexico and is spoken extensively in parts of Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona, and to some extent in southern California. French is the language of part of Canada and is also spoken in some portions of Louisiana.

THE LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH

5. In addition to the importance which Latin has through the Romance languages, it has also given us a great many of our English words. Latin had borrowed a number of words from Greek and many of these have come into English, so that it is difficult to decide in the case of some words whether their use in English is due to Latin or Greek influence. More than half the words in an English dictionary are derived from Latin and Greek.

NEW WORDS FROM LATIN

6. The greater number of the new words which are being added to our language from time to time come from Latin or Greek. This is especially true of the names of new inventions. Such words as *submarine*, *automobile*, *telephone*, *tractor*, *motor*, *turbine*, are of this class. Further, the special terms used in chemistry, botany, physics, and other scientific studies, are of Latin or Greek origin.

LATIN TERMS IN LAW AND MEDICINE

7. In the study of law, words derived from Latin are of very great importance. Such words as *jury*, *court*, *legal*, *conviction*, *acquittal*, and a great many other important words and

expressions which lawyers must understand come from Latin. In the study of medicine also a great many Latin and Greek words or derivatives are used. The words *medicine, sanatorium, hospital, invalid, doctor, patient,* come from Latin. When a doctor writes a prescription he generally uses Latin words or their abbreviations.

THE FORMS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

8. Some Latin words which have been taken into the English language have the same spelling in English as in Latin. Such are *census, terminus, stimulus, veto, momentum, animal.* The meanings have in some instances changed, but the greater number of such words retain the same, or nearly the same, meaning as in the original Latin.

But most English words of Latin origin have been somewhat changed in their form. We shall see later that the spelling of many English words is explained by the development of the Latin words from which they have come, and that a knowledge of Latin aids one in remembering how to spell these words.

9. The following Latin words have familiar English derivatives or related words:

īnsula, *island*	insular, insulation
nōn, *not*	non-conductor, non-interference
patria, *native country*	patriot[1], patriotic[1]
terra, *land*	territory[2], terra firma
Britannia, *Great Britain*	Britannic
Hibernia, *Ireland*	Hibernian
Italia, *Italy*	Italian
America,[3] *America*	American
Europa, *Europe*	European

[1] These words are derived through Latin from Greek.

[2] There is a Latin word territōrium, meaning *territory*, which is derived from **terra**, and from this word *territory* has come into English.

[3] While **America** does not represent a word known to the Romans, it is a Latin word in its formation.

LESSON II

SUBJECT, OBJECT, AND PREDICATE (SINGULAR NUMBER)

READING EXERCISE

10. 1. America patria mea est. America patria tua est. Americam amō. Americam amās.

2. Hibernia īnsula est. Britannia īnsula est. America nōn est īnsula. Italia nōn est īnsula.

3. Hibernia nōn est patria mea. Italia nōn est patria mea. Soror mea Italiam amat. Soror tua quoque Italiam amat. Italia est terra pulchra.

4. Hibernia est īnsula pulchra. Britannia quoque est īnsula pulchra. Britannia est magna īnsula. Hibernia est magna īnsula.

11. VOCABULARY

amās, you love	**mea,** my, mine
amat, loves	**pulchra,** beautiful
amō, I love	**quoque,** also
est, is	**soror,** sister
magna, large	**tua,** your, yours

SUBJECT AND OBJECT FORMS, SINGULAR NUMBER: PREDICATE NOUNS

12. In the exercise above, the forms **America, Hibernia, Britannia,** and **Italia** are subjects, **Americam** and **Italiam** are direct objects; **patria, īnsula,** and **terra** are predicate nouns, and have the same form as subjects. All these nouns are in the singular number.

THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE: THE SUBJECT

(8) When we make a statement or ask a question, there is some word which indicates the person or thing about whom or about which we wish to say or ask something. Thus, in the sentences *The boy runs* and *The*

THE ARTICLE

13. Latin has no word for the definite article *the* or for the indefinite article *a* or *an*. The Latin equivalent for *The boy has a book* or *A boy has a book* means literally *Boy has book.* In translating a Latin sentence into English we supply *the, a,* or *an* whenever the sense requires.

WORD ORDER, VERB AND ADJECTIVE

14. The Latin verb commonly stands at the end of its sentence, as in the reading exercise above. The Latin adjective often follows its noun. Thus in section **10** the Latin equivalent for *a beautiful island* is **īnsula pulchra.** But the adjective **magna** and other adjectives denoting size commonly stand before their nouns, as in English.

---

letter was sent, we say something about the *boy* and the *letter.* In the question *When did the storm begin?* we ask something about the *storm.* A word which is used in this way in a sentence is said to be the *subject* of the sentence. In the sentences given above *boy*, *letter*, and *storm* are the subjects.

THE PREDICATE

(9) What we say or ask about the subject is called the *predicate.* In the sentences which have been given, *runs, was sent*, and *did begin* are the predicates.

A noun or adjective which is joined to the subject by a form of *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be, has been*, etc.) is called a predicate noun or a predicate adjective.

In the sentence *My brother is a teacher* the word *teacher* is a predicate noun. In the sentence *Your friend is unhappy* the word *unhappy* is a predicate adjective.

THE DIRECT OBJECT

(10) Often the subject of a sentence is said to do something which directly affects a person or thing. In the sentence *The man helps his brother* the act which the subject does directly affects the brother. A word which is used to denote a person or thing directly affected by an act is said to be the *direct object.* In the sentence above, *brother* is the direct object. In like manner, in the sentences *My father built a house* and *The fire destroyed the city* the words *house* and *city* are direct objects.

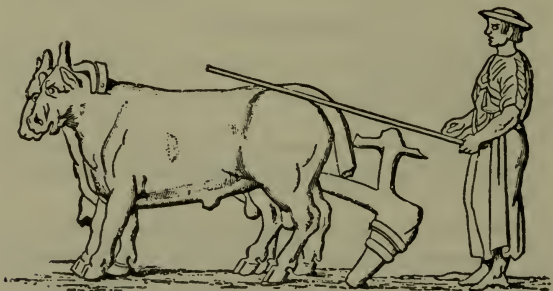
EXERCISES FOR WRITING

15. Copy the following sentences, putting the proper ending (**-a** or **-am**) in place of the dashes.

1. America est terr— pulchra.
2. Soror tua Americ— amat.
3. Soror mea Britanni— amat.
4. Patria mea terr— pulchra est.
5. Patria tua īnsul— est.
6. Īnsul— amō.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences containing direct objects. 2. Write two English sentences containing predicate nouns. 3. Point out the nouns in section **10**. 4. After you have copied the sentences of section **15** in correct form, draw one line under each predicate noun and two lines under each direct object.



ROMAN FARMER WITH PLOW

LESSON III

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

16. 1. Agricola parvam fīliam habet. Parva fīlia agricolam amat. Agricola parvam fīliam amat. Soror mea quoque parvam puellam amat.

2. Agricola casam pulchram habet, sed casa nōn magna est. Casa mea quoque parva est. Parvam casam meam amō.

3. Parva puella epistulam habet. Epistula mea est. Cūr parva puella epistulam meam habet?

4. Patriam meam amō, sed patriam tuam nōn amō. Soror mea patriam tuam amat. Cūr patriam meam nōn amās? Patria tua nōn est America.

5. Britannia īnsula magna et pulchra est. Hibernia quoque est magna et pulchra. Fīlia tua Britanniam et Hiberniam amat.

17. VOCABULARY

agricola, farmer
casa, cottage
cūr, why
epistula, letter
et, and
fīlia, daughter
habet, has
parva, small, little
puella, girl
sed, but

DIFFERENT ENDINGS FOR ADJECTIVES

18. In the reading exercise above, the adjectives which modify subjects or predicate nouns end in **-a**; those which modify direct objects end in **-am**.

A predicate adjective modifies the subject.

a. The Latin words for *your* or *yours* and *my* or *mine* are adjectives, and their endings, like those of other adjectives, depend on the words with which they are used.

THE USE OF "DO" IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES

19. In English sentences containing the adverb *not* we commonly have *do* or *did*. Thus, *I do not work*; *he does not see*; *they did not go*. In Latin there is no word corresponding to this use of *do*. *I do not love* is in Latin **Nōn amō** (*I love not*).

20. EXERCISES FOR WRITING[1]

1. Soror mea casam pulchr— habet.
2. Casa est pulchr— sed parv—.
3. Cūr patri— me— nōn amās?
4. Parv— puell— est soror mea.
5. Parv— puell— amō.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

21. 1. What English word is suggested by **agricola?** 2. In "The Courtship of Miles Standish," John Alden is said to have been "writing epistles important to go next day by the *May Flower*"; what are *epistles?* 3. Find from a dictionary the meaning and source of the abbreviation *etc.*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences containing direct objects which are modified by adjectives. 2. Write two English sentences containing predicate adjectives. 3. Point out two predicate nouns in section **16.**

THE ADVERB

(11) We often use a word with a verb to tell how an action is done. In the sentence *He runs swiftly* the word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done. Such words are called *adverbs*. Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs. In the expressions *too small* and *very swiftly* the adverbs *too* and *very* tell something about the adjective *small* and the adverb *swiftly*.

[1] In this exercise and, unless otherwise specified, in the exercises of the same character which are found in the lessons following, the sentences are to be copied by the pupil, with the proper endings supplied in place of the dashes.

LESSON IV

PLURAL NUMBER, NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

READING EXERCISE

22. 1. Soror tua nōn multam pecūniam habet. Sed soror mea multam pecūniam habet. Soror tua pecūniam amat.

2. Agricola parvās fīliās habet. Parvae fīliae agricolam amant. Agricola parvās fīliās amat. Soror mea quoque parvās puellās amat.

3. Epistulae meae nōn longae sunt. Sed soror mea epistulās longās scrībit. Soror tua quoque epistulās longās scrībit. Soror mea et soror tua epistulās longās amant.

4. Britannia et Hibernia magnae īnsulae sunt. Italia et Hispānia terrae pulchrae sunt. Hispānia et Italia nōn sunt īnsulae.

5. Eurōpa multās īnsulās habet. Eurōpa terrās pulchrās habet. Eurōpam saepe laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

23. VOCABULARY

amāmus, we love
amant, (they) love
Hispānia, Spain
laudāmus, we praise
longa, long
multa, much (**multae,** many)
pecūnia, money
saepe, often
scrībit, writes
sunt, (they) are



ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS IN THE PLURAL

24. In the sentences of section **22**, the nouns in the plural which are used as subjects or as predicate nouns end in **-ae**; those used in the plural as direct objects end in **-ās**.

FORMS OF ADJECTIVES WITH PLURAL NOUNS

25. In the sentences of section **22**, adjectives which modify plural subjects or predicate nouns end in **-ae**; those which modify plural direct objects end in **-ās**.

CASE NAMES

26. The subject is said to be in the *nominative case*, and the direct object is said to be in the *accusative case*. The predicate noun is also in the nominative case.

NUMBER

(12) We have different forms of pronouns and also of nouns to show whether we are referring to one person or thing or to more than one. Thus *I* refers to one person, *we* refers to more than one. This distinction is called *number*. *I* is in the *singular* number, and *we* is in the *plural* number. In the same way, *book* is in the singular number, and *books* is in the plural number.

CASE

(13) Such pronouns as *he*, *she*, and *who* have different forms to show how they are used in sentences. We say *He walks*, *I see him*, and *I have his ball.* In these sentences *he* is subject, *him* is direct object, and *his* refers to a person as possessing something. In like manner we use *she* and *who* as subjects, *her* and *whom* as direct objects of a verb or as objects of a preposition, and *her* (or *hers*) and *whose* to denote the person possessing something.

A noun has the same form for the subject as for the object of a verb or a preposition, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something. Thus we say *The boy walks*, *I see the boy*, *I have the boy's ball.* These different forms and uses of nouns and pronouns in sentences are called *cases* or *case-uses*. The subject is in the *nominative* case, the direct object is in the *accusative* case, and the word referring to the possessor is in the *genitive* case (sometimes called *possessive*).

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

27. 1. Parva puella epistul— (*letters*) me— habet. 2. Casae sunt parv— sed pulchr—. 3. America īnsul— (*islands*) pulchr— habet. 4. Soror mea et soror tua sunt puell— pulchr—. 5. Patri— me— amō. 6. Patri— tu— amās.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

28. 1. What is meant by a *laudable* action? 2. What are *pecuniary* losses? 3. What is meant by *inscribe?* Find other English words suggested by **scrībit.**

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. From paragraph 2, section **22,** give the singular form of the object in the first sentence and the plural form of the object in the second sentence. 2. Write the accusative singular of **Hispānia** and the accusative plural of **casa.** 3. Point out the subjects, objects, and predicate nouns in paragraphs 3 and 4 of section **22.**



AN ARCH OVER A ROMAN ROAD

LESSON V

GENITIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

29. 1. Agricola est amīcus nautae (*of the sailor*). Nauta est amīcus poētae. Poēta est amīcus fīliārum tuārum (*of your daughters*). Fīliae tuae poētam amant.

2. Poēta incola Americae est. Sed Italia est patria poētae. Poēta fīliam habet. America est patria fīliae poētae. Poēta Italiam amat. Fīlia poētae Americam amat.

3. Incolae īnsulārum sunt agricolae et nautae. Vīta agricolārum vīta bona est. Poētae saepe vītam agricolārum laudant. Vītam nautārum interdum laudāmus. Nautae multās terrās vident. Sed vīta nautārum perīculōsa est.

30. VOCABULARY

amīcus, friend
bona, good
incola, inhabitant
interdum, sometimes
laudant, (they) praise
nauta, sailor
perīculōsa, dangerous
poēta, poet
vident, (they) see
vīta, life

LATIN NOUNS DENOTING POSSESSION OR OWNERSHIP

31. Latin nouns which end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-am** in the accusative singular have a form ending in **-ae** in the singular to denote ownership or possession and certain other ideas. The corresponding form in the plural ends in **-ārum**. This form is translated either by the English genitive (possessive) form, or by *of* and the noun. Thus, **epistula puellae** means *the girl's letter* or *the letter of the girl*. **Soror puellārum** means *the sister of the girls*. In translating a sentence with a form of this sort we should use whichever of the two translations makes the better sense.

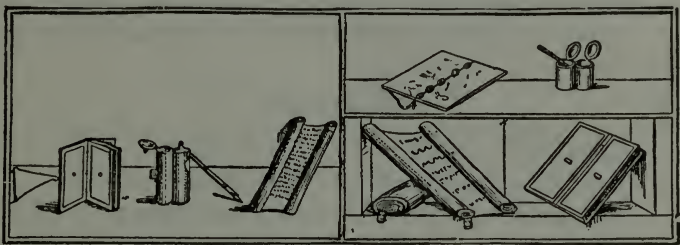
THE GENITIVE CASE

32. The Latin nouns which are described in section **31** are said to be in the *genitive case.*

An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive, and is in the same number as its noun.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

33. 1. Nauta amīcus agricol— (*of the farmer*) est. 2. Soror mea epistulam puell— (*the girl's*) habet. 3. Hibernia patria naut— (*the sailor's*) est. 4. Soror parvārum puell— epistulās scrībit. 5. Incolae īnsul— (*of the island*) nautae sunt. 6. Incolae multārum īnsul— agricolae sunt.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

34. 1. What is meant by the statement "They lived on *amicable* terms with each other"? 2. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *amiable.* 3. What is an *aeronaut?* 4. What is meant by great *vitality*?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the genitive singular of **incola, nauta, poēta, vīta.** 2. Give the genitive plural of **casa, terra,** and **epistula.** 3. Write the nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of the words for *girl, land,* and *island.*

LESSON VI

INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

35. 1. Māter mea epistulam scrībit et epistulam parvae puellae (*to the little girl*) dat. Parva puella epistulam agricolae dat. Agricola epistulam legit. Agricola mihi epistulam dat. Pecūniam agricolae dō. Agricola parvae puellae pecūniam dat. Parva puella pecūniam Cornēliae dat. Cornēlia est māter parvae puellae.

2. Māter mea dōnum parvīs puellīs (*to the little girls*) dat. Parvae puellae laetae sunt. Māter mea parvās puellās amat.

3. Nautae epistulās dō. Nauta epistulās incolīs īnsulārum dat. Incolae īnsulārum pecūniam nautae dant. Nauta mihi pecūniam dat.

36. VOCABULARY

Cornēlia, Cornelia
dant, (they) give
dat, gives
dō, I give
dōnum, gift, present
laeta, happy
legit, reads
māter, mother
mihi, to me, me (*as indirect object*)

LATIN NOUNS AS INDIRECT OBJECTS

37. In the reading exercise above, the forms **puellae** and **agricolae** in the first and second sentences of 1, and **puellīs** in the first sentence of 2 are indirect objects.

Nouns which end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-ae** in the genitive singular have the ending **-ae** in the singular and **-īs** in the plural when used as indirect objects.

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

(14) A noun or pronoun which is used to denote the person to whom something is given, said, or shown is said to be an *indirect object*. In the sentences *He gave his sister a picture* and *My brother told me an interesting story* the words *sister* and *me* are indirect objects.

PHRASES WITH *TO* EQUIVALENT TO INDIRECT OBJECTS

38. Instead of saying *I gave the girl a letter* we may express the same idea by saying *I gave a letter to the girl.* In the second sentence *to the girl* takes the place of the indirect object *girl* in the first. A phrase consisting of *to* and a noun, when used in the place of an indirect object, is translated in Latin by the same form as the indirect object. That is, either *girl* in the first of the sentences above or *to the girl* in the second will be translated **puellae.**

THE DATIVE CASE

39. A Latin noun used as an indirect object is said to be in the *dative case.*

An adjective modifying a noun in the dative is also in the dative, and is in the same number as its noun.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

40. Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. The farmer gives a letter to the poet.
2. The poet gives money to the farmer.
3. I give a present to the little girls.
4. The little girls give me a letter.
5. Your daughter gives money to the sailor.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

41. 1. What connection can you see between the word *dative* and any Latin word in the vocabulary of this lesson? 2. What is a *donation?* 3. What is *legible* handwriting? 4. What is *maternal* care?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out the indirect objects in 1 of section **35.** 2. Write two English sentences each containing a direct and an indirect object. 3. Write the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the Latin words for *letter* and *cottage.*

LESSON VII

INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE (Continued)

READING EXERCISE

42. 1. Māter tua Cornēliae dōnum dat. Cornēlia fīliae agricolae dōnum ostendit. Fīlia agricolae quoque dōnum cupit, sed māter tua fīliae agricolae dōnum nōn dat.

2. Agricolae epistulās dō, et agricola mihi pecūniam dat. Agricola epistulās legit. Agricola epistulās fīliae ostendit, sed fīlia epistulās nōn legit.

3. Puella mihi casam poētae mōnstrat. Casa est parva. Poētam nōn videō, sed fīliam poētae interdum videō. Fīlia poētae parvam casam amat.

4. Poēta fīliae pictūram dat. Fīlia poētae mihi pictūram ostendit. Pictūram laudō et poētam laudō. Fīlia poētae est laeta puella.

5. Nauta mihi fābulam nārrat. Māter mea quoque mihi interdum fābulās nārrat. Soror mea multās fābulās legit et saepe parvīs puellīs fābulās nārrat. Parvae puellae fābulās amant.

43. VOCABULARY

cupit, wishes, desires
fābula, story
laudō, I praise
mōnstrat, points out
nārrat, tells
ostendit, shows
pictūra, picture
videō, I see

OMISSION OF PRONOUN AS SUBJECT

44. We have seen that **amō** is translated *I love,* without a separate word for *I*. In the same manner **amat,** which is translated *loves* when used with a noun as subject, may be translated *he loves* or *she loves* when the preceding sentence makes it perfectly clear who the subject is. When we have

been talking about a man we may say **patriam amat,** meaning, *he loves his country.*

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

45. 1. Māter mea fīli— tu— (*your daughter*) dōnum dat. 2. Epistulās saepe naut— (*to the sailors*) dō. 3. Agricola poēt— (*the poet*) pecūni— dat. 4. Poēta agricol— (*the farmer*) epistul— me— ostendit. 5. Puella naut— (*to the sailor*) cas— me— mōnstrat. 6. Soror tua agricol— (*the farmer*) epistul— (*the letters*) ostendit.



ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences containing phrases with *to* which are equivalent to indirect objects. 2. Rewrite the last sentence in 4 of section **42,** changing the subject to the plural, and making any other necessary change. 3. Point out the indirect objects in section **42.** 4. Rewrite the last sentence of 5, section **42,** changing the subject to the singular and making any other changes which are necessary.

THE CONJUNCTION

(15) The words *and, but,* and *or* are used to join words or parts of sentences. In the sentence *Your father and mother are not in the city* the word *and* is used to join the words *father* and *mother.* In like manner, in the sentence *The train is late, but it will soon arrive* the word *but* joins the two parts of the sentence *The train is late* and *it will soon arrive.* Such words are called *conjunctions.* Conjunctions of a somewhat different kind are *because, although, if,* and some other words. In the sentence *I shall go if I receive the letter* the conjunction *if* is used to join the verb *shall go* and *I receive the letter.*

LESSON VIII

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

46. 1. Epistula mea agricolae (*to the farmer*) grāta est. Agricola mihi pecūniam dat. Pecūniam nautae dō. Pecūnia nautae grāta est.

2. Fīlia tua parvae puellae benigna est. Parva puella fīliam tuam amat. Fīlia tua parvae puellae rosam dat. Rosa puellae grāta est.

3. Poētae Italiam saepe laudant. Italia poētīs cāra est. Sed patria mea mihi cāra est.

4. Epistulam fīliae tuae nōn laudō. Epistula longa est, sed mihi nōn grāta est. Fīlia tua nōn bene scrībit. Sed epistula tibi grāta est.

5. Fenestram casae tuae videō. Fenestra parva est. Casa agricolae multās fenestrās habet.

6. America multās silvās habet. Silvae Americae magnae sunt. Hibernia magnās silvās nōn habet.

47. VOCABULARY

bene, well	**grāta,** pleasing
benigna, kind	**rosa,** rose
cāra, dear	**silva,** forest
fenestra, window	**tibi,** to you

ADJECTIVES WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE

48. In the first sentence of the reading exercise above, **agricolae,** *to the farmer,* is in the dative. With adjectives meaning *dear, pleasing, kind, friendly, near,* and the like, the dative is often used to express an idea which is expressed in English by *to* and a noun or pronoun.

POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

49. (1) The genitive commonly stands after the word on which it depends, even though the corresponding English word

denoting possession would stand first. Thus *the poet's cottage* may be translated **casa poētae.**

(2) The dative commonly stands before the word on which it depends. The words *kind to me* translated into Latin would take the order *to me kind.*

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

50. 1. Pecūnia agricol— (*to the farmer*) grāta est. 2. Italia poēt— (*to the poet*) cāra est. 3. Soror mea fīli— tu— (*to your daughter*) benigna est. 4. Epistul— tu— mihi nōn grātae sunt. 5. Rosae parv— puell— (*to the little girls*) grātae sunt. 6. Rosam parv— puell— (*to the little girl*) dō.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

51. 1. Give two English words of which **bene** is a component part. 2. What is meant by a *benignant* influence? 3. What connection in meaning can you see between **grāta** and *gratify?* 4. Complete the following formula: *rose* : **rosa** : : *fame* : *x*; that is, replace *x* by a word which bears the same relation to *fame* which **rosa** bears to *rose.*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out all the datives in section **46.** 2. Rewrite the first sentence in 2 of section **46,** changing the subject to the plural. 3. Rewrite the third sentence in 2 of section **46,** changing the direct and indirect objects to the plural.

PERSON

(16) The pronoun *I* and its plural *we* refer to the person or persons speaking, and are said to be in the *first person; you* refers to the person to whom one is speaking and is said to be in the *second person; he, she,* and *it* (plural *they*) refer to a person or thing spoken of, and are said to be in the *third person.* Nouns are ordinarily in the third person.

LESSON IX

PREPOSITIONS: ABLATIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

52. 1. Poēta casam in īnsulā habet. Casa mea quoque ibi est, et saepe poētam videō. Ex fenestrīs casae meae silvam videō. Silva pulchra est, et saepe ibi ambulō. Saepe cum poētā in silvā ambulō. Poēta silvam amat.

2. Soror mea et soror tua nunc in viīs ambulant. Māter tua et māter mea interdum cum puellīs ambulant. Sed nunc māter tua in casā est. Mea māter in Americā nōn est.

3. Māter mea nunc in Hispāniā est. Soror poētae in Britanniā est cum fīliā Cornēliae. Cornēlia in Hiberniā quoque fīliam habet. Māter mea epistulās ex Hispāniā scrībit.

53. VOCABULARY

ambulant, (they) walk
ambulō, I walk
cum, with
ex, from
ibi, there, in that place
in, in, on
nunc, now
via, street, road, way

THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

54. As seen above, *there,* meaning *in that place,* is in Latin **ibi.** But in such sentences as *There is no danger* we use *there* merely to introduce the sentence, and no idea of place is expressed. When thus used *there* is called an *expletive.* Latin has no equivalent for this expletive use of *there,* and the sentence *There is no danger* will be translated as if it read *No danger is.* In such sentences the Latin verb usually stands before the subject.

LATIN NOUNS GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS

55. In the reading exercise above, **īnsulā** in the first sentence of 1 is governed by **in**; in the second sentence of 2 **puellīs**

is governed by **cum**, and in the third sentence of 1 **fenestrīs** is governed by **ex**. The letter **ā**, in which **īnsulā** ends, is long, while the form of the nominative ends in (short) **a**.

THE ABLATIVE

56. Latin nouns or pronouns governed by prepositions meaning *from*, *in*, or *with* are said to be in the *ablative case*.

An adjective modifying a noun in the ablative case is also put in the ablative, and is in the same number as its noun.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

57. 1. Casae in īnsul— (*the islands*) sunt. 2. Parv— puell— in vi— (*the street*) ambulant. 3. Soror mea cum parv— puell— (*the little girls*) ambulat. 4. Īnsul— (*islands*) ex me— fenestr— (*window*) videō. 5. Cornēlia nōn est in Hispāni— cum fīli— (*the daughter*) poētae.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

58. 1. What is a *perambulator?* 2. Find the literal meaning of the name *Pennsylvania* (English words derived from **silva** usually have *syl-* for the Latin **sil-**). 3. What is the meaning of *via* as used in railroad time tables?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of **silva** in the singular number. 2. Write all the case forms of **puella** in the plural number, following the order of cases given above. 3. Point out the ablatives and the datives in section **52.**

THE PREPOSITION

(17) There is a class of small words such as *of*, *in*, *with*, *by*, *from*, which are used with nouns or pronouns. The combination of one of these words and the noun or pronoun which is used with it serves to tell something about an act or about a person or thing. These words are called *prepositions*. The noun or pronoun which follows a preposition is called its *object*, or the preposition is said to *govern* the noun or pronoun which follows it. In the sentence *I live in the city* the word *city* is the object of *in*.

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION

THE CASE FORMS OF *ROSA*

59. The different case forms of the noun **rosa** with their meanings are as follows:

Singular Number

Nom.	rosa, *a rose* (as subject or predicate)
Gen.	rosae, *of a rose, rose's*
Dat.	rosae, *to a rose, rose* (as indirect object)
Acc.	rosam, *rose* (as direct object)
Abl.	rosā, (*from, with, in, on*) *a rose*

Plural Number

Nom.	rosae, *roses* (as subject or predicate)
Gen.	rosārum, *of roses*
Dat.	rosīs, *to the roses, roses* (as indirect object)
Acc.	rosās, *roses* (as direct object)
Abl.	rosīs, (*from, with, in, on*) *roses*

60. The following sentences illustrate the use of the Latin cases:

The rose (**rosa**) is beautiful.
The fragrance of the rose (**rosae**) is delightful.
The sunshine has given color to the rose (**rosae**).
The girl is carrying a rose (**rosam**).
The butterfly is on the rose (**in rosā**).

The roses (**rosae**) are beautiful.
The fragrance of the roses (**rosārum**) is delightful.
The sun has given color to the roses (**rosīs**).
The girl is carrying roses (**rosās**).
The butterflies are on the roses (**in rosīs**).

THE FIRST DECLENSION

61. Nouns which form their cases with the same endings as those of **rosa** are said to belong to the *first declension.* All nouns with the nominative ending in **-a** and the genitive in **-ae** are of the first declension.

a. In the vocabularies hereafter the nominative of new nouns of the first declension will be given, with the genitive ending printed after the nominative to show that the noun is of the first declension. Thus **lūna, -ae** indicates that **lūna** is a first declension noun.

CASE OF NOUNS IN APPOSITION

62. A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains.

Fīlia tua Cornēlia in viā stat, *your daughter Cornelia is standing in the street.*

READING EXERCISE

63. 1. Casa nostra magnās fenestrās habet. Fenestrae sunt apertae. Ex fenestrīs viās vidēmus. Fīliae agricolae in viīs ambulant.

2. Māter tua puellās expectat. Puellae ex scholā properant. Soror tua cum puellīs est. Puellae laetae sunt. Māter tua nunc puellās videt.

3. Schola nostra est magna. Scholam nostram laudāmus.

APPOSITION

(18) Sometimes two nouns, or a pronoun and a noun, denoting the same person or thing are put side by side, without a verb being used to connect them. The second is used to explain the first by making known some fact or by telling more definitely who or what is meant. Thus, *A boy, a friend of my brother, is visiting at my home.* The word *friend* denotes the same person as *boy,* and serves to make known a fact regarding the boy. A noun used in this way is called an *appositive,* and is said to be in apposition with the word which it explains. In the sentence above, *friend* is in apposition with *boy.*

In scholā nostrā linguam Latīnam discimus. Fāma scholae nostrae bona est.

4. Scholae Americae sunt multae et bonae. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae quoque sunt scholae bonae. Sed Hispānia nōn habet multās scholās. Incolae Eurōpae scholās Americae saepe laudant.

64. VOCABULARY

aperta, open
discimus, we learn
expectat, awaits, waits for
fāma, reputation
Latīna, Latin
lingua, language
nostra, our
properant, (they) hasten, hurry
schola, school
vidēmus, we see

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

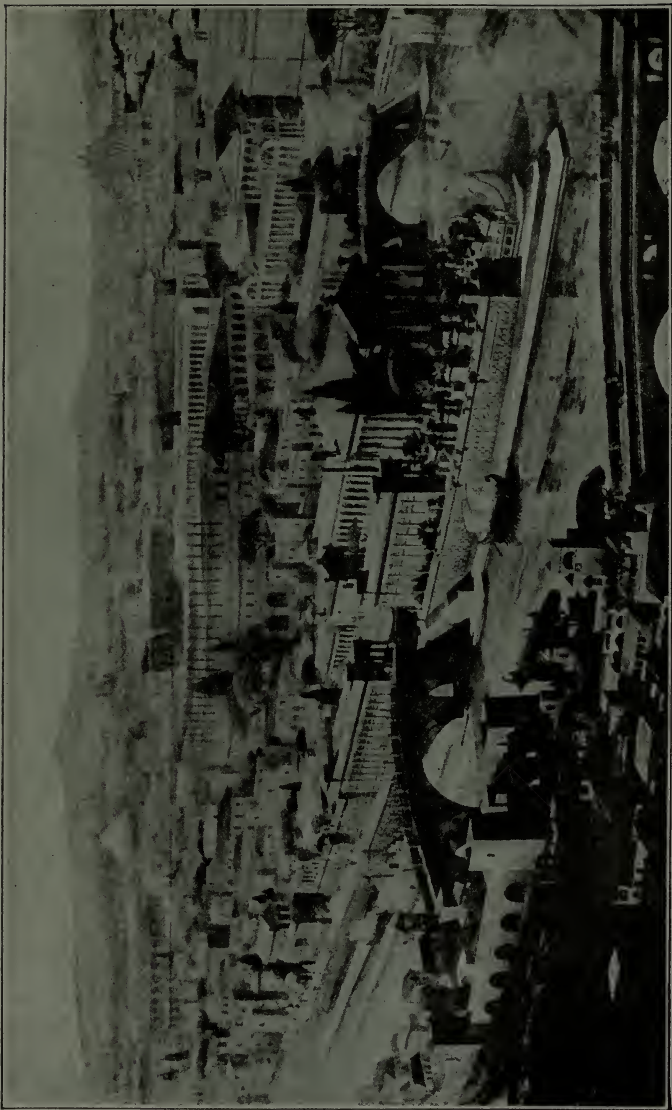
65. 1. Viam ex apert— fenestr— (*the open windows*) videō. 2. Soror mea ex schol— properat. 3. Soror tua nōn est cum parv— puell— (*the little girl*). 4. Sunt mult— schol— in Americ—. 5. Cornēlia fīliam poēt— expectat. 6. Agricola Cornēli— expectat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

66. 1. What is an *aperture?* 2. Find from a dictionary the original meaning of *disciple.* 3. What is meant by a *bilingual* country? 4. What is an *expectant* attitude?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write out in full the declension of the nouns **lingua** and **schola.** 2. Write out the declension of the phrase **casa mea.** 3. Name the three prepositions which have been used with the ablative in the lessons thus far. 4. Write an English sentence containing a phrase with *to* which is equivalent to an indirect object.



VIEW OF ANCIENT ROME (RECONSTRUCTION)

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

67. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS I–X

agricola
amīcus
casa
dōnum
epistula
fābula
fāma
fenestra
fīlia
incola
lingua
māter
nauta
pecūnia
pictūra
poēta
puella
rosa
schola
silva
soror
via
vīta

mihi
tibi

ambulō
amō
dō
laudō
videō

amās
amat
dat
expectat
mōnstrat
nārrat
habet
cupit
legit
ostendit
scrībit
est

amāmus
laudāmus
vidēmus
discimus

amant
ambulant
dant
laudant
properant
sunt
vident

bene
cūr

ibi
interdum
nunc
quoque
saepe

cum
ē, ex
in

et
sed

WORD STUDY

68. We have seen (page 3) that many English words, such as *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, *animal*, *census*, were originally Latin words, and have been taken into English without change of spelling. Others, such as *humble*, *count*, *blame*, *sure*, are greatly changed from their original Latin form, because they

have not come directly from Latin, but were developed in French from Latin, with changed pronunciation and spelling, and were taken from French into English. Sometimes the meaning as well as the form of these words has changed, but usually we can recognize the original meaning.

69. We often find a group of Latin words which are related in derivation and meaning. Thus **amō, amor, amīcus, amīcitia, amābilis, inimīcus, inimīcitia** have a common element. We shall see later something of how Latin words are formed. We sometimes say that an English word is related in derivation to a certain Latin word, although it does not come directly from that word, but from another word which is derived from the Latin word given. Thus, we may say the word *amiable* is related in derivation to the Latin **amō,** although it comes more directly from **amābilis,** which in turn is from **amō.** Some of the Latin words from which our English words are directly derived were not often used by good Latin writers, and therefore the derivation of the English word is more easily explained by a related Latin word of common use.

70. There are certain changes of spelling which we find in the development of English words from Latin. Thus, Latin words ending in **-tia** often give English words in *-ce* (occasionally *-cy*). For example, *temperance* is from **temperantia,** *patience* from **patientia,** *clemency* from **clēmentia.** Other changes will be explained later.

EXERCISE

Select twelve nouns from the Review Vocabulary on page 26, from which you can find English derivatives. Give the meaning of these derivatives.



ROMAN SEAL RINGS

LESSON XI

CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

THE FORMS OF *SUM*

71. The forms of the Latin verb **sum** meaning *I am* are as follows when referring to present time:

1st person	sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
2d person	es, *you* (singular) *are*	estis, *you* (plural) *are*
3d person	est, (*he, she, it*) *is*	sunt, (*they*) *are*

a. In English *you* may denote one person or more than one. We say *You are my friend* when speaking to one person, and *You are my friends* when speaking to two or more persons. Latin, however, has different forms for the singular and plural of this pronoun. The verb forms used to denote an act of the persons or person spoken to also differ according as the subject is singular or plural. In Latin the word used for *are* in translating *You are my friend* would be different from that used for *are* in translating *You are my friends*, because the subject, *you*, denotes one person in the first sentence and more than one in the second.

READING EXERCISE

72. 1. Incola Britanniae sum. Soror mea incola Hiberniae est. Sed patria nostra est America, et amīcī patriae nostrae sumus.

PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

(19) In some tenses a verb has a different form when its subject is in the first person from what it would have if the subject were in the third person. Thus we say *I walk*, but *he walks*. The third person plural also differs from the third person singular. Thus, *he walks, they walk*. A verb is said to be in the same person and number as its subject.

2. Nunc in Americā es, sed America nōn est patria tua. Cūr nōn amīcus Americae es? Cūr Americam nōn amās?

3. Nunc in Italiā estis. In Italiā sumus. Italia est terra pulchra. Sed Italia nōn est patria nostra. Italiam saepe laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

4. Ex fenestrā meā noctū stellās spectō. Saepe lūnam quoque spectō. Lūna nunc obscūra est, sed stellae clārae sunt.

5. Ex viā fenestram tuam vidēmus. Fenestra aperta est. Soror tua ex fenestrā puellās in viā spectat. Cūr soror tua nōn in viā cum puellīs est?

6. Soror mea aegra est. Māter mea est misera quod soror mea est aegra.

73. VOCABULARY

aegra, ill
amīcī, friends
clāra, bright, clear; famous
lūna, -ae, F., moon
misera, unhappy
noctū, at night
obscūra, dim
quod, because
spectō, I watch, look at
stella, -ae, F., star

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

74. Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. I am now an inhabitant of America.
2. The poet's daughters are in Ireland.
3. You are in a beautiful country.
4. We are in the cottage with the sailor.
5. I am watching (I watch) the stars, but I do not see the moon.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

(20) A verb which takes a direct object is called a *transitive verb.* In the sentence *I saw the fire,* the verb *saw* is transitive. A verb which does not take a direct object is called an *intransitive verb.* In the sentence *We walked in the park,* the verb *walked* is intransitive.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

75. 1. What is the meaning of *clarify?* What part of speech is it? 2. What is a *lunar* eclipse? 3. Find two English verbs derived from **spectō** with a syllable placed before **-spect-**. 4. What is a *constellation?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Change the verbs of the first two sentences in paragraph 3, section **72**, to the singular number. 2. Change the verb of the second sentence of paragraph 5, section **72**, to the plural number, making such other changes as are necessary. 3. Decline together **magna stella.**

LESSON XII

FIRST CONJUGATION

THE VERB *PORTŌ*

76. The forms of **portō,** *I carry,* when referring to present time and representing the subject as doing the act expressed by the verb are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
1ST PERSON	portō, *I carry*	portāmus, *we carry*
2D PERSON	portās, *you carry*	portātis, *you carry*
3D PERSON	portat *he, she, it carries*	portant, *they carry*

a. The forms given above may also be translated *I am carrying, you are carrying, he is carrying,* etc. Latin has no means of distinguishing between such expressions as *I carry* and *I am carrying, he praises* and *he is praising, they walk* and *they are walking.*

b. To *conjugate* a verb means to give its different forms in regular order, as above.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

77. The verb **portō** is said to be of the *first conjugation.* The infinitive meaning *to carry* is **portāre.** All verbs which have the infinitive ending **-āre** are of the first conjugation and are conjugated like **portō.** These verbs have as a characteristic element the vowel **ā,** which becomes short before the endings **-t** and **-nt.**

a. The verbs **amō, laudō, ambulō, properō, spectō, labōrō,** and **stō,** which appear in this or the preceding lessons, are of the first conjugation. In the vocabularies hereafter the infinitive ending **-āre** will be given after the first form of a new verb of the first conjugation.

b. The verb **dō** is of the first conjugation, but it is irregular in that it has the vowel **a** short where it would be long in **portō** and other verbs of the first conjugation, except in a very few forms. The infinitive is **dare.**

PERSONAL ENDINGS

78. With a verb denoting an act done by the subject the following are the personal endings which are used to show person and number, together with their meanings.

Singular	*Plural*
-ō, *I*	**-mus,** *we*
-s, *you* (singular)	**-tis,** *you* (plural)
-t, *he, she, it*	**-nt,** *they*

READING EXERCISE

79. 1. Schola nostra est schola bona. Scholam nostram laudāmus et amāmus.

THE INFINITIVE

(21) A verb form preceded by *to* is often used to refer to an act without saying that it really took place. The expressions *to walk, to have heard, to be seen,* are of this kind. These forms of the verb with *to* are called *infinitives.*

Scholam laudātis, sed in scholā nōn bene labōrātis. Soror mea scholam laudat et in scholā bene labōrat. Soror mea est puella impigra.

2. Cūr hīc stātis?

Hīc stāmus quod fīliam tuam expectāmus. Ubi fīlia tua est?

Fīlia mea nunc in scholā est.

3. Vesperī saepe in viīs ambulō. Amīcī quoque ibi ambulant. Nautās saepe vidēmus cum in viīs ambulāmus. Nautae quoque in viīs vesperī ambulant.

4. Jānua est aperta, et Cornēliam in casā videō. Cornēlia agricolam expectat. Agricola epistulam portat. Agricola epistulam Cornēliae dat.

80. VOCABULARY

cum, when
hīc, here
impigra, energetic, industrious
jānua, -ae, F., door
labōrō, -āre, work
portō, -āre, carry
stō, stāre, stand
ubi, where, when
vesperī, in the evening

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

81. 1. Puellae saepe in viīs vesperī ambula—. 2. Cūr agricola ex silv— propera—? 3. Epistulās tuās nunc expectā— (*subject "we"*). 4. Cūr māter mea mihi dōnum nōn da—? 5. Māter tua tibi dōnum nōn da— quod nōn bene labōrā— (*subject "you" singular*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

82. 1. What do you suppose was originally the duty of a *porter?* 2. What connection in meaning can you see between **stō** and *station?* 3. At what time of day are *vesper* services held?

SUGGESTED DRILL

Give English meanings for the following:

1. Ambulāmus; properāmus. 2. Spectō; spectat; spectāmus. 3. Labōrās; spectās. 4. Amāre; stāre; spectāre. 5. Properant; properās; properō. 6. Labōrat; labōrātis; labōrant. 7. Sunt; stant; sum, stō. 8. Ambulātis; ambulat; ambulāre. 9. Dō; dat; dant.

LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION

DECLENSION OF *TEMPLUM*

83. The different case forms of the noun **templum,** *a temple,* are as follows:

Singular

Nom.	templum, *a temple* (as subject)
Gen.	templī, *of a temple*
Dat.	templō, *to a temple, temple* (as indirect object)
Acc.	templum, *a temple* (as direct object)
Abl.	templō, (*from, with, in*) *a temple*

Plural

Nom.	templa, *temples* (as subject)
Gen.	templōrum, *of temples*
Dat.	templīs, *to temples, temples* (as indirect object)
Acc.	templa, *temples* (as direct object)
Abl.	templīs (*from, with, in*) *temples*

a. To *decline* a noun (or adjective) means to give its different case forms in regular order.

THE SECOND DECLENSION

84. Nouns with the genitive singular ending in **-ī** are of the second declension. The second declension nouns are not all alike in the nominative. Some have the nominative ending in **-um,** others in **-us,** and others in **-er.** Those ending in **-um** are declined like **templum.**

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

85. Most first declension nouns are feminine, even though we should expect many of them to be neuter from their meanings. Those denoting males, however, are masculine. Thus, **agricola, incola, nauta,** and **poēta** are masculine. All other nouns of this declension which have been given are feminine.

GENDER OF NOUNS IN *-UM*

86. All nouns ending in **-um** in the nominative singular are of the neuter gender.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN GENDER

87. The adjectives which have been given with the ending **-a** have also a neuter form in **-um,** declined like **templum.**

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender as well as in case and number. Thus we say **parva puella,** *a small girl,* but **parvum templum,** *a small temple.*

READING EXERCISE

88. 1. Tēctum in magnō oppidō habeō, sed oppidum nōn amō. Māter mea casam in silvā habet, et aestāte in casā habitō. Soror mea quoque in casā aestāte habitat.

2. Tēctum tuum in oppidō saepe videō. Tēctum magnum est sed nōn pulchrum. Casa in silvā est pulchra.

GENDER

(22) We use the pronoun *he* when we are referring to a man or boy or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when we are referring to a woman or girl or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when we are referring to something without sex. Thus when we are speaking of a boy we may say *He is a stranger*, when speaking of a girl we may say *She is not at home*, and when speaking of a book we say *It is mine.* This distinction in pronouns is called *gender.*

Such words as *he* are in the *masculine* gender, such words as *she* are in the *feminine* gender, and such words as *it* are in the *neuter* gender.

Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, *brother* is masculine, *sister* is feminine, and *house* is neuter.

a. A word like *friend* which may refer to either a man or a woman is sometimes said to be in the *common* gender.

3. Poēta magnum tabernāculum in īnsulā habet. Ex casā nostrā tabernāculum poētae vidēmus. Poēta est amīcus agricolae. Tēctum agricolae quoque in īnsulā est. Agricolam et poētam saepe vidēmus cum in īnsulā sumus.

4. Oppida patriae nostrae laudās. Soror tua oppida Italiae saepe laudat, sed in oppidīs Italiae nōn diū manet. Nunc in parvō oppidō Hispāniae est. Multa oppida Hispāniae et Italiae sunt pulchra.

5. Quid (*direct object*) māter tua tibi dat? Māter mea mihi praemium dat, quod ex viā properō. Soror mea quoque praemium habet, quod impigra est.

89. VOCABULARY

aestāte, in summer
diū, long, for a long time
habeō, I have
habitō, -āre, live
manet, remains
oppidum, -ī, N., town
praemium, -ī, N., reward
quid, what?
tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent
tēctum, -ī, N., house

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

90. 1. Magn— oppid— (*town*) nōn laudās. 2. Oppid— (*the towns*) Italiae saepe laudāmus. 3. Tabernācul— (*a tent*) in silvā videō. 4. Cornēlia mihi magn— praemi— (*reward*) dat. 5. Soror mea in oppid— (*the town*) aestāte nōn manet.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

91. 1. What is a *habitation?* 2. What was the original meaning of *tabernacle?* 3. What is a *premium?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **parvum oppidum.** 2. Decline together **dōnum meum.** 3. Name the case of each noun in the sentences of paragraph 3, section **88.**

LESSON XIV

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

DECLENSION OF *AMĪCUS*

92. The noun **amīcus** is of the second declension, and is declined as follows:

Singular

Nom.	amīcus, *a friend* (as subject)
Gen.	amīcī, *of a friend*
Dat.	amīcō, *to a friend, a friend* (as indirect object)
Acc.	amīcum, *a friend* (as direct object)
Abl.	amīcō (*from, with, in*) *a friend*

Plural

Nom.	amīcī, *friends* (as subject)
Gen.	amīcōrum, *of friends*
Dat.	amīcīs, *to friends, friends* (as indirect object)
Acc.	amīcōs, *friends* (as direct object)
Abl.	amīcīs (*from, with, in*) *friends*

a. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** are chiefly masculine.

ADJECTIVES IN *-US*

93. Such adjectives as **bona** and **magna** have a masculine form ending in **-us** in the nominative, with the other case endings like those of the noun **amīcus.**

READING EXERCISE: *FĪLIUS ET FĪLIA AGRICOLAE*

94. 1. Agricola fīlium et fīliam habet. Fīlius agricolae domī manet, sed fīlia in scholā hieme est, et tum in oppidō cum amīcō benignō agricolae habitat. Agricola oppidum nōn amat, et fīliam hieme nōn saepe videt. Aestāte puella domī manet. Agricola equōs habet, et fīliae equum bonum dat. Fīlia equōs nōn timet, et laeta est quod equum bonum habet.

Māter puellae laeta est cum fīlia domī est. Fīlius agricolae nūllōs amīcōs in oppidō habet.

2. Tēctum amīcī agricolae in nostrō oppidō est. Ex fenestrā meā tēctum amīcī agricolae videō. Ibi fīlia agricolae hieme habitat. Amīcus agricolae parvum fīlium habet, sed nūllās fīliās habet.

95. VOCABULARY

domī, at home	**nūllus,** no, none
equus, -ī, M., horse	**timet,** fears
fīlius,[1] **-ī,** M., son	**tum,** then
hieme, in winter	**videt,** sees

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

96. 1. Amīcus meus equ— (*horse*) bon— habet. 2. Fīli— (*the son*) nautae poēta est. 3. Fīli— (*the son*) nautae epistulam dō. 4. Cornēlia fīli— (*a daughter*) habet, sed nūll— fīli— (*sons*) habet. 5. Casa amīc— poētae in oppid— est.

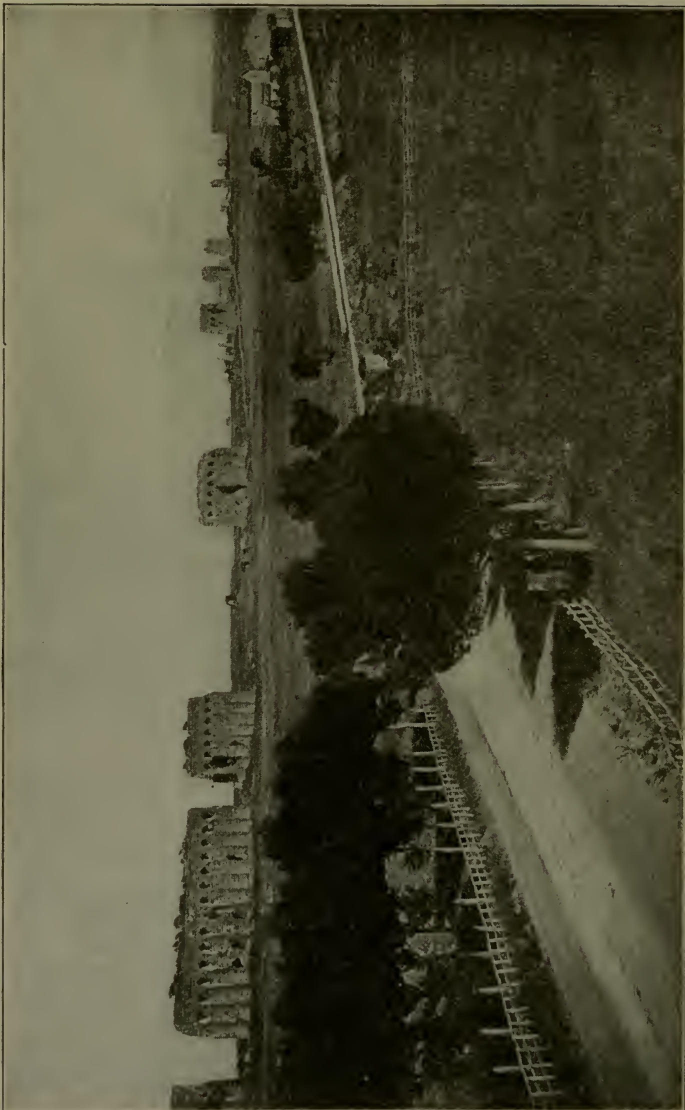
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

97. 1. What is an *equestrian* statue? 2. From a consideration of **fīlius** and **fīlia,** what do you think is meant by *filial* respect? 3. What is the meaning of *nullify?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the nominative singular and plural of all the first and second declension nouns in paragraph 1, section **94.** 2. Give the accusative singular and plural of all the first and second declension nouns in paragraph 2, section **94.** 3. Decline **equus.**

[1] The genitive of this word is commonly **fīlī** (contracted from **fīliī**). The uncontracted form, however, is used in the exercises of this book.



RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

DECLENSION OF *PUER* AND *AGER*

98. The nouns **puer,** *boy,* and **ager,** *field,* of the second declension, are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī
Gen.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs
Acc.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
Abl.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs

TWO CLASSES OF NOUNS IN *-ER*

99. The two classes of second declension nouns represented by **puer** and **ager** differ only in the fact that nouns like **puer** keep the **e** before **r** in all the cases, while in **ager** and similar nouns **e** appears before **r** only in the nominative singular. When a new word appears in the vocabulary the genitive, or a part of it, is printed after the nominative to show whether it is declined like **puer** or **ager.**

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM* (*A Dialogue*)

100. 1. Quid facit puer?
Puer librum legit.
2. Quis est puer?
Puer est fīlius poētae.
3. Quid discit puer in scholā?
Puer in scholā linguam Latīnam discit.
4. Quid facit puer cum in scholā nōn est?
Puer labōrat in agrīs cum in scholā nōn est.
5. Quid facit puella?
Puella epistulam scrībit.
6. Cūr puellam nōn laudās?

Puellam nōn laudō quod nōn est impigra.
7. Quid portat soror tua?
Soror mea līlia portat.
8. Cūr Sextus nōn habet pecūniam?
Sextus nōn habet pecūniam quod nōn labōrat.
9. Quid fēmina puerō dat?
Fēmina puerō librum dat.
10. Quid puella in agrō agricolae videt?
Puella in agrō agricolae equum videt.

101. VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, M., field
discit, learns
facit, does, makes
fēmina, -ae, F., woman
liber, librī, M., book
līlium, -ī, N., lily
puer, puerī, M., boy
quis, who?
Sextus, -ī, M., Sextus (*the name of a man or boy*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

102. 1. Puer libr— (*a book*) legit. 2. Sextus in agr— (*the field*) cum agricol— (*the farmer*) labōrat. 3. Cūr puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudās? 4. Puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudō quod nōn labōr— (*subject "they"*). 5. Puer— (*the boys*) praemium nōn dō.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

103. 1. What grammatical term is connected in derivation with **fēmina?** 2. Find two nouns derived from **liber.** 3. The plural form **puerī** sometimes means "children." What is a *puerile* objection?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline **liber.** 2. Make the direct objects plural in the answers to questions 1, 5, and 10 of section **100.** 3. Make the direct and indirect objects plural in the answer to 9.

LESSON XVI

SECOND DECLENSION: (Continued)

104. SUMMARY OF SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

Singular

Nom.	templum	amīcus	ager	puer
Gen.	templī	amīcī	agrī	puerī
Dat.	templō	amīcō	agrō	puerō
Acc.	templum	amīcum	agrum	puerum
Abl.	templō	amīcō	agrō	puerō

Plural

Nom.	templa	amīcī	agrī	puerī
Gen.	templōrum	amīcōrum	agrōrum	puerōrum
Dat.	templīs	amīcīs	agrīs	puerīs
Acc.	templa	amīcōs	agrōs	puerōs
Abl.	templīs	amīcīs	agrīs	puerīs

a. The noun **vir** (genitive **virī**) also belongs to this declension. The endings of the genitive, dative, accusative, etc., are added to the nominative as in **puer.**

THE VOCATIVE

105. In addition to the cases which have been given, there is another case called the *vocative,* which is used to denote the person addressed. Thus, in the sentences "John, come here," and "Boy, what street is this?" the words *John* and *boy* are in the vocative case.

The vocative has the same form as the nominative in all Latin nouns except those of the second declension ending in **-us.** The vocative singular of these nouns ends in **-e.** Thus, the vocative singular of **amīcus** is **amīce,** the vocative of **Mārcus** is **Mārce.** The vocative plural is always the same as the nominative plural.

SUMMARY OF IMPORTANT FACTS REGARDING THE SECOND DECLENSION

106. (1) The genitive singular ends in **-ī.**

(2) Nouns ending in **-us** and **-er** are chiefly masculine.

(3) Nouns ending in **-um** are neuter.

(4) The nominative plural of masculine nouns ends in **-ī.**

(5) The nominative and accusative plural of all neuter nouns (in all declensions) end in **-a.**

READING EXERCISE

107. 1. Mārcus, amīcus meus, agricola est, et multōs equōs habet. Mārcus equīs hieme multum frūmentum dat. Equī magnī et validī sunt. Aestāte equī interdum in agrīs sunt, et tum frūmentum nōn edunt. Sed frūmentum equīs damus cum labōrant.

2. Puerum in agrō cum agricolā vidēmus. Puer fīlius agricolae est. Agricola fīliam quoque habet. Fīlia hodiē in hortō labōrat. Sed fīlia nōn est sōla in hortō. Māter puellae quoque in hortō est.

3. Cūr, Sexte, sōlus in viā ambulās?
Sōlus in viā ambulō quod amīcī meī hodiē in agrīs labōrant.
Cūr in agrīs cum amīcīs tuīs nōn labōrās?
In agrīs nōn labōrō quod nōn validus sum.

108. VOCABULARY

edunt, they eat
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain
hodiē, today
hortus, -ī, M., garden
Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus (*the name of a man or boy*)
multī, many
sōlus, alone
validus, strong, well

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

109. Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. The boy is the son of my friend.

2. I often praise the boy, but I do not praise the boy's friend.

3. We see the farmer's fields from the window of the cottage.

4. The boys are now in the garden with your daughter.

5. My friend's horse stands in the street.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

110. 1. What is *horticulture?* 2. Give two English words connected in derivation with **sōlus.** 3. What is a *valid* reason? 4. What connection in meaning do you see between **validus** and *invalid?* 5. What are *edible* berries?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Make a list of the neuter nouns in this lesson and the three preceding lessons, and give the nominative plural of each. 2. Give the nominative plural of the masculine nouns in this lesson and the two preceding lessons. 3. Decline **hortus tuus.**

LESSON XVII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

111. DECLENSION OF *BONUS* IN ALL GENDERS

The adjective **bonus** is declined as follows:

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

		Plural	
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

a. The following adjectives, which have previously been given in the feminine, are declined like **bonus**:

magnus, parvus, longus, multus, perīculōsus, benignus, cārus, grātus, laetus, Latīnus, clārus, obscūrus, validus.[1]

ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

112. An adjective must agree with its noun in gender, but its endings are not necessarily the same as those of the noun. Since **agricola, nauta,** and **poēta** are masculine, any adjective modifying one of them will be masculine.

The words for *a good sailor* are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
Gen.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
Dat.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
Acc.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
Abl.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

113. The masculine form of some adjectives may be used in the plural without a noun to denote persons. Thus, **multī** means *many (persons)*, **bonī** means *the good (persons)*. In descriptions of war or military operations of any kind **nostrī** means *our men* or *our soldiers.*

The neuter form of some adjectives may be used in the plural to refer to things. Thus, **multa** means *many things.*

[1] The adjectives **sōlus** and **nūllus** are like **bonus** except in the genitive and dative singular.

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA



A ROMAN FARM SCENE

READING EXERCISE

114. 1. Sextus bonus agricola est, et multum frūmentum habet. Magnum tēctum et parvum hortum habet. In hortō cum fīliā et fīliō nunc stat. Vesperī saepe in viīs cum amīcīs ambulat. Multī Sextum amant quod benignus est.

2. Fīlius Sextī in magnō bellō pugnat, et gladium et scūtum habet. Pūblius quoque, amīcus Sextī, in bellō pugnat.

3. Librōs multōrum poētārum laudō, sed librōs tuōs nōn laudō. Poēta bonus nōn es. Fāma tua nōn magna est.

4. Nauta sōlus in viā stat. Amīcum expectat. Sed amīcus in tēctō tuō manet. Nautam nōn videt.

5. Nunc amīcus ex tēctō properat. Nauta laetus est quod amīcum videt. Nauta et amīcus nōn diū in viā ambulant, quod amīcus dēfessus est.

6. Cūr, amīce, ex tēctō properās? Ex tēctō properō quod nautam in viā videō.

7. Amīcus tuus sum, sed cōnsilium tuum nōn laudō. Nōn est cōnsilium bonum. Pūblius habet cōnsilium bonum.

115. VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, N., war
cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, weary
gladius, -ī, M., sword
Pūblius, -ī, M., Publius (*name of a man or boy*)
pugnat, fights
scūtum, -ī, N., shield

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

116. 1. Sextus magn— equ— (*horses*) habet. 2. Tēctum me— est magn—, casa tu— est parv—. 3. Amīcōs benign— habeō. 4. Puerī in silvā sunt sōl—. 5. Nauta est valid—, sed fīlius naut— nōn est valid—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

117. 1. What is a *belligerent* attitude? 2. What is the meaning of the expression "*ante bellum* days" (referring to the

American Civil War)? 3. What was the original meaning of *gladiator?* 4. Find the meaning of the name of the flower, *gladiolus*.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Rewrite the first sentences in paragraphs 4 and 5 of section **114**, changing the subjects to the plural. 2. Decline **meus** and **tuus** in all genders and both numbers.

LESSON XVIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS
(Continued)

ADJECTIVES WITH THE MASCULINE IN *-ER*

118. There are certain adjectives which end in **-er** instead of **-us** in the nominative singular of the masculine. These are of two classes, with the same difference which has been seen in nouns ending in **-er**.

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō

Plural

Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
ACC.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
ABL.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

Plural

NOM.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

REVIEW LIST OF ADJECTIVES

119. The following adjectives have previously been seen in the feminine form. The nominative in all three genders is here given.

apertus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um
bonus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um
grātus, -a, -um
laetus, -a, -um
Latīnus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um
meus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um
obscūrus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um
perīculōsus, -a, -um
tuus, -a, -um
aeger, -gra, -grum
impiger, -gra, -grum
miser, -a, -um
noster, -tra, -trum
pulcher, -chra, chrum

a. The adjectives **aeger, aegra, aegrum,** *ill, sick,* **impiger, -gra, -grum,** *energetic,* **noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our,* and **vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your,* are declined like **pulcher.**

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

120. As has been said before, the words for *my* (*mine*), *your* (*yours*), *our* (*ours*), are adjectives in Latin, and hence they must agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns denoting the thing possessed. The word for *your*, *yours*, when denoting possession by more than one person, is **vester, -tra, -trum.** It will appear later in the reading exercises.

READING EXERCISE

121. 1. Amīcus meus multōs librōs habet. Librōs amat. Fīlius amīcī meī librōs nōn amat. Sed puer bonus est, et bene labōrat. Validus et impiger est. Equōs bonōs amat et laetus est cum in agrīs labōrat.

2. Māter tua parvum hortum habet. In hortō sunt rosae et līlia. Māter tua mihi saepe rosās dat. Soror mea līlia et rosās amat, et in hortō cum fīliā amīcī meī interdum ambulat. Ex fenestrā tēctī nostrī hortum vidēmus.

3. Hortus Mārcī est pulcher, et ibi cum Mārcō saepe ambulō. Mārcus est amīcus meus. Sed hodiē in hortō sōlus ambulō quod Mārcus est aeger. Miser sum quod amīcus meus est aeger.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

122. 1. Sextus equōs me— laudat. 2. Bellum long— expectāmus. 3. Fīlia tu— est puella bon—. 4. Īnsula est parv— sed pulchr—. 5. Nautae sunt valid—.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together the words for *an unhappy friend.* 2. Decline together the words for *a beautiful garden.* 3. Give the Latin for the following phrases as subjects and as direct objects: *an unhappy sailor, a sick friend, a strong boy.* 4. Decline **impiger,** *energetic,* using **pulcher** as a model.

LESSON XIX

PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ*

123. The verb **portō** is conjugated as follows in the present indicative passive.

Singular	*Plural*
portor, *I am carried*	portāmur, *we are carried*
portāris,[1] *you are carried*	portāminī, *you are carried*
portātur, *he, she, it is carried*	portantur, *they are carried*

a. These forms may also be translated: *I am being carried, you are being carried, he is being carried,* etc.

b. A verb which represents an action or state as a fact is said to be in the *indicative mood.*

PERSONAL ENDINGS

124. The personal endings used in the passive are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-or (-r), *I*	**-mur,** *we*
-ris, *you*	**-minī,** *you*
-tur, *he, she, it*	**-ntur,** *they*

a. The characteristic vowel **-ā-** becomes short before **-ntur,** and it disappears before **-or.**

VOICE

(23) The two sentences *The boy helps his friend* and *The boy is helped by his friend* both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we say something about the boy. But in the first sentence the subject does the act, while in the second the act is done by someone else. A verb which denotes an act done by the subject is said to be in the *active voice,* and a verb which denotes an act which is done to the subject by some other person or thing is said to be in the *passive voice.*

[1] There is also a form of the second person singular ending in -re. It is not used in the exercises of this book.

READING EXERCISE

125. 1. Pūblius est vir bonus, et ab amīcīs amātur et laudātur. Fīlium habet, sed fīlius nōn laudātur, quod impiger nōn est et male labōrat. Pūblius est miser quod fīlius nōn est impiger.

2. In tēctō tuō galeam et scūtum videō. Gladium quoque videō. Tua arma sunt Rōmāna. Nunc galeās et gladiōs in bellō vidēmus, sed scūta nōn vidēmus.

3. Oppidum nostrum viās lātās habet. In viīs multōs puerōs et puellās vidēmus. Puerī et puellae ex scholā properant.

4. Cūr nūllōs librōs hodiē portās? Librī meī hodiē ab amīcō meō portantur. Saepe librōs amīcī meī portō.

5. Ex oppidō nostrō castra vidēmus. Castra magna sunt. Amīcus meus nunc in castrīs est.

126. VOCABULARY

ā, ab, *preposition with ablative,* by, from

arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, weapons, arms

castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp

galea, -ae, F., helmet

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad

male, badly

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman

vir, virī, M., man

a. The word **castra** is used in the plural number with singular meaning. When it is the subject of a verb the verb must be plural, although translated by an English verb in the singular. When more than one camp is meant the same form is used as for one, but the rest of the sentence will make clear the fact that the meaning is plural. An adjective modifying **castra** must be plural.

b. In a sentence with a passive verb **ā** or **ab** commonly means *by*. Sometimes, however, this preposition is translated *from*. The distinction between **ē** or **ex** and **ā** or **ab** meaning *from* is that **ē** or **ex** is used to de-

note place *from within which,* while **ā** or **ab** means *from near,* or does not indicate that the starting point is within the place named. Thus, *They set out from the town* means that they were in the town when they started, and therefore **ē** or **ex** will be used. In the sentence *We walked from the river to the hill, from* means *from near* or *from the side of,* and hence **ā** or **ab** will be used.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

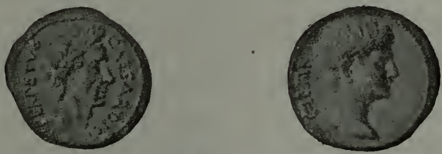
127. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The small boy reads many books. 2. Marcus is unhappy today. 3. The field is large, but the garden is small. 4. Your horse is beautiful, but he is not strong. 5. There are many roses in my garden.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

128. 1. Find some English words in which the first syllable appears to come from **ā** or **ab**. Look up the derivation of these words in the dictionary. 2. What is an *armory?* 3. What sort of person is a *malefactor?* 4. What are *virile* qualities?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the meaning of the following: 1. Laudātur, laudantur, laudāmur. 2. Amāmus, amāmur, amās, amāris. 3. Portat, portant, portātur, portantur. 4. Spectō, spector, spectāre, properāre.



ROMAN COINS

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

129. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XI–XIX

ager, agrī
arma, -ōrum
bellum, -ī
castra, -ōrum
cōnsilium, -ī
equus, -ī
fēmina, -ae
fīlius, -ī
frūmentum, -ī
galea, -ae
gladius, -ī
hortus, -ī
jānua, -ae
liber, librī
līlium, -ī
lūna, -ae
oppidum, -ī
praemium, -ī
puer, puerī
scūtum, -ī
stella, -ae
tabernāculum, -ī
tēctum, -ī

vir, virī

aestāte
domī
hieme
vesperī

aeger
clārus
dēfessus
lātus
miser
multus
multī
nūllus
obscūrus
sōlus
validus

quis
quid

habitō, -āre
habeō
labōrō, -āre

portō, -āre
spectō, -āre
stō, stāre

discit
facit
manet
timet
videt
edunt

diū
hodiē
interdum
male
noctū

cum (*conj.*)
quod
tum
ubi

ā, ab

WORD STUDY: LATIN *AE*, *OE*, AND ENGLISH *E*

130. In section **70** we saw certain changes in the spelling of some English words from Latin. Another change, which is to be found in a rather large number of words, is illustrated by the word *premium*, from Latin **praemium.** The diphthong **ae** of the Latin word is represented by the letter *e* in the English derivative. In like manner *equal* is from Latin **aequālis**, which has about the same meaning as *equal*, and

which in turn comes from another Latin word **aequus,** meaning *level, equal,* or *fair.*

Similarly the Latin diphthong **oe** becomes *e* in English derivatives. From Latin **poena,** *punishment,* we have *penalty, penal.* Latin **poenitēre** (also spelled **paenitēre**), *to repent,* is of common origin with **poena** and is the source of *penitent* and *penitentiary.* The word *federation* is connected with a Latin word **foederātus,** meaning *bound together by a treaty* (**foedus,** *a treaty*).

WORDS FORMED WITH *EX*

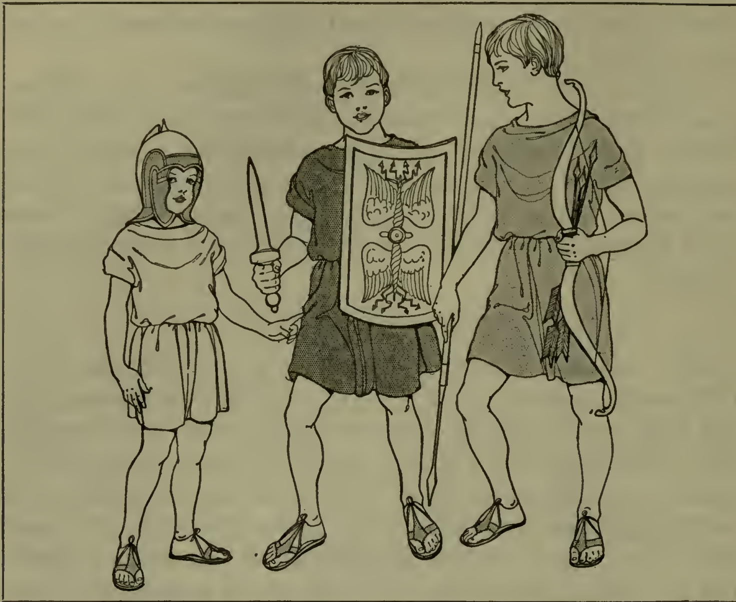
131. Another change is seen in the combination of **ex** with words beginning with **s,** as for example **ex+spectō.** In the Latin word **expectō,** as given in this book, **s** is dropped, as in the English word *expect.* In like manner *exist* and *exile* come from compounds of **ex** with words beginning with **s,** in which **s** has been dropped. In the Latin of the time of Caesar and Cicero **s** was retained in these words (**exspectō, exsistō**), but at a later time the spelling without **s** developed. Some Latin textbooks employ the form with **s.**

LESSON XX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *HIC*

132. The demonstrative **hic,** *this* (plural *these*), is declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs



READING EXERCISE: *TRĒS PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ*

133. 1. Hic puer est Mārcus. Ā dextrā stat Sextus, ā sinistrā stat Pūblius. Hī trēs sunt puerī Rōmānī. Arma quoque Rōmāna vidēmus. Mārcus gladium et scūtum habet. Sextus jaculum et sagittās portat. Pūblius est parvus, et arma nōn habet. Mārcus et Sextus et Pūblius sunt fīliī Titī. Titus est sagittārius, et nunc in Hispāniā est. Rōmānī cum incolīs Hispāniae pugnant.

2. (*Marcus speaks.*) Mārcus sum. Hic puer parvus est Pūblius. Pūblius gladium nōn habet quod parvus est. Puer tertius est Sextus. Sextus est magnus puer et arma portat. Fīliī Titī sumus.

3. (*Publius speaks.*) Pūblius sum. Arma nōn habeō quod parvus sum. Sextus et Mārcus sunt puerī magnī et arma habent. Arma amant et bellum laudant, sed nōn in bellō pugnant. Māter mea bellum nōn laudat.

134. VOCABULARY

dextra, -ae, F., right hand;
ā dextrā, on the right
hic, haec, hoc, this
jaculum, -ī, N., javelin
pugnō, -āre, fight
sagitta, -ae, F., arrow
sagittārius, -ī, M., archer
sinistra, -ae, F., left hand;
ā sinistrā, on the left
tertius, -a, -um, third
Titus, -ī, M., Titus (*name of a man or boy*)
trēs, three



ROMAN JAVELINS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

135. Write in Latin: 1. This boy and this girl are in our school. 2. A friend of this boy is now in our town. 3. I often give this boy money. 4. (There) are no roses in this garden. 5. This farmer is a strong man.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

136. 1. What is *dexterity?* 2. What is a *pugnacious* disposition? 3. What is a *sinister* appearance?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following as subjects: *these boys, these girls, these dangers, these sailors.* 2. Give the Latin for the following as objects: *these fields, these cottages, these farmers.* 3. Give the Latin for the following phrases: *in this field, in these fields, to this boy, to these boys, from these cottages.*

LESSON XXI

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

CASE USE WITH PREPOSITIONS

137. The prepositions **cum, ex,** and **in,** as has been seen, take the ablative case. There are, however, many prepositions with which the accusative is used. The accusative, therefore, in addition to being the case of the object of a verb, is also found with certain prepositions.

When a new preposition is given in the vocabulary, the case with which it is used will be indicated. Thus **ante,** *prep. with acc.*, means that **ante** is a preposition which takes the accusative. The number of prepositions taking the accusative is larger than the number taking the ablative.

PHRASES WITH *TO*

138. We have seen that an English phrase with *to* is translated by the dative case if it is equivalent to an indirect object or if it depends on an adjective similar in meaning to those given in section **48.** In such phrases the English word *to* is represented by the case ending of the Latin word. But phrases with *to* which denote the place to which a person or thing moves are expressed by the preposition **ad** followed by the accusative case of the word denoting the place to or toward which the motion is directed.

READING EXERCISE: *SCHOLA MEA ET AMĪCĪ MEĪ*

139. 1. Māne ad scholam properō. Multī virī tum per viās properant. Ante scholam nostram est magnum aedificium. In hōc aedificiō multī virī labōrant. Amīcus meus, Pūblius, ibi aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Post hoc aedificium est via lāta. Trāns hanc viam est parva casa, et amīcus meus in hāc casā habitat.

2. Vesperī post hōrās scholae cum amīcīs meīs saepe ambulō.

Interdum amīcōs ad tēctum nostrum invītō. Saepe ad tēcta amīcōrum invītor. Multōs amīcōs habeō.

3. Māne puerī et puellae ad scholam properant. Haec schola est ante magnum aedificium. Ibi labōrō. Fīlius amīcī meī in hōc aedificiō aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Vesperī post hōrās scholae fīlius amīcī in viā ambulat. Multī puerī tum in viīs ambulant. Interdum fīlius amīcī ad tēctum meum invītātur. Multōs amīcōs habet.

140. VOCABULARY

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward
aedificium, -ī, N., building
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of
hōra, -ae, F., hour
invītō, -āre, invite
māne, in the morning
per, *prep. with acc.*, through
post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

141. 1. Puella ad cas— (*the cottages*) properat. 2. Cum amīcō per silv— (*forest*) ambulāmus. 3. Tabernāculum est in silvā post oppid— (*town*). 4. Est magnum aedificium trāns vi—(*the street*). 5. Amīcī meī saepe ad tēct— tu— (*your house*) invītantur.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

142. 1. What is an *edifice?* 2. Find the origin of the abbreviations *a. m.* and *p. m.* 3. What is a *transcontinental* railroad? 4. What is an *ante-room?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following phrases: *Behind the forest, in the forest, through the forest, from the forest.* 2. Tell which of the phrases with *to* in the following sentences will be translated by **ad** with the accusative and which by the dative case alone: (*a*) I gave the letter to the boy. (*b*) He is walking to the town. (*c*) We hurried to the window. (*d*) The report was not pleasing to your father. 3. Decline together the words for *this hour.*

LESSON XXII

SECOND CONJUGATION

CHARACTERISTIC VOWEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

143. The verb **monet,** *he warns,* differs from **portat,** *he carries,* in that it has **e** instead of **a** before the ending **-t.** Similarly **monēmus,** *we warn,* differs from **portāmus,** *we carry,* and **monētur,** *he is warned,* differs from **portātur,** *he is carried.*

This verb belongs to the *second conjugation.* The infinitive, meaning *to warn,* is **monēre.** All verbs which have the present active infinitive ending in **-ēre** are of the second conjugation and are conjugated like **moneō.** The present indicative of **moneō** is as follows:

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *MONEŌ*

144.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
moneō, *I warn, am warning*	moneor, *I am warned*
monēs, *you warn,* etc.	monēris, *you are warned*
monet, *he, she, it warns,* etc.	monētur, *he, she, it is warned*
Plural	*Plural*
monēmus, *we warn*	monēmur, *we are warned*
monētis, *you warn*	monēminī, *you are warned*
monent, *they warn*	monentur, *they are warned*

a. The personal endings are the same as in the forms of **portō.**

READING EXERCISE: *PERĪCULUM SOCIŌRUM NOSTRŌRUM*

145. 1. Sociī nostrī magnō in perīculō sunt quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent. Saepe monentur, sed nōn timent. Sī auxilium nostrum expectant, arma habēre dēbent. Magnās cōpiās habēre dēbent. Perīculum nōn vident, sed perīculum magnum est.

2. Cūr sociī nostrī monentur?
   Sociī nostrī monentur quod in perīculō sunt.
3. Cūr sociī in perīculō sunt?
   Sociī in perīculō sunt quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent.
4. Quid sociī expectant?
   Sociī auxilium nostrum expectant.
5. Quid sociī habēre dēbent?
   Sociī magnās cōpiās habēre dēbent.
6. Cūr sociī satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent?
   Sociī satis magnās cōpiās nōn habent quod perīculum nōn vident.
7. Cūr sociōs habēre dēbēmus?
   Sociōs habēre dēbēmus quod patria nostra interdum in perīculō est.

146. VOCABULARY

auxilium, -ī, N., assistance, help
cōpia, -ae, F., plenty; *plural,* **cōpiae, -ārum,** troops, forces
dēbeō, -ēre, owe, ought
moneō, -ēre, warn
parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared
perīculum, -ī, N., danger, peril
satis, *adv.,* enough
sī, *conj.,* if
socius, -ī, M., ally
timeō, -ēre, fear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

147. Write in Latin: 1. We are sometimes warned by our friends. 2. You (*singular*) ought to have your book. 3. War is not feared by our allies. 4. You do not see our house from your window. 5. We do not fear danger, because we are prepared.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

148. 1. What is an *auxiliary* verb? 2. What is a *copious* supply? 3. Find in a dictionary the origin of the words *debt* and *peril.* 4. What is the original meaning of *monitor?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **dēbeō, timeō,** and **videō** in the present tense, active and passive. 2. Give the Latin for *they see, they praise, he sees, he praises.*

LESSON XXIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *ILLE*

149. The demonstrative **ille,** *that* (plural *those*) is declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

READING EXERCISE

150. 1. Ille vir est caecus, sed in viīs sine amīcō saepe ambulat neque perīculum timet. Saepe ad tēctum fīliī ambulat. Fīlius in tēctō post hortum nostrum habitat.

2. Quam timida illa puella est. Sed nūllum perīculum in hīs locīs est, et puella tūta est.

3. Cūr pecūniam illī puerō iterum dās? Pecūniam iterum illī puerō dō quod epistulās meās portat. Hodiē epistulam ad amīcum tuum portat.

4. Mārcus nōn adest. Ubi est? Cum amīcō in silvā est. Sed Titus et Sextus adsunt. Hī puerī sunt amīcī meī. Mārcus quoque amīcus meus est.

5. Fīlia illīus fēminae nunc in Britanniā est. Fēmina epistulās ad fīliam saepe scrībit. Fīlia quoque epistulās scrībit. Hās epistulās amīcō dat. Amīcus epistulās ad Americam portat.

151. VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, be present, be at hand
caecus, -a, -um, blind
ille, illa, illud, that
iterum, *adv.*, again
locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** N.), place
neque, *conj.*, nor, and not
quam, *adv.*, how, as, than
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
timidus, -a, -um, timid
tūtus, -a, -um, safe

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

152. 1. Quis est ill— puer? 2. Cūr ill— puella nūllōs librōs habet? 3. Fīlia ill— virī aegra est. 4. Epistulās saepe ill— puerō dō. 5. Ill— fēmina et ill— vir incolae Hiberniae sunt.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

153. 1. What is the meaning of *reiterate?* 2. Find an adjective, a noun, and a verb which are connected in derivation with **locus.** 3. What is meant by the statement "The legislature adjourned *sine die*"? 4. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with **timidus.**

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following phrases as subjects: *that town, those towns, these towns, that friend, those friends, these friends.* 2. Give the Latin for the following phrases as direct objects: *that forest, those forests, these forests, that field, those fields, these fields.* 3. Decline together the words **illa terra.**

LESSON XXIV

IMPERFECT OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

154. In the English sentences *I walked* and *I was walking* the verbs *walked* and *was walking* both denote past time. The only difference is that the second represents the act as continuing or in progress in the past, while the first merely indicates that the act was in past time, without any reference to its continuance. Latin has no means of showing the difference between these two expressions. The verb **ambulābam** may mean either *I walked* or *I was walking.*

The Latin tense which corresponds to such verb forms as *walked* and *was walking* is called the *imperfect.*

THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

155. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** have the following forms in the imperfect active:

Singular

portābam, *I was carrying* or *I carried*
portābās, *you were carrying, you carried*
portābat, *he, she, it was carrying, he carried*, etc.

Plural

portābāmus, *we were carrying, we carried*
portābātis, *you were carrying, you carried*
portābant, *they were carrying, they carried*

TENSE OF VERBS

(24) When someone says *The boy stands in the street*, we know that the act is going on while we are being told about it; that is, in the present time. If the sentence is *The boy stood in the street*, we know that the act took place at some past time, and similarly the sentence *The boy will stand in the street* shows that the act is going to take place in the future. In these

Singular

monēbam, *I was warning* or *I warned*
monēbās, *you were warning, you warned*
monēbat, *he, she, it was warning*, etc.

Plural

monēbāmus, *we were warning*, etc.
monēbātis, *you were warning*, etc.
monēbant, *they were warning*, etc.

a. The syllable **ba,** which is seen in all the forms of the imperfect, is called the *tense sign* of the imperfect.

READING EXERCISE

156. 1. Gallī auxilium Rōmānōrum postulābant quod Germānī agrōs Galliae vāstābant et oppida occupābant. Gallī prō patriā fortiter pugnābant, sed satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant, et propter perīculum auxilium dēsīderābant.

2. Auxilium vestrum postulāmus quod bellum timēmus. Agrī nostrī vāstantur, et oppida occupantur. Sine sociīs patria nostra nōn tūta est.

3. Bellum nōn dēsīderāmus, sed Rōmānōs nōn timēmus. Patria cāra est, et prō patriā pugnāmus.

---

sentences the form of the verb shows what is the time of the act. The forms of a verb which show time are called *tenses*. There are six tenses in English. Their names are *present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect,* and *future perfect*. The following forms of the verb *walk* with the subject *I* show how these tenses are used.

Present	I walk
Past	I walked
Future	I shall walk
Present Perfect	I have walked
Past Perfect	I had walked
Future Perfect	I shall have walked

4. In bellō agricolae nōn sine perīculō in agrīs labōrant. Tum fēminae et puerī et puellae in oppidīs timent. Bellum fēminīs nōn grātum est.

5. Mārcus in viā cum parvā puellā ambulābat. Puella rosam portābat. Parva puella soror Mārcī est, et saepe cum Mārcō ambulat.

157. VOCABULARY

dēsīderō, -āre, desire
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul (*a country*)
Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul
Germānus, -ī, M., a German
occupō, -āre, seize
postulō, -āre, demand
prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, on behalf of, before
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
vāstō, -āre, lay waste

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

158. 1. In viā cum amīcīs ambulāba— (*subject "I"*). 2. Bellum nōn timēbā— (*subject "we"*), quod sociōs habēbā— (*subject "we"*). 3. Ille puer librum et epistulam portāba—. 4. Sociī nostrī prō patriā fortiter pugnāba—. 5. Auxilium postulābā— (*subject "we"*), sed perīculum nōn vidēbā— (*subject "you" singular*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

159. 1. Find two adjectives ending in *-ic* which are related to **Gallus** and **Germānus**. 2. What is the meaning of *pro-slavery?* 3. What is a *devastated* region?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **occupō** and **timeō** in the imperfect active. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *they were carrying, they were warning; he was praising, he was fearing*. 3. Rewrite paragraph 1 of section **156**, changing the verbs to the present tense.

LESSON XXV

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

160. The Latin word for *who* when used in a question is **quis,** and for *what* similarly used is **quid,** as has already been seen in preceding vocabularies. The genitive, meaning *whose, of whom,* or *of what* is **cujus** in the singular and **quōrum** or **quārum** in the plural. *Whom* is **quem** (or **quam**) in the singular and **quōs** (or **quās**) in the plural. These are forms of the *interrogative pronoun.*

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

161. In the phrases *what man, which book, what woman,* the forms *what* and *which* are attached to nouns, just as adjectives are. When thus used they are called *interrogative adjectives.*

THE FORMS OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

162. The forms of the interrogative pronoun and adjective are the same for most cases in Latin, but there are some forms of the adjective which are not used as pronouns.

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*	
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	*who, which, what*
GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus	*whose, of whom, of what*
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	*to whom, whom* (as indirect object)
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	*whom, which, what*
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	(*from, by*) *whom, etc.*

Plural

Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who, which, what*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose, of whom, of what*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to whom, to what, whom, what* (as indirect object)
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom, which, what*
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	(*from, by*) *whom, etc.*

a. The forms **quī** and **quod**, which are placed in parentheses above, are sometimes used as adjectives in the singular number. The nominative **quis** as a pronoun may be either masculine or feminine. It is sometimes used as a masculine adjective.

READING EXERCISE

163. 1. Cujus librum habēs?
Librum meum habeō.
2. In quō locō liber meus est?
Librum tuum nōn videō.
3. Quis in viā clāmat?
Sextus clāmat in viā. Mē vocat.
4. Cūr Sextō nōn respondēs?
Nōn respondeō quod māter mea mē in tēctō manēre jubet.
5. Cūr puerō praemium dās?
Praemium puerō dō quod impiger est.
6. Quōs in viā vidēs?
Sextum et trēs amīcōs videō.
7. Quibus tua māter praemia dat?
Mea māter praemia Titō et Pūbliō dat.

8. Hortus noster est inter tēctum et viam. Ā dextrā est mūrus altus, ā sinistrā est parvum aedificium. Hoc aedificium ā tēctō nōn longē abest, et saepe ibi labōrō.

164. VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, be away, be absent, be distant
altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep
clāmō, -āre, shout
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among
jubeō, -ēre, order, command
longē, *adv.*, at a distance, far
mē, me
mūrus, -ī, M., wall
respondeō, -ēre, answer, reply
vocō, -āre, call

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

165. Write in Latin: 1. Whose son are you? 2. Whose (*plural*) daughters are those girls? 3. Those girls are the daughters of Sextus and Marcus. 4. To whom (*singular*) was Titus giving money? 5. Whom (*singular*) do you see in the street? 6. Whom (*plural*) do the Germans fear?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

166. 1. What is meant by *altitude?* 2. What is the meaning of *inter-urban?* 3. What are *mural* decorations? 4. What is a *vocation?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following in the singular number and the masculine gender: *whom* (*direct object*), *whose*, *by whom*, *to whom* (*indirect object*). 2. Give the Latin for the following in the masculine plural: *whom* (*direct object*), *of whom* (*whose*), *by whom*. 3. Conjugate **respondeō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

LESSON XXVI

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

167. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** have the following forms in the imperfect indicative passive:

Singular	*Singular*
portābar, *I was being carried* or *I was carried*	monēbar
portābāris, *you were being carried*, etc.	monēbāris
portābātur, *he was being carried*, etc.	monēbātur
Plural	*Plural*
portābāmur, *we were being carried*, etc.	monēbāmur
portābāminī, *you were being carried*, etc.	monēbāminī
portābantur, *they were being carried*, etc.	monēbantur

READING EXERCISE

168. 1. Sociī nostrī superābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Agrī vāstābantur et oppida ācriter oppugnābantur. Auxilium rogābātur, sed cōpiās tum nōn habēbāmus. Nunc sociōs juvāre parātī sumus.

2. Agrī nostrī vāstābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus. Auxilium postulābāmus, sed multī perīculum nōn vidēbant. Nunc sociōs habēmus, et tūtī sumus.

3. Cōnsilia mea ōlim laudābantur. Cūr nunc nōn probantur?

Cōnsilia tua ōlim probābantur quod bellum nōn timēbāmus. Sed nunc cōnsilia tua nōn bona videntur, quod patria nostra in perīculō est.

4. Quamquam populus Rōmānus magnās cōpiās habēbat, sociōs quoque habēbat. Hī sociī in bellō saepe auxilium rogābant. Rōmānī sociōs in bellō juvābant.

169. VOCABULARY

ācriter, *adv.*, vigorously
juvō, -āre, help
ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time
oppugnō, -āre, attack
populus, -ī, M., people
probō, -āre, approve
quamquam, *conj.*, although
rogō, -āre, ask
superō, -āre, defeat, overcome
videor, -ērī, seem



STREET OF POMPEII

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

170. 1. Oppidum nostrum ā Rōmānīs ācriter oppugnābā—. 2. Rōmānī ā sociīs et amīcīs juvāba—. 3. Cōnsilium meum ā Sextō et Pūbliō laudābā—. 4. Ōlim sociī nostrī ā Germānīs nōn timēba—, sed nunc time—. 5. Hic puer saepe auxilium rogāba—. 6. Ōlim patria tua ā sociīs nōn laudābā—, sed nunc saepe laudā—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

171. 1. Find from a dictionary the meaning and origin of *adjutant* and *coadjutor*. 2. Give an adjective and a noun which are derived from **populus.** 3. What is the meaning of *approbation?* Why is it spelled with two p's? 4. What is an *insuperable* difficulty?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Copy the conjugation of **moneō** in the imperfect passive as given above, and write the English meaning after each form. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *they were being defeated, they were being warned, they are being warned.* 3. Decline the interrogative pronoun.

LESSON XXVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *IS*

THE FORMS OF *IS*

172. *Singular*

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	is, *he*	ea, *she*	id, *it*
GEN.	ejus, *his*	ejus, *her* (possessive)	ejus, *its*
DAT.	eī, *to him*	eī, *to her*	eī, *to it*
ACC.	eum, *him* (dir. obj.)	eam, *her* (dir. obj.)	id, *it* (dir. obj.)
ABL.	eō (*from, by, with*) *him*	eā (*from, by, with*) *her*	eō (*from, by, with*) *it*

Plural

NOM.	eī, iī } *they*	eae, *they*	ea, *they, those things*
GEN.	eōrum, *their*	eārum, *their*	eōrum, *their*
DAT.	eīs, iīs } *to them*	eīs, iīs } *to them*	eīs, iīs } *to them*
ACC.	eōs, *them* (dir. obj.)	eās, *them* (dir. obj.)	ea, *them* (dir. obj.)
ABL.	eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them*	eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them*	eīs, iīs } (*from, by, with*) *them*

a. The masculine and feminine forms will be translated like those of the neuter gender if they refer to antecedents which would be neuter in English. Thus a masculine form (**is, eum, eō,** etc.) will be used to refer to **ager** because it is masculine, and a feminine form will be used to refer to **silva.** But since *field* and *forest* are neuter in English, the pronouns which refer to them will be translated *it.*

ADJECTIVE USE OF *IS*

173. The forms of **is** are commonly used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, his, him, her,* etc., as has been seen, but sometimes they are used as adjectives. When they modify nouns they will be translated either *this* or *that* as the sense requires. Thus **is puer** may mean either *this boy* or *that boy,* and **ea puella** may mean either *this girl* or *that girl.* But **is** does not emphasize the idea that the thing denoted by the noun it modifies is near, as does **hic,** or that it is at some distance away, as does **ille.**

HIC AND *ILLE* AS PRONOUNS

174. The forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, him, his, her,* etc., instead of the forms of **is.** The plural forms **hī, illī,** etc., mean *these* or *those* (*persons*); the neuter **haec, illa,** etc., mean *these things* or *those things.*

READING EXERCISE

175. 1. Māter nostra ex jānuā nōs vocat. In tēctum properāmus, et avunculum nostrum cum fīliīs ejus ibi vidēmus. Avunculus noster et fīliī ejus nōs salūtant. Eōs salūtāmus.

2. Avunculus meus in parvō oppidō habitat. Tēctum ejus est magnum et pulchrum. Mārcus nōn longē ā tēctō avunculī meī habitat. Interdum ad tēctum avunculī meī invītor, et Mārcum tum videō. Cum eō saepe in viīs ambulō. Ōlim in eō oppidō habitābam, et Mārcum saepe vidēbam.

3. Cūr ita timidus es? Timeō quod nūlla arma habeō, et inimīcus meus armātus est. Nūllum auxilium videō, quamquam undique circumspectō. Manēre nōn audeō.

176. VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, armed
audeō, -ēre, dare
avunculus, -ī, M., uncle
circumspectō, -āre, look around
inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy
is, ea, id, this, that; he, she, it
ita, *adv.*, so
nōs, we, us
salūtō, -āre, greet
undique, *adv.*, on all sides

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

177. Write in Latin: 1. Titus is a good man, and we love him. 2. Sextus works well, but his son is not industrious. 3. I do not give him a reward, because he does not work well. 4. These men have no money, but they have many friends. 5. We were looking around on all sides, because our enemies had weapons.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

178. 1. What was the Spanish *Armada?* From what Latin word is *armada* derived? 2. What is an *audacious* plan? 3. What is a *circumspect* person? 4. What is the meaning of *inimical?* 5. What is the source and the meaning of the abbreviation *i. e.?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *him* (*direct object*), *with him*, *with her*, *his* (*of him*), *by him*, *to him* (*indirect object*); *them* (*masculine*, *direct object*), *of them*, *with them*, *to them* (*indirect object*), *by them*. 2. Conjugate **audeō** in the imperfect active and **salūtō** in the imperfect passive.



ROMAN DRINKING CUPS

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

179. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XX–XXVII

aedificium, -ī
auxilium, -ī
avunculus, -ī
cōpia, -ae
cōpiae, -ārum
dextra, -ae
hōra, -ae
inimīcus, -ī
jaculum, -ī
locus, -ī
mūrus, -ī
perīculum, -ī
populus, -ī
sagitta, -ae
sagittārius, -ī
sinistra, -ae
socius, -ī

altus, -a, -um
armātus, -a, -um
caecus, -a, -um
parātus, -a, -um
tertius, -a, -um
timidus, -a, -um
tūtus, -a, -um

hic, haec, hoc

ille, illa, illud
is, ea, id
nōs

trēs

absum, abesse
adsum, adesse
audeō, ēre
circumspectō, -āre
clāmō, -āre
dēbeō, -ēre
dēsīderō, -āre
invītō, -āre
jubeō, -ēre
juvō, -āre
moneō, -ēre
occupō, -āre
oppugnō, -āre
postulō, -āre
probō, -āre
pugnō, -āre
rogō, -āre
timeō, -ēre
respondeō, -ēre
salūtō, -āre
superō, -āre
vāstō, -āre

videor, -ērī
vocō, -āre

ācriter
fortiter
ita
iterum
longē
māne
ōlim
quam
satis
undique

ad
ante
inter
per
post
prō
propter
sine
trāns

neque
quamquam
sī

PREPOSITIONS AS PREFIXES

180. Latin prepositions are sometimes joined to the beginning of other words in order to form new words. Thus **ab** and **ad** are combined with **sum** to form **absum** and **adsum**,

and **circum** (*around*) is joined to **spectō** to form **circumspectō**. A word or syllable attached to the beginning of a word to modify its meaning and thus form a new word is called a *prefix*.

CHANGES IN MEANING WITH PREFIXES

181. Usually we can understand the meaning of a new word formed with a prefix when we know the meaning of the prefix and of the original word to which it is attached. Thus **circum**, *around*, and **spectō**, *look*, form **circumspectō**, *look around*. But sometimes the meaning of the new word has changed from that indicated by the parts or elements of which it is made up. Thus **expectō** (originally **exspectō**) cannot be defined exactly by taking the meanings of **ex** and **spectō**, although it keeps something of the idea of *look* (*look for*).

INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

182. In addition to the prepositions employed as prefixes there are some syllables which are used as prefixes and which are never found as separate words. A very important prefix of this sort is **re-** (sometimes spelled **red-**), which regularly means *back* or *again*. From **re-** and **vocō** we have **revocō**, *call back*.

A prefix which is never used as an independent word is called an *inseparable prefix*. Thus **re-** (**red-**) is an inseparable prefix.

CHANGES IN SPELLING

183. When a prefix is joined to a word, a vowel in the original word is sometimes changed. From **ex** and **capiō** we have **excipiō**, from **inter** and **faciō** we have **interficiō**. Changes of this kind take place only with short vowels. Such English words as *efficient*, *recipient*, *confess*, have come from Latin words in which such changes as those above mentioned have taken place.

EXERCISE

Find twenty words in your English dictionary beginning with *ex* (not *extra*).

LESSON XXVIII

FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

184. The future tense of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

ACTIVE

Singular	*Singular*
portābō, *I shall carry*	monēbō, *I shall warn*
portābis, *you will carry*	monēbis, *you will warn*
portābit, *he will carry*	monēbit, *he will warn*
Plural	*Plural*
portābimus, *we shall carry*	monēbimus, *we shall warn*
portābitis, *you will carry*	monēbitis, *you will warn*
portābunt, *they will carry*	monēbunt, *they will warn*

PASSIVE

Singular	*Singular*
portābor, *I shall be carried*	monēbor, *I shall be warned*
portāberis, *you will be carried*	monēberis, *you will be warned*
portābitur, *he, she, it will be carried*	monēbitur, *he, she, it will be warned*
Plural	*Plural*
portābimur, *we shall be carried*	monēbimur, *we shall be warned*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*	monēbiminī, *you will be warned*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*	monēbuntur, *they will be warned*

a. The syllable **-bi-** is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. It has the form **-bu-** in the third person plural, **-b-** in the first person singular of both voices, and **-be-** in the second person singular of the passive.

READING EXERCISE

185. 1. Germānī ā Rōmānīs superābuntur, et multa oppida eōrum occupābuntur. Sed Rōmānī haec oppida nōn dēlēbunt. Oppida Germānōrum ā perīculō servābuntur.

2. Rōmānī Germānōs superābunt et multa oppida eōrum occupābunt. Sed haec oppida ā Rōmānīs nōn dēlēbuntur. Rōmānī nōn sunt barbarī.

3. Illud oppidum crās oppugnābimus. Multī vulnerābuntur, et multī necābuntur, sed oppidum ā cōpiīs nōstrīs occupābitur.

4. Gallī castra ex hōc locō mox movēbunt. Nam Rōmānī magnās cōpiās habent, et castra Gallōrum oppugnāre parātī sunt.

5. Castra nostra movēbimus, quod cōpiae Rōmānōrum nōs oppugnāre parātae sunt. Tum eōs nōn timēbimus, quamquam magnās cōpiās nōn habēmus.

186. VOCABULARY

barbarī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, barbarians (*masculine form of an adjective,* **barbarus, -a, -um,** barbarian)
crās, *adv.*, tomorrow
dēleō, -ēre, destroy, blot out
moveō, -ēre, move
mox, *adv.*, soon
nam, *conj.*, for
necō, -āre, kill
servō, -āre, save, preserve
vulnerō, -āre, wound

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

187. 1. Sociōs nostrōs juvābi— (*subject "we"*), et patria eōrum servābi—. 2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum Gallōs nōn timēb— (*will not fear*). 3. Hoc oppidum oppugnābi— (*will be attacked*) et dēlēbi—. 4. Castra nostra ex eō locō movēbā— (*subject "we"*). 5. Gallī castra nostra in hōc locō nōn oppugnāb— (*will not attack*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

188. 1. Mention an adjective which is suggested by **barbarī.** 2. What is an *indelible* stain? 3. What is a *vulnerable* spot? 4. What is an *immovable* obstacle?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *he praises, he was praising, he will praise; they fear, they feared, they will fear; I see, I saw, I shall see.* 2. Conjugate **superō** and **videō** in the future active. 3. Decline together **is gladius.**

LESSON XXIX

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

189. The irregular verb **sum** does not have the tense signs which have been seen in the imperfect and future of regular verbs.

IMPERFECT	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*
eram, *I was*	erō, *I shall be*
erās, *you were*	eris, *you will be*
erat, *he, she, it was*	erit, *he will be*
Plural	*Plural*
erāmus, *we were*	erimus, *we shall be*
erātis, *you were*	eritis, *you will be*
erant, *they were*	erunt, *they will be*

a. The present infinitive of **sum** is **esse,** *to be.*

READING EXERCISE

190. 1. Ōlim in hāc terrā erant silvae multīs in locīs. Per hās silvās ferae bēstiae errābant. Barbarī quoque per silvās errābant et bēstiās saepe necābant. Nunc tēcta agricolārum

et oppida vidēmus in eīs locīs ubi ōlim erant barbarī et ferae bēstiae.

2. Semper amīcus tuus erō. Amīcī tuī erunt amīcī meī, et eōs juvābō sī in perīculō erunt. Sed patriae tuae amīcus nōn sum.

3. Rōmānī tōtum oppidum dēlēre parant. Quamquam Gallī fortiter pugnābunt, superābuntur, et multī necābuntur. Cēterī erunt servī.

4. Cūr in silvā cum amīcō herī nōn erās?
In silvā nōn eram, quod aeger eram.

5. Ubi herī erat hic puer? Eum nōn vidēbam.
Hic puer in tēctō avunculī meī herī erat.

191. VOCABULARY

bēstia, -ae, F., beast, animal
cēterī, -ae, -a, the other, the others
errō, -āre, wander, err
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild
herī, *adv.*, yesterday
parō, -āre, prepare
semper, *adv.*, always
servus, -ī, M., slave, servant
tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all

a. The adjective **cēterī** is used chiefly in the plural. Its forms in the singular may be disregarded.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

192. Write in Latin: 1. Yesterday I was in town with my uncle. 2. Your present will always be dear to me. 3. We were in the tents behind the forest. 4. We are Romans; we will not be slaves. 5. Formerly there were many fierce animals on this island.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

193. 1. What abbreviation is used for *et cetera?* 2. Find the meaning of the expression *Errare est humanum.* 3. What is the meaning of the motto *semper paratus?* 4. What is a *total* failure?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *he is, he was, he will be; I am, I was, I shall be; he is fierce, he is warned; she will be happy, she will be praised.* 2. Conjugate **imperō** and **habeō** in the future active. 3. Decline in full the adjective **ferus.**

LESSON XXX

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

THE USE OF *SUUS*

194. In the sentences *The boy praises his friends* and *The boys praise their friends* the words *his* and *their* refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are the same persons as the subjects. The Latin word which translates *his, her, its,* or *their* when thus used is **suus,** which is an adjective, declined like **meus** and **tuus.** The two sentences given above are in Latin:

(1) **Puer amīcōs suōs laudat.**
(2) **Puerī amīcōs suōs laudant.**

It is possible to decide whether *his* or *their* will be used to translate **suōs** in these sentences by observing whether the subject is singular or plural.

If the subject is feminine **suus** will be translated *her.* Thus, **Puella amīcōs suōs laudat** means *The girl praises her friends.*

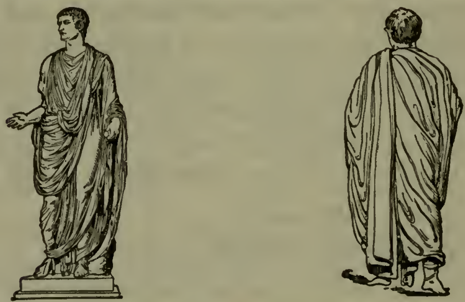
DISTINCTION BETWEEN *SUUS* AND *EJUS*

195. In the sentences *They praise his friends* and *He praises their friends* the words *his* and *their* do not refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are not the same persons as the subjects. When *his, her, its* are thus used they are translated by **ejus,** the genitive singular of **is,** and *their* similarly used is translated by **eōrum** (or **eārum**), the genitive plural of **is.**

It must be remembered that **suus** is an adjective, and takes the same gender, number, and case as the word denoting the thing possessed. Thus in the sentence above, **suōs** is masculine accusative plural to agree with **amīcōs**. The words **ejus** and **eōrum** (**eārum**) are pronouns, and do not change their forms to agree with the noun which they modify.

a. Sometimes possessive words are omitted in Latin when the meaning is quite clear, even though the corresponding English sentence requires that possessives be used. They are to be supplied in translation whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina fīliam amat, *the woman loves her daughter.*



MANNER OF WEARING THE TOGA

READING EXERCISE

196. 1. Hic vir fīlium suum semper laudat. Sed fīlius ejus nōn est impiger, neque habet multōs amīcōs.

2. Hī virī fīliōs suōs laudant. Sed fīliī eōrum nōn sunt impigrī, neque bene labōrant. Quamquam laudantur, puerī bonī nōn sunt.

3. Cornēlia fīliam suam amat, sed fīliam amīcī meī nōn amat. Fīlia ejus ad tēctum amīcī meī nōn saepe invītātur.

4. Illī barbarī sunt perfidī, et castra nostra oppugnāre parant. Igitur arma nostra parāta sunt. Sī castra oppugnābunt, statim eōs in fugam dabimus.

Barbarī castra vestra nōn oppugnābunt, quod arma parāta habētis.

5. Lignum ex silvā ad tabernāculum portō. Soror mea ante tabernāculum cēnam parat. Tabernāculum in locō apertō est. Ex hōc locō tabernāculum vidēs.

6. Māter tua imperat; cūr nōn pārēs?
Statim parēbō.

197. VOCABULARY

cēna, -ae, F., dinner
fuga, -ae, F., flight
igitur, *conj.*, therefore
imperō, -āre, command
lignum, -ī, N., wood
pāreō, -ēre, obey
perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their
statim, *adv.*, at once
vester, -tra, -trum, your (*of more than one person*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

198. Give the Latin equivalent for the italicized words in the following sentences, and then translate the sentences into Latin: 1. The farmer is working in *his* (own) field. 2. *His* son is also working in the field. 3. The barbarians were destroying *their* (own) towns. 4. We see *their* camp from this place. 5. The woman stands before the door of *her* cottage.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

199. 1. What is an *imperious* manner? 2. Find from a dictionary the origin of *empire*. 3. What is a *perfidious* enemy? 4. What is *lignite?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write two English sentences which if translated into Latin would require a form of **suus**, and two which would require **ejus** or **eōrum**. 2. Conjugate **sum** in the future indicative. 3. Decline **suus** in full.

LESSON XXXI

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

200. Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending in **-is.** In this declension the nominative singular is formed in a number of ways. But if the genitive singular is learned at the same time as the nominative, these variations in the nominative will cause no difficulty. This declension includes masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

201. There are two general classes of nouns in the third declension. They differ mainly in the ending of the genitive plural. Those which belong to the first class have the genitive plural ending in **-um.** Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

lēx, F., *law*		**mīles**, M., *soldier*	
	Singular		
Nom.	lēx	Nom.	mīles
Gen.	lēgis	Gen.	mīlitis
Dat.	lēgī	Dat.	mīlitī
Acc.	lēgem	Acc.	mīlitem
Abl.	lēge	Abl.	mīlite
	Plural		
Nom.	lēgēs	Nom.	mīlitēs
Gen.	lēgum	Gen.	mīlitum
Dat.	lēgibus	Dat.	mīlitibus
Acc.	lēgēs	Acc.	mīlitēs
Abl.	lēgibus	Abl.	mīlitibus

frāter, M., *brother*		**homō**, M., *man*	
	Singular		
Nom.	frāter	Nom.	homō
Gen.	frātris	Gen.	hominis
Dat.	frātrī	Dat.	hominī
Acc.	frātrem	Acc.	hominem
Abl.	frātre	Abl.	homine
	Plural		
Nom.	frātrēs	Nom.	hominēs
Gen.	frātrum	Gen.	hominum
Dat.	frātribus	Dat.	hominibus
Acc.	frātrēs	Acc.	hominēs
Abl.	frātribus	Abl.	hominibus

ENDINGS

202. The case endings, as seen above, are as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	—[1]	**-ēs**
Gen.	**-is**	**-um**
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-ēs**
Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**

READING EXERCISE

203. 1. In Galliā est nūllus rēx. In Americā est nūllus rēx. Ōlim in multīs terrīs Eurōpae erant rēgēs. Etiam nunc in Hispāniā est rēx.

2. Frāter meus et pater tuus in bellō erant. Frāter meus erat dux, et multī eum laudābant. Pater tuus nōn erat dux, sed erat bonus mīles, et fortiter pugnābat.

[1] The ending of the nominative singular in **lēx** and **mīles** is really **-s**, which gives **-x** when combined with **g** or **c**. But this ending does not appear in all third declension nouns.

3. Castra Rōmānōrum ā tergō oppugnābimus. Paucī mīlitēs in eō locō sunt, et eōs facile superābimus. Sine morā tōta castra occupābimus.

4. Sociī iterum auxilium nostrum postulant. Patria eōrum in perīculō est, et mīlitēs nōn sunt parātī. Eōs juvābimus, quamquam bellum nōn dēsīderāmus.

5. Hī virī tēcta sua iterum vident, et laetī sunt. Amīcī eōrum quoque laetī sunt.

204. VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, M., leader
etiam, *adv.*, even, also
facile, *adv.*, easily
frāter, -tris, M., brother
mora, -ae, F., delay
mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier
pater, -tris, M., father
paucī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, a few
rēx, rēgis, M., king
tergum, -ī, N., back; **ā tergō,** at the rear, from the rear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

205. Translate into Latin: 1. The king of the barbarians has large forces. 2. Our allies do not have (have not) a king. 3. I see your father and your brother in the street. 4. The soldiers praise their leaders. 5. We shall invite the soldier and his brother.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

206. 1. Find in a dictionary the derivation of *duke.* 2. What is a *fraternal* organization? 3. Explain the statement "A *moratorium* was declared at the beginning of the war." 4. What is the meaning and derivation of *militia?* 5. What is *paternal* affection? 6. Find in a dictionary a word derived from **paucī.** 7. How is *regalia* connected in meaning with **rēx**?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **magnus rēx**. 2. Decline together **lēx bona**. 3. Give the Latin for the following: *of the leader, of the leaders, with the leader, with the leaders*. 4. Give the third person plural, active voice, of the future tense of all the verbs of paragraph 3, section **203**.

LESSON XXXII

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

207. There are many neuter nouns of the third declension. These, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nominative in different ways. Neuter nouns belonging to the same general class of the third declension as the masculine and feminine nouns which have been given in the preceding lessons are declined as follows:

flūmen, N., *river*		**caput**, N., *head*	
	Singular		
NOM.	flūmen	NOM.	caput
GEN.	flūminis	GEN.	capitis
DAT.	flūminī	DAT.	capitī
ACC.	flūmen	ACC.	caput
ABL.	flūmine	ABL.	capite
	Plural		
NOM.	flūmina	NOM.	capita
GEN.	flūminum	GEN.	capitum
DAT.	flūminibus	DAT.	capitibus
ACC.	flūmina	ACC.	capita
ABL.	flūminibus	ABL.	capitibus

corpus, N., *body*

Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	corpus	Nom.	corpora
Gen.	corporis	Gen.	corporum
Dat.	corporī	Dat.	corporibus
Acc.	corpus	Acc.	corpora
Abl.	corpore	Abl.	corporibus

a. These three words illustrate different formations of the nominative, but there is no difference in the manner in which they are declined. If any one of the three is learned, the others can be declined when the nominative and genitive are known. Another important neuter noun of this class is **iter**, genitive **itineris**, *road* or *journey*, which appears in a later lesson.

b. In the neuter noun **templum** of the second declension, we have seen that the accusative singular is the same as the nominative singular, that the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**. These facts are also true of the neuter nouns of the third declension given above, and they are true of all neuter nouns in the Latin language, no matter what the declension to which they belong.

READING EXERCISE: *PUER QUĪ* (WHO) *NATAT*

208. 1. Tēctum nostrum nōn longē ā rīpā flūminis abest. Saepe in eō flūmine natō aut in rīpā stō. Frāter meus quoque interdum in flūmine natat. Natāre amāmus. In mediō flūmine est magnum saxum. Ad saxum natāmus, tum in saxō diū sedēmus et cēterōs puerōs spectāmus. Flūmen nōn altum est, et caput meum vidēs cum in flūmine stō. Corpora valida habēmus quod saepe natāmus et quod in agrīs labōrāmus.

2. Puerī Rōmānī quoque natāre amābant. Rōma est in rīpā magnī flūminis, et in flūmine puerī Rōmānī saepe natābant. Etiam hieme Rōmānī in flūmine natābant. Illī virī corpora valida habēbant, et mīlitēs bonī erant.

209. VOCABULARY

aut, *conj.*, or
caput, capitis, N., head
corpus, corporis, N., body
diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long
flūmen, flūminis, N., river
medius, -a, -um, middle, the middle of
natō, -āre, swim
rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*)
saxum, -ī, N., rock, stone
sedeō, -ēre, sit

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

210. Translate into Latin: 1. From this place I see the river. 2. This horse has a small head. 3. The soldiers have strong bodies. 4. The boys sometimes swim in the rivers. 5. There[1] are forests on the banks of the rivers.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

211. 1. What is *capital* punishment? *corporal* punishment? 2. Find an English word from **medius**. 3. What are *riparian* rights? 4. What is a *natatorium?* 5. What is a *sedentary* occupation?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Rewrite the last sentence of paragraph 1, section **208**, changing the noun **corpora** and all the verbs to the singular number. 2. Decline together **hoc flūmen**. 3. Conjugate **sedeō** in the future active. 4. Give the accusative singular of **rīpa, equus, rēx, mīles, corpus, flūmen.**

[1] See section **54**, page 20.

LESSON XXXIII

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

212. The second of the two general classes of nouns of the third declension differs from the first class in that the genitive plural ends in **-ium** instead of **-um.** There are also a few other differences. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

	collis, M., *hill*	**nūbēs**, F., *cloud*	**nox**, F., *night*
		Singular	
Nom.	collis	nūbēs	nox
Gen.	collis	nūbis	noctis
Dat.	collī	nūbī	noctī
Acc.	collem	nūbem	noctem
Abl.	colle	nūbe	nocte
		Plural	
Nom.	collēs	nūbēs	noctēs
Gen.	collium	nūbium	noctium
Dat.	collibus	nūbibus	noctibus
Acc.	collīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
Abl.	collibus	nūbibus	noctibus

a. The Romans sometimes used **-īs** and sometimes **-ēs** as the ending of the accusative plural of these nouns. The form in **-ēs** is regularly used in this book.

CLASSES OF MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-IUM*

213. The following two classes include practically all masculine and feminine nouns which have the genitive plural in **-ium**:

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs**, and having the same num-

ber of syllables in the nominative and in the genitive singular: **avis**, *gen.* **avis**; **nūbēs**, *gen.* **nūbis.**

(2) Nouns which have two consonants immediately preceding the ending of the genitive singular: **nox**, *gen.* **noctis.**

Other masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension regularly have the genitive plural in **-um.** In this book the genitive plural ending **-ium** is printed in the vocabulary after nouns which have that ending.

READING EXERCISE: *HOMŌ QUĪ LONGĒ Ā TĒCTŌ SUŌ EST*

214. Nox est, et in silvā avēs et bēstiae silent. Lūx obscūra est propter nūbēs, quamquam lūna vidētur. Longē ā tēctō meō sum. Ex summō colle parvum oppidum videō. Appropinquābō et cibum rogābō. Nam dēfessus sum, et nūllam pecūniam habeō. Sī nōn barbarī sunt, cibum mihi dabunt. Pecūniam nōn rogābō.

Cibum eī dabimus, nam dēfessus est. Nōn sumus barbarī. Longē ā tēctō suō est, et nūllam pecūniam habet. Nūllōs amīcōs in hōc locō habet. Sed homō est, et homō hominem juvāre dēbet.

215. VOCABULARY

appropinquō, -āre, approach
avis, avis, -ium, F., bird
cibus, -ī, M., food
collis, collis, -ium, M., hill
homō, hominis, M., man
lūx, lūcis, F., light
nox, noctis, -ium, F., night
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud
sileō, -ēre, be silent
summus, -a, -um, highest, highest part of, top of

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

216. Translate into Latin: 1. This boy is a friend of the birds. 2. The nights are long in winter. 3. I see the light in the window of the cottage. 4. We are hastening from the street because we see the clouds. 5. This man has no food because he has no money.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

217. 1. What is an *aviator?* 2. What is a *translucent* substance? 3. What are *nocturnal* birds? 4. What is meant by the phrase *summum bonum?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the genitive singular of all the nouns in the first two lines of section **214**. 2. Decline together **collis altus.** 3. Decline together **avis pulchra.** 4. Conjugate **appropinquō** and **sileō** in the imperfect active, and give the meaning of each form.

LESSON XXXIV

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

218. The second class of nouns of the third declension has a number of nouns which are neuter. The nominative of these ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**. They are declined as follows:

īnsigne, N., *badge* **exemplar,** N., *pattern* **animal,** N., *animal*

		Singular	
Nom.	īnsigne	exemplar	animal
Gen.	īnsignis	exemplāris	animālis
Dat.	īnsignī	exemplārī	animālī
Acc.	īnsigne	exemplar	animal
Abl.	īnsignī	exemplārī	animālī
		Plural	
Nom.	īnsignia	exemplāria	animālia
Gen.	īnsignium	exemplārium	animālium
Dat.	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus
Acc.	īnsignia	exemplāria	animālia
Abl.	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus

a. In addition to having the genitive plural ending in **-ium**, these nouns differ from the neuter nouns of the first class in that the ablative singular ends in **-ī** and the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia.**

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

219. The following rules will help in determining the gender of nouns of the third declension:

(1) Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** are feminine.
(2) Nouns ending in **-tor** are masculine.
(3) Nouns ending in **-e, -al, -ar, -n,** and **-t** are neuter.



ROMAN STANDARDS

READING EXERCISE: *ĪNSIGNIA MĪLITUM*

220. 1. Ōlim mīlitēs in proeliīs īnsignia habēbant. Sīc hostēs et amīcī nōtī erant. Signa quoque habēbant. Inter-

dum haec signa erant figūrae animālium. In pictūrā exemplāria hōrum signōrum vidētis. Nunc signa in proeliīs nōn vidēmus, et īnsignia saepe cēlantur.

2. Hostēs appropinquant. Ex hōc locō īnsignia eōrum vidēmus. Oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt, sed mīlitēs nostrī parātī sunt, et nōn timēmus. Hostēs superābuntur et oppidum nostrum tūtum erit quod mīlitēs bonōs patria nostra habet.

221. VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, -ium, N., animal
cēlō, -āre, conceal
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N., copy, specimen
figūra, -ae, F., figure
hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy
īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, N., decoration, badge
nōtus, -a, -um, known, well known
proelium, -ī, N., battle
sīc, *adv.*, thus, so
signum, -ī, N., sign, standard

a. The word **hostis** is applied to an enemy of one's country, while **inimīcus** means a personal enemy.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

222. 1. Corpora hōrum animāl— parva sunt. 2. Dux host— (*of the enemies*) gladium habet. 3. Frāter meus īnsignia pulchr— habet. 4. Mīlitēs nostrī sign— (*standards*) in proeliīs nōn portant. 5. Haec pictūra pulchra multīs nōt— est.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

223. 1. What is *exemplary* conduct? 2. Find an adjective and a noun derived from **hostis.** 3. What is meant by the *insignia* of office? 4. What distinction in use is commonly made between *notorious* and *noted?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **hostis miser.** 2. Decline together **parvum animal.** 3. Rewrite paragraph 2 of section **220,** changing all the verbs to the imperfect tense. 4. Give the genitive plural of **collis, homō, nox, hostis, figūra, proelium.**

LESSON XXXV

PERFECT TENSE

MEANING OF THE PERFECT

224. In addition to the imperfect, Latin has another tense, called the *perfect,* denoting past time.

The perfect tense of the Latin verb is sometimes translated by such forms as *I have carried, you have carried,* etc., and sometimes by the simple past tense *I carried, you carried,* etc. The meaning of the rest of the sentence will usually make it easy to decide which of these two translations should be used.

FORMS OF THE PERFECT

225. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the perfect active:

Singular

portāvī, *I carried,* or *I have carried*
portāvistī, *you carried,* or *you have carried*
portāvit, *he carried,* or *he has carried*

Plural

portāvimus, *we carried,* or *we have carried*
portāvistis, *you carried,* or *you have carried*
portāvērunt, *they carried,* or *they have carried*

Singular	*Plural*
monuī, *I warned,* or *I have warned*	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt

a. The verbs **amō, laudō, superō,** and most other verbs of the first conjugation form their perfects like **portō.** The perfects of **terreō, timeō,** and **habeō** are like that of **moneō.** The perfect of **maneō** is **mānsī, mānsistī,** etc.

b. The personal endings used in the perfect active differ from those used with the other tenses. They are as follows:

Singular	*Plural*
-ī	**-imus**
-istī	**-istis**
-it	**-ērunt**

THE PERFECT OF *SUM*

226. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the perfect:

Singular	*Plural*
fuī, *I have been*	fuimus, *we have been*
fuistī, *you have been*	fuistis, *you have been*
fuit, *he has been*	fuērunt, *they have been*

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE PERFECT AND THE IMPERFECT

227. The distinction between the perfect and the imperfect tenses consists in the fact that the imperfect represents an act as going on in past time or denotes a situation in past time, while the perfect either denotes a single past act without reference to its continuance or is equivalent to the English present perfect.

In the sentence *We crossed the river* a single act in past time is denoted, and hence the perfect will be used in Latin. Similarly, in the sentence *We have crossed the river*, the verb is in the present perfect, and the Latin equivalent will require the perfect. On the other hand, *We were crossing the river* represents an act as going on in past time, and *Everyone feared war*

denotes a situation in past time. Hence the imperfect will be used in these two sentences.

READING EXERCISE

228. 1. Gēns vestra bellum amat, et semper amāvit. Rōmānī vōs in proeliīs saepe superāvērunt et multās urbēs vestrās etiam expugnāvērunt. Sed in terrā vestrā nōn mānsērunt.

2. Cīvēs nostrī bellum nōn dēsīderant, sed gentem vestram nōn timent neque timuērunt. Nōn sunt ignāvī, sed nōn facile ad bellum excitantur.

3. Cūr hūc properāvistī? Hūc properāvī, quod frāter meus in perīculō est et auxilium meum postulat. Auxilium tuum quoque dēsīderat. Tibi semper benignus fuit, et auxilium dare dēbēs.

4. Frātrem tuum saepe monuī. Cūr perīculum nōn videt? Auxilium nōn dabō.

229. VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M., citizen
excitō, -āre, arouse, stir up, excite
gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation
hūc, *adv.*, to this place, hither
ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly
urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city
vōs, you (*plural, nominative and accusative*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

230. 1. Mīlitēs hunc ducem semper amāv—. 2. Pater meus saepe frātrem meum monu—. 3. Sociī nostrī auxilium postulāv—. 4. Amīcī nostrī benignī fu—, et eōs amāmus. 5. Hanc gentem timu— (*subject "we"*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

231. 1. What is meant by *civic* virtues? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *civilization* and **cīvis**? 3. Give an English noun which is derived from **excitō.** 4. What is the difference between *urban* and *urbane?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **moneō** and **maneō** through the perfect indicative active, and give meanings. 2. Decline **cīvis**. 3. Write the third person plural of **portō** and **moneō** in the active voice, in all the tenses given thus far.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

232. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXVIII–XXXV

animal, -ālis
avis, avis
barbarī, -ōrum
bēstia, -ae
caput, capitis
cēna, -ae
cibus, -ī
cīvis, cīvis
collis, collis
corpus, corporis
dux, ducis
exemplar, -āris
figūra, -ae
flūmen, flūminis
frāter, frātris
fuga, -ae
gēns, gentis
homō, hominis
hostis, hostis
īnsigne, īnsignis
lignum, -ī
lūx, lūcis
mīles, mīlitis
mora, -ae
nox, noctis
nūbēs, nūbis
pater, patris

proelium, -ī
rēx, rēgis
rīpa, -ae
saxum, -ī
servus, -ī
signum, -ī
tergum, -ī
urbs, urbis

cēterī, -ae, -a
ferus, -a, -um
ignāvus, -a, -um
medius, -a, -um
nōtus, -a, -um
paucī, -ae, -a
perfidus, -a, -um
summus, -a, -um
suus, -a, -um
tōtus, -a, -um
vester, -tra, -trum
vōs

appropinquō, -āre
cēlō, -āre
dēleō, -ēre
errō, -āre
excitō, -āre

expugnō, -āre
imperō, -āre
moveō, -ēre
natō, -āre
necō, -āre
parō, -āre
pāreō, -ēre
sedeō, -ēre
servō, -āre
sileō, -ēre
vulnerō, -āre

crās
diū
etiam
facile
herī
hūc
mox
semper
sīc
statim

aut
igitur
nam

WORD STUDY: ASSIMILATION

233. The form of a Latin prefix is sometimes changed because of the letter which immediately follows it. For example, before words beginning with **p** the prefix **ad** becomes **ap-**. Thus from **ad** and **propinquō** we get **appropinquō**. The change of a letter because of the influence of an adjoining letter is called *assimilation*. The words **occupō** and **oppugnō** in the review vocabulary of page 73 are examples of assimilation. The prefix with which they are both formed is **ob**, *against*. Before **c** this has become **oc-** (**ob+capiō, occupō**), and before **p** it has become **op-** (**ob+pugnō, oppugnō**).

Sometimes a letter is not changed to the same letter as that which follows, but to one which can be easily pronounced with it. The prefix **com-** becomes **con-** before **d** or **s**. Hence we have **condūcō** from **com-** and **dūcō**, and **cōnservō** from **com-** and **servō**. The meaning of this prefix will be explained later.

SPELLING OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

234. The fact that certain English words have doubled consonants (*acc-*, *occ-*, *off-*) is due to assimilation in the Latin words from which they have come. Thus *difficult* is from a Latin word in the development of which the inseparable prefix **dis-** has become **dif-** before a word beginning with **f**; hence we have *ff* in *difficult*. In the word *correction* the letters *cor* represent the prefix **com-**, and the second *r* is from **regō** to which **com-** has been prefixed, giving *rr* in the derived word.

(1) The following words have *aff-* because they are from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **f**.

affable	affidavit	affix
affect	affiliate	afflict
affection	affirm	affront

(2) The following words have *ann-* because they are from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **n**.

annex
annihilate
annotate
announce
annul

EXERCISE

Find how many words in your English dictionary begin with *acc-*. (Nearly all these are derived from the combination of **ad** and a word beginning with **c**.)

LESSON XXXVI

PAST PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

235. The past passive participle of **portō** is **portātus, -a, -um,** translated either by the compound participle *having been carried,* or simply by the past participle *carried.* The participle of **moneō** is **monitus, -a, -um,** meaning *having been warned,* or simply *warned.* Thus, **Puer ā patre monitus ad scholam properābat,** may be translated *The boy, having been warned by his father, was hastening to school,* or *The boy, warned by his father, was hastening to school.*

The past passive participle is declined throughout like **bonus.** A participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

PARTICIPLES

(25) There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also serve to tell something about a person or thing very much as an adjective does. Thus, in the sentence, *The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help,* the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten,* but it serves to tell something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a *participle,* and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action and it has the character of an adjective in that it tells something about a noun or pronoun.

a. The past participle of **juvō** is **jūtus, -a, -um,** of **dō** is **datus, -a, -um** (differing from **portātus** in that the **a** is short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given thus far form their past participles like **portō**:[1] for example, **laudātus, amātus,** etc.

READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS URBEM OPPUGNĀRE PARANT*

236. 1. Vigilēs ex moenibus urbis prōspectant et agmen hostium procul vident. Hostēs appropinquant et urbem oppugnāre parant. Sed portae et moenia urbis sunt valida, et ante moenia est vāllum. Mīlitēs ā duce monitī nunc ad moenia properant. Cīvēs auxilium ā sociīs quoque expectant.

2. Ad urbem appropinquāmus et eam oppugnāre parāmus. Mīlitēs nostrī sunt dēfessī, quod iter hodiē longum fuit. Sed statim oppugnābimus, quod cīvēs urbis auxilium ā sociīs expectant.

3. Auxilium ā cīvibus expectātum nōn adest. Cīvēs et mīlitēs in urbe fortiter pugnant, sed mox erit fīnis proeliī. Urbs expugnāta dēlēbitur. Multī cīvēs erunt servī.

237. VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, N., column, line
fīnis, fīnis, M., end, limit; *plural,* country, territory
iter, itineris, N., road, journey, march
moenia, -ium, N., *pl.,* walls (*of a city*)
porta, -ae, F., gate
procul, *adv.,* at a distance
prōspectō, -āre, look forth, look
vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall
vigil, vigilis, M., sentinel

a. The declension of **iter** is given in full on page 243. Its cases are formed in accordance with the same principles as the nouns given on page 85.

[1] The verb stō has no past participle.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

238. Translate into Latin: 1. The soldier, having been warned, hastened to the camp. 2. The enemy, having been defeated, will be slaves. 3. The boys, having been praised, will work well. 4. My brother, having been invited, remained in town. 5. The girl, having often been warned, fears danger.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

239. 1. Where is *finis* sometimes found in English books? 2. What is an *itinerary?* 3. What is the meaning of the word *portal?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the complete declension of **portātus** and **monitus.** 2. Give the form of **amātus** which will agree with **patria** as subject; with the word for "woman" as object. 3. Decline **vigil.**

LESSON XXXVII

PRINCIPAL PARTS: STEMS OF VERBS

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

240. There are certain forms of a verb which show us important facts regarding the conjugation of the verb in the different tenses. These are called *principal parts.*

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the past passive participle. Any form of a verb may be made when these are known.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

a. The neuter form of the past participle is given in the principal parts for the reason that the past participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms. But for most verbs, the participle is declined in all three genders. Thus, **amātus, -a, -um, territus, -a, -um,** etc.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

241. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **juvō, dō,** and **stō,** form their principal parts like **portō.** The principal parts of these three are as follows:

dō, dare, dedī, datum
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum
stō, stāre, stetī

a. The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive and past participle.

THE STEMS OF THE VERB

242. If from the present infinitive **laudāre** we drop **-re** we have left what is known as the *present stem.* The stem of a verb is the body of the verb to which tense signs and endings are added.

A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the past participle: **portātum,** stem **portāt-; monitum,** stem **monit-.**

IMPORTANCE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS AND STEMS

243. In order to find the stems of a verb, it is necessary to know its principal parts. These facts which have been stated regarding the formation and use of stems are true of all verbs

in the Latin language. It is therefore very important that they be remembered.

USE OF THE STEMS

244. The present, the imperfect, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. The perfect active indicative, which has already been given, and the past perfect and future perfect indicative, which will be given later, are formed on this stem.

Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

245. The principal parts of the second conjugation verbs which have been given thus far are as follows:

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum
pāreō, pārēre, pāruī
timeō, timēre, timuī
sileō, silēre, siluī
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum
audeō, audēre

a. Some verbs do not have a past passive participle. This is true of the verbs which have only three principal parts in the list above. The perfect of **audeō** is omitted at this time because it is not formed like that of the other verbs above.

LESSON XXXVIII

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE AND THE PAST INFINITIVE

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

246. The perfect indicative passive, unlike the other tenses which have been given, is not formed by adding personal endings to a stem. Instead, the past passive participle is used with the present tense of the verb **sum.** Two separate words are used to represent each person and number. The perfect indicative passive of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

Singular

portātus sum, *I was carried* or *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he was carried* or *he has been carried*

Plural

portātī sumus, *we were carried* or *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you were carried* or *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they were carried* or *they have been carried*

Singular

monitus sum, *I was warned* or *I have been warned*
monitus es, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
monitus est, *he was warned* or *he has been warned*

Plural

monitī sumus, *we were warned* or *we have been warned*
monitī estis, *you were warned* or *you have been warned*
monitī sunt, *they were warned* or *they have been warned*

a. The forms of this tense are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

b. The participle used in forming this tense agrees with the subject in gender and number.

PAST INFINITIVES

247. There is a past infinitive in Latin, as in English. Its forms and meanings in both voices are as follows:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	portāvisse, *to have carried*	portātus esse, *to have been carried*
II.	monuisse, *to have warned*	monitus esse, *to have been warned*

a. The past active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem. The past passive infinitive consists of the past passive participle and the present infinitive of **sum.**

The past infinitive of **sum** is **fuisse,** *to have been.*

READING EXERCISE

248. 1. Agrī nostrī ab hostibus vāstātī sunt, et multa oppida occupāta sunt. Auxilium ā cīvibus nostrīs populō Rōmānō in bellō ōlim datum est, et populus Rōmānus nunc nōs juvāre dēbet. Auxilium vestrum postulāmus.

2. Urbs nostra erit in (*on*) illō parvō monte. Locus idōneus est quod flūmen nōn longē abest, et ex eō flūmine aquam habēbimus. Urbs Rōma appellābitur. Circum urbem erit mūrus. Rīpa ulterior flūminis nunc est in terrā Etrūscōrum, sed illa terra mox erit Rōmāna. Etrūscōs superābimus. Nōmen urbis nostrae multīs gentibus nōtum erit.

249. VOCABULARY

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, name
aqua, -ae, F., water
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around
Etrūscī, -ōrum, M., *pl.*, the Etruscans
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable
mōns, montis, -ium, M., mountain
nōmen, nōminis, N., name
Rōma, -ae, F., Rome
ulterior, farther

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

250. Translate into Latin: 1. Our soldiers have often been praised. 2. The cities of our allies have been seized by the enemy (*plural*). 3. Your son has not been seen. 4. But I have seen your daughter in the street. 5. The money has not been given to this man.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

251. 1. What is an *appellation?* 2. What is an *aqueduct?* 3. Find two compounds of **circum.** 4. What is the meaning of *nomenclature?* 5. What is an *ulterior* motive?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *he has warned, he has been warned; they have ordered, they have been ordered; we have praised, we have been praised.* 2. Rewrite the first sentence of 1, section **248,** changing the verb to the active voice, and making such other changes as are necessary.



THE CAPITOLINE HILL (RESTORATION)

LESSON XXXIX

THIRD CONJUGATION -*Ō* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

252. Verbs of the third conjugation have the ending **-ere** in the present active infinitive. This ending must be distinguished from that of the second conjugation, which is **-ēre** (long **e**). There are two classes of verbs of the third conjugation, one class with the ending **-ō** and the other class with the ending **-iō** in the first person singular of the present active indicative.

Those of the first class are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

dūcō, *I lead*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	
dūcō, *I lead*	dūcor, *I am led*
dūcis, *you lead*	dūceris, *you are led*
dūcit, *he leads*	dūcitur, *he is led*
Plural	
dūcimus, *we lead*	dūcimur, *we are led*
dūcitis, *you lead*	dūciminī, *you are led*
dūcunt, *they lead*	dūcuntur, *they are led*

253. One or more forms of the following third conjugation verbs of the same class as **dūcō** have appeared in the preceding lessons:

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn*
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, *eat*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *read*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write*

READING EXERCISE: *BONUS DUX*

254. Illa legiō vincit, quod ducem bonum habet. Is bene dūcit, et mīlitēs hostēs nōn timent. Sed pars cōpiārum nostrārum habet alium ducem, et hī mīlitēs in perīculō sunt. Hostēs castra oppugnābunt et occupābunt. Ille dux nunc nūntium mittit, et hic nūntius auxilium postulābit. Auxilium mittere parāmus. Sine bonō duce mīlitēs in perīculō sunt. Bonus dux semper parātus est, et hostēs eum timent. Castra in locō inīquō nōn pōnit, neque mīlitēs ejus sine armīs sunt.

255. VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, another
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead
inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger
pars, partis, -ium, F., part
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat

a. The genitive and dative singular of **alius** are not formed like those of regular adjectives of the first and second declensions. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

256. 1. Castra nostra in rīpā flūminis pōni—(*subject "we"*). 2. Cīvēs cibum ad mīlitēs mitt—. 3. Cibus ā cīvibus ad mīlitēs mitti—. 4. Quis illam legiōnem dūci—? 5. Legiō nostra ducem bonum habe— (*has*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

257. 1. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *alias*[1] as an English word. 2. Give two English words from the present

[1] The form **alias** is really a Latin adverb which is derived from the adjective **alius**.

stem of **dūcō** and two from the participial stem. 3. What is the literal meaning of *particle?* 4. What is the difference in meaning between the verbs *convince* and *convict,* both of which are derived from **vincō?**

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **pōnō, jubeō,** and **postulō** in the present indicative, active and passive. 2. Give the third person plural, active and passive, of **vincō, habeō,** and **expectō.** 3. Conjugate **vincō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive.

LESSON XL

THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

258. The present indicative of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is as follows:

capiō, *I take*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
capiō, *I take*	capior, *I am taken*
capis, *you take*	caperis, *you are taken*
capit, *he takes*	capitur, *he is taken*
Plural	*Plural*
capimus, *we take*	capimur, *we are taken*
capitis, *you take*	capiminī, *you are taken*
capiunt, *they take*	capiuntur, *they are taken*

a. The only forms in which the verbs of this class differ from those of the first class in the present tense are the first person singular and the third person plural.

READING EXERCISE: *CENTURIŌ CUM DUCE BARBARŌRUM PUGNAT*

259. Centuriō Rōmānus gladium et scūtum capit et prō castrīs prōcēdit. Dux barbarōrum quoque prōcēdit. Hī duo pugnant, et centuriō ducem barbarōrum interficit. Tum mīlitēs Rōmānī centuriōnem excipiunt cum magnīs clāmōribus, et imperātor eī praemium dat.

Gladium et scūtum capiō et prō castrīs prōcēdō. Cum duce barbarōrum pugnō, et eum interficiō. Tum mīlitēs et imperātor mē laudant et mihi praemium datur. Comitēs meī laetī sunt quod ita laudor. Pater meus quoque laetus erit quod bonus mīles et bonus centuriō sum.

260. VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture
centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion
clāmor, -ōris, M., shout
comes, comitis, M., companion
duo, duae, duo, two
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive
imperātor, -ōris, M., general
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, proceed, advance

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

261. 1. Mīlitēs gladiōs et scūta capi—. 2. Rōmānī multōs barbarōs in proeliō interfici—. 3. Ducem nostrum cum magnīs clāmōribus excipi—(*subject* "*we*"). 4. Centuriō ā mīlitibus cum magnīs clāmōribus excipi—. 5. Auxilium ā Rōmānīs nōn mitti—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

262. 1. What is a *clamorous* throng? Find from a dictionary the derivation of the word *count* (a title of nobility). 3. What is a *dual* empire? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *emperor*.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **interficiō** and **mittō** in the present indicative, active and passive. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *they make, they see, they place, they send; we receive, we conquer, we order, we demand.*

LESSON XLI

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

263. In the preceding lessons the ablative has been used as the object of certain Latin prepositions. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used without a preposition. In the sentence **Puer saxō vulnerātus est,** *the boy was wounded by the stone,* the phrase *by the stone* is translated by the ablative **saxō,** without any preposition. In like manner in the sentence **Gallī gladiīs pugnant,** *the Gauls fight with swords,* the ablative **gladiīs** is used without a preposition.

THE THING BY WHICH, AND THE PERSON BY WHOM OR WITH WHOM

264. The phrases *by the stone* and *with swords* in the sentences above denote the means by which or with which an act is done. In the sentences *The boy was helped by the man* and *He walks with a friend* the phrases *by the man* and *with a friend* are quite different from the preceding phrases. In the first of these sentences *by the man* denotes the person by whom the act was done, and will be translated **ā virō**; in the second *with a friend* denotes the person in company with whom an act is done and will be translated **cum amīcō.**

MEANS, AGENT, AND ACCOMPANIMENT

265. A word used to express the means with which an act is done, as **saxō** and **gladiīs** above, is said to be in the *ablative*

of means. A word denoting the person by whom an act is done is said to be in the *ablative of agent,* and a word denoting the person with whom one is associated in doing an act is said to be in the *ablative of accompaniment.* The ablative of means has no preposition, the ablative of agent always has **ā** or **ab,** and the ablative of accompaniment commonly has **cum.** In the preceding paragraph **virō** is an ablative of agent and **amīcō** an ablative of accompaniment.

READING EXERCISE

266. 1. Gladiō mē dēfendō et scūtō mē tegō. Jaculum quoque habeō. Jaculum in (*at*) hostēs jaciō cum hī nōn longē absunt. Hostēs interdum jaculīs graviter vulnerantur aut interficiuntur. In capite meō est galea. Hostēs quoque gladiōs et scūta et galeās habent. Gladiī eōrum sunt longī, sed gladius meus nōn longus est. Barbarī saepe longīs hastīs pugnant. Rōmānī hastās nōn habent.

2. Barbarī nunc agrōs Etrūscōrum vāstant et Etrūscōs ē patriā expellere cupiunt. Etrūscī prō patriā pugnant. Terra Etrūscōrum ā Rōmā nōn longē abest, sed Etrūscī sunt hostēs Rōmānōrum, et saepe cum eīs bellum gerunt.

267. VOCABULARY

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, wish
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, defend
expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, bear, carry, carry on, wage
graviter, *adv.,* seriously, heavily
hasta, -ae, F., spear
jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw
longus, -a, -um, long
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

268. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The soldier wounds the barbarian with a sword. 2. The leader of the soldiers was killed by a javelin. 3. The Gauls and Ger-

mans fought with spears. 4. The centurion protects his friend with a shield. 5. The soldier's head is protected by a helmet.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

269. 1. What is an *indefensible* attitude? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *reject* and **jaciō?** 3. What is *longevity?* 4. What is the meaning of *cupidity?* What connection can you see between the meaning of this word and **cupiō?**

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. What is the difference in the form of translation for the phrases with *by* in the sentences *He was wounded by a javelin* and *He was wounded by the enemy?* 2. Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* which would require a preposition if translated into Latin. 3. Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* or *with* which would be translated into Latin without a preposition.



THE APPIAN WAY IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS

LESSON XLII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *AUDIŌ*

270. The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-īre: audiō,** *I hear,* **audīre,** *to hear.* The present indicative is as follows:

audiō, *I hear*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	
audiō, *I hear*	audior, *I am heard*
audīs, *you hear*	audīris, *you are heard*
audit, *he hears*	audītur, *he is heard*
Plural	
audīmus, *we hear*	audīmur, *we are heard*
audītis, *you hear*	audīminī, *you are heard*
audiunt, *they hear*	audiuntur, *they are heard*

a. In the present indicative of the fourth conjugation, as seen above, the characteristic vowel (ī) is long, except in the first person singular, active and passive, the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, active and passive. The third conjugation has the corresponding vowel short.

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

271. In the perfect, active and passive, verbs of the third and fourth conjugations are conjugated in the same manner as verbs of the first and second conjugations. The perfect and the participial stems are found from the principal parts, as has already been explained (p. 101), and the tense signs and personal endings are used with the perfect stems in exactly the same manner as with the perfect stems of **portō** and **moneō:**

dūxī, dūxistī, etc.; **ductus sum, ductus es,** etc.; **audīvī, audīvistī,** etc.; **audītus sum, audītus es,** etc.

READING EXERCISE

272. 1. Sonum multōrum pedum audiō. Hostēs appropinquant. Scūta et galeās eōrum per tenebrās videō. Castra nostra expugnāre cupiunt, sed arma parāta habēmus. Nōn sōlum prō patriā sed etiam prō vītā pugnābimus, et nōn facile superābimur. Dux noster cum multīs mīlitibus mox aderit, et hī nōs juvābunt. Aliī mīlitēs nunc castra ā tergō mūniunt, et ea pars mox tūta erit.

2. Sonus multōrum pedum audītur. Sed castra mūniuntur, et mīlitēs Rōmānī parātī sunt. Mīlitēs sciunt numerum hostium esse magnum.

3. Hostēs sonum pedum nostrōrum audiunt. Scūta et galeās nostrās per tenebrās vident. Castra eōrum expugnāre cupimus, sed arma parāta habent, et aliī mīlitēs cum duce bonō veniunt.

273. VOCABULARY

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify
nōn sōlum . . sed etiam, not only . . but also
pēs, pedis, M., foot
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know
sonus, -ī, M., sound
tenebrae, -ārum, F., *pl.*, darkness
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

274. Translate into Latin: 1. We fortify the camp, and we prepare arms. 2. Loud (great) shouts are heard in the forest. 3. The sound of battle is heard in the streets. 4. Your brother comes alone from the house. 5. We come from a city of your allies.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

275. 1. What is an *auditorium?* 2. Give an adjective which is derived from **audiō**. 3. What are *munitions?* 4. What is a *pedestal?* Give another word from **pēs**. 5. What is the original meaning of *science?* 6. What is a *sonorous* voice?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **mūniō** and **cupiō** in the present indicative, active and passive. 2. Give the Latin for the following: *he comes, he has come; he is heard, he is taken; to come, to take; we come, we have come, we take.*



THEATER OF POMPEII

LESSON XLIII

IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

276. The tense sign of the imperfect indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **-bā-,** as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect indicative of **dūcō** is formed exactly like the same tense of **moneō.** Verbs of the fourth conjugation have **-iē-** before the tense sign.

dūcēbam, *I was leading*	audiēbam, *I was hearing*
dūcēbar, *I was being led*	audiēbar, *I was being heard*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	Singular		
dūcēbam	dūcēbar	audiēbam	audiēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris	audiēbās	audiēbāris
dūcēbat	dūcēbātur	audiēbat	audiēbātur
	Plural		
dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
dūcēbātis	dūcēbāminī	audiēbātis	audiēbāminī
dūcēbant	dūcēbantur	audiēbant	audiēbantur

a. The imperfect of **capiō** and other **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is exactly like the imperfect of the fourth conjugation: **capiēbam, capiēbās,** etc.

READING EXERCISE

277. 1. In rīpā flūminis jacēbam et aquam spectābam. Flūmen celeriter fluēbat. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbat. Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore cēnam parābant.

2. In rīpā flūminis jaceō et aquam spectō. Flūmen celeriter fluit. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormit. Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore parant cēnam. Cēna mox



A ROMAN HARBOR

parāta erit, et māter mea mē vocābit. Tum frātrem ex somnō excitābō, et ad cēnam properābimus.

3. Frāter meus in rīpā flūminis jacēbat et aquam spectābat. Aqua celeriter fluēbat. Nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbam. Cēna ā mātre nostrā et sorōribus nostrīs sub arbore parābātur.

278. VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, F., tree
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flow
grāmen, grāminis, N., grass
jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie
somnus, -ī, M., sleep
sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under

a. When used in expressions which denote motion **sub** takes the accusative; when used in expressions which denote rest or existence it takes the ablative.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

279. 1. In rīpā flūminis puer dormiēba—. 2. Sonī ex silvā audiēba—. 3. Rōmānī castra sua mūrō mūniēba—. 4. Patriam nostram armīs dēfendēbā—(*subject* "*we*"). 5. Centuriō legiōnem in proeliō dūcēba—. 6. Etrūscī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēba—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

280. 1. What is meant by *arboreal* animals? 2. What is a *dormant* condition? 3. Give a noun which is derived from **dormiō.** 4. What is the relation in meaning between *fluid* and **fluō**? 5. What is the literal meaning of *subscribe?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **spectō, jaceō, fluō,** and **veniō** in the imperfect indicative, active voice. 2. Conjugate **vocō, jubeō, cupiō,** and **mūniō** in the imperfect indicative, passive voice. 3. Decline **arbor** and **grāmen.**

LESSON XLIV

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE

281. In the sentence *He defends himself* the object, *himself*, denotes the same person as the subject of the sentence. A pronoun which is thus used is called a *reflexive pronoun.* A reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative case to denote the same person as the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

REFLEXIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

282. The reflexive pronoun meaning *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves* is as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē
Abl.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē

a. The reflexives for *myself, yourself* (*yourselves*), *ourselves*, are the same as the words meaning *me, you, us,* in the different cases given above. **Mē nōn laudō,** *I do not praise myself;* **Tē nōn laudās,** *you do not praise yourself.* It is possible to tell from the general sense of the sentence whether one of these forms is to be translated as a reflexive or as a personal pronoun (*me, you,* etc.)

READING EXERCISE

283. 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendunt, sed hostēs eōs premunt. Nisi auxilium dabitur, mox hostēs eōs superābunt. Mīlitēs putant sē in magnō perīculō esse. Sed cōnsul perīculum videt, et duās aliās legiōnēs mittit. Cōnsul dux bonus est, neque officium suum umquam neglegit.

2. Mīlitēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendēbant, sed hostēs eōs premēbant. Cōnsul dux bonus erat, neque officium neglegēbat. Mīlitēs perīculum vidēbant, sed putābant sē tūtōs esse quod duae aliae legiōnēs veniēbant.

3. Numerus noster nōn est magnus, sed fortiter nōs dēfendimus. Putāmus nōs tūtōs esse, quod ducem bonum habēmus.

284. VOCABULARY

cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., consul
neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum, neglect
nisi, *conj.*, unless
numerus, -ī, M., number
officium, -ī, N., duty
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think
suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
umquam, *adv.*, ever

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

285. Translate into Latin: 1. Our allies were defending themselves, but they were demanding our aid. 2. My friend thinks himself to be in danger. 3. The leader of the enemy kills himself. 4. The boy wounds himself with a sword. 5. The boy defends himself bravely, but he is in great danger.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

286. 1. What is a *consul*, as a modern government official? What was the nature of the duties of a Roman consul? 2. Give an adjective derived from the past participle of **neglegō**. 3. What is a *numeral?* 4. What is the meaning of the phrase *ex officio*.[1]

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write three English sentences, illustrating the use of the reflexive in the first, second, and third persons (one in each sentence). 2. Conjugate **premō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive. 3. Decline together the words for *this duty*.

[1] This phrase when used in English is pronounced *ex offishio*.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

287. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXXVI–XLIV

agmen, agminis
aqua, -ae
arbor, arboris
centuriō, -ōnis
clāmor, clāmōris
comes, comitis
cōnsul, cōnsulis
fīnis, fīnis
grāmen, grāminis
hasta, -ae
imperātor, -ōris
iter, itineris
legiō, -ōnis
moenia, -ium
mōns, montis
nōmen, nōminis
numerus, -ī
nūntius, -ī
officium, -ī
pars, partis
pēs, pedis
porta, -ae
somnus, -ī
sonus, -ī
tenebrae, -ārum
vāllum, -ī
vigil, vigilis

alius, -a, -ud
idōneus, -a, -um
inīquus, -a, -um
longus, -a, -um
ulterior
duo
suī

appellō, -āre
audiō, -īre
capiō, -ere
cupiō, -ere
dēfendō, -ere
dormiō, -īre
dūcō, -ere
excipiō, -ere
expellō, -ere
fluō, -ere
gerō, -ere
interficiō, -ere
jaceō, -ēre
jaciō, -ere
mittō, -ere
mūniō, -īre
neglegō, -ere
pōnō, -ere
premō, -ere
prōcēdō, -ere
prōspectō, -āre
putō, -āre
sciō, -īre
tegō, -ere
veniō, -īre
vincō, -ere

celeriter
graviter
procul
umquam

nisi

circum
sub

WORD STUDY—ADDITIONAL PREFIXES

288. The prepositions **ab** (*from*), **ad** (*to, toward*), **circum** (*around*), **trāns** (*across*), and some others have about the same meaning when used as prefixes as when used independently. Thus, **trānsportō** means *carry across* or *convey across*. Some prefixes, however, take on slightly different meanings from those which they commonly have as separate words.

THE PREFIX *COM-*

289. The preposition **cum** (*with*) appears as a prefix in the form **com-** (by assimilation **con-, col-, cor-, co-**). Its most frequent meaning as a prefix is *together*. Thus **conveniō** means *come together*. Sometimes the force of the prefix almost entirely disappears, leaving the word which it was used to form with almost the same meaning as the original word to which it was added. The word **comparō**, *prepare*, differs very little in meaning from the simple verb **parō**, to which **com-** was added. Occasionally the meaning of the original word is emphasized by the prefix. The English word *corrupt* is from a Latin word in which **com-** (becoming **cor-**) thus serves to emphasize the meaning of the original word.

THE PREPOSITION *IN* AS A PREFIX

290. The preposition **in** (*in*, *on*) (sometimes becoming by assimilation **il-, im-, ir-**) appears in many words. Examples of its use are **indūcō, impōnō.** The English words *illuminate, illusion, illustrate, illustrious* have *ill-* at the beginning because the prefix **in** was joined to a word beginning with *l*, and *ll* resulted from the assimilation of *n* before *l*.

THE INSEPARABLE PREFIX *IN-*

291. There is also an inseparable prefix **in-**, meaning *not*, which is an entirely different word from the preposition given above. It is found in many adjectives, such as **immortālis** (*not mortal*), **impotēns** (*not powerful*), **inimīcus** (*not friendly*). Its use in English words is illustrated by *incomplete, illegal, impossible, irregular*. This prefix is used in some English words which have not come directly from Latin.

EXERCISE

Look up the words beginning with *in* on one or two pages of your English dictionary, and decide which are formed with the preposition **in** and which with the inseparable prefix **in-**.

LESSON XLV

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

292. Verbs of the third and fourth conjugation are conjugated as follows in the future:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Singular	*Singular*
dūcam, *I shall lead*	dūcar, *I shall be led*
dūcēs, *you will lead*	dūcēris, *you will be led*
dūcet, *he will lead*	dūcētur, *he will be led*
Plural	*Plural*
dūcēmus, *we shall lead*	dūcēmur, *we shall be led*
dūcētis, *you will lead*	dūcēminī, *you will be led*
dūcent, *they will lead*	dūcentur, *they will be led*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

TENSE SIGN OF THE FUTURE

293. We have seen that in the first and second conjugations the tense sign of the future is **-bi-**. In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense sign is **-ē-**, which is replaced by **-a-** in the first person singular. The **ē** becomes short before the personal endings **-t, -nt,** and **-ntur.**

PRESENT INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

294.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	portāre, *to carry*	portārī, *to be carried*
II.	monēre, *to warn*	monērī, *to be warned*
III.	dūcere, *to lead*	dūcī, *to be led*
	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
IV.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard*

a. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final **e** of the active endings (**-āre, -ēre, -īre**) is replaced by **ī** in the passive, while in the third conjugation, the entire ending (**-ere**) is replaced by **-ī.**

READING EXERCISE: *LOCUS CASTRŌRUM*

295. Castra nostra nōn longē ab illō monte pōnēmus. Castra vāllō mūniēmus, quod hostēs nōn longē absunt. Castella erunt, et vigilēs ex castellīs spectābunt. Arma parāta habēbimus, et sī hostēs ad castra venient, eōs repellēmus. Rēx hostium cōpiās suās dūcit, et magnum numerum sociōrum habet. Hī sociī sunt barbarī. Explōrātōrēs nostrī in silvā latent et iter hostium spectant. Inter castra nostra et hostēs est flūmen altum, et hostēs nūllās nāvēs habent. Sed nōn longē ab hōc locō est pōns sublicius in flūmine. Mīlitēs nostrī hunc pontem fēcērunt, sed posteā ex eō locō repulsī sunt, et hostēs nunc ad rīpam nostram appropinquant.

296. VOCABULARY

castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do
lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, be concealed
nāvis, nāvis, -ium, F., ship, boat
pōns, pontis, -ium, M., bridge
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repel
sublicius, -a, -um, resting on piles; **pōns sublicius,** a pile bridge

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

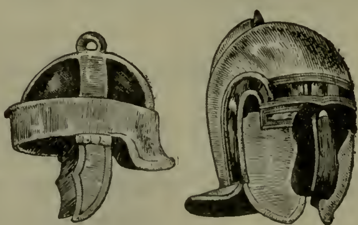
297. 1. Explōrātōrēs cōpiās nostrās per silvam dūc— (*will lead*). 2. Multī mīlitēs in proeliō interfici— (*will be killed*). 3. Sonum proeliī ex hōc locō audi— (*we shall hear*). 4. Nūntius ad oppidum statim mittē—. 5. Legiō castra fortiter dēfend— (*will defend*), et hostēs repell— (*will be driven back*). 6. Cōnsul perīculum vidē— (*will see*), sed officium suum nōn negleg— (*will not neglect*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

298. 1. What is a *castle?* What do you suppose was originally the chief characteristic of such a building? 2. What is *latent* heat? 3. Give an adjective and a verb which are derived from **nāvis**. 4. What is the difference between the meaning of *repellent* and *repulsive?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the third person singular, active voice, of the verbs **habeō, faciō**, and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future. 2. Give the third person plural, passive voice, of the verbs **laudō, dūcō, cupiō**, and **mūniō**, in the present, imperfect, and future. 3. Give the present passive infinitives, with their meanings, of **laudō, moveō, mittō, mūniō.**



ROMAN HELMETS

LESSON XLVI

RELATIVE PRONOUN

FORMS OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

299. The forms of the Latin relative pronoun, meaning *who, which, that,* or *what* are as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The genitives **cujus, quōrum, quārum** are translated *whose, of whom,* or *of which,* as the sense requires.

USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

300. The relative pronoun is used to connect a subordinate clause to some noun or pronoun in the main clause, while the interrogative pronoun, also translated by *who, which,* or *what,* introduces a question. In the sentence *The man who lives in that house is my uncle,* the clause *who lives in that house* is connected with *man* by *who;* in this sentence, therefore, *who* is a relative pronoun.

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

301. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amīcus meus est, *the man whom you see is my friend.*

READING EXERCISE: *URBS RŌMA*

302. Rōma est magna urbs Italiae. Flūmen Tiberis urbem in duās partēs dīvidit. Antīquitus urbs tōta erat in ūnā rīpā flūminis, et trāns flūmen erant agrī et tēcta agricolārum. Sed nunc aedificia in utrīsque partibus vidēmus. Intrā mūrōs sunt septem collēs. Ōlim Rōma erat parvum oppidum, et ūnum collem habēbat. Is collis, in quō prīma urbs erat, nōmen Palātium habet. In Palātiō erant tēcta in quibus rēgēs et multī virī clārī habitābant.

Magna urbs quam vidēs est Rōma. Eī quī in eā urbe habitant sunt Rōmānī. Flūmen quod urbem in duās partēs dīvidit est Tiberis. Collis in quō rēgēs et virī clārī tēcta habēbant est Palātium. Hominēs quōrum agrī et casae antīquitus trāns flūmen erant interdum cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant. Ille rēx cujus mīlitēs prīmī Rōmam cēpērunt erat barbarus. Sed posteā barbarī superātī sunt ā Rōmānīs.

303. VOCABULARY

antīquitus, *adv.*, long ago, in former times
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within
Palātium, -ī, N., the Palatine Hill
prīmus, -ā, -um, first
quī, quae, quod, who, which, that
septem, seven
Tiberis, Tiberis, M., the Tiber (*river*)
ūnus, -a, -um, one
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (*of twc*)

a. The genitive and dative of **ūnus** and **uterque** are not formed in accordance with the regular declension of adjectives. They do not appear in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

304. Give the form of the Latin relative pronoun for the italicized words in the following exercise, then translate

the sentences into Latin: 1. That city *which* you see is Rome. 2. The river *which* divides it into two parts is the Tiber. 3. The town *to which* Romulus gave a name was small. 4. The man *whose* house you see is my brother. 5. The messengers *whom* the general sent have been captured.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

305. 1. What is meant by *antiquity?* 2. Give three English derivatives from the participial stem of **dīvidō.** 3. What are *intra-mural* athletics? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *palace.* 5. What is the meaning of *quorum* as an English word?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following phrases, putting the nouns in the nominative: *the boy who, the boy whom, the girl who, the girl whom, the gift which; the soldiers whom, the soldiers of whom, the cities of which; the town in which, the towns in which, the towns which.*

LESSON XLVII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

306. We have previously seen that many adjectives are declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. There is also a large group of adjectives which are declined like nouns of the third declension. It is, of course, to be understood that an adjective is not necessarily of the same declension as the noun which it modifies.

There are three classes of third declension adjectives. Those with two endings in the nominative singular are declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

a. In the masculine and feminine these adjectives are declined like **collis,** except that the ablative singular ends in **-ī.** The neuter is declined like **īnsigne.**

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES WITH THREE ENDINGS

307. *Singular*

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

Plural

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. There are not many adjectives of this class. They differ from those of two endings only in the nominative singular.

READING EXERCISE

308. 1. Hī barbarī sunt ācrēs, sed nōn mīlitēs bonī sunt, quod imperāta non faciunt. Mīles bonus nōn sōlum fortis est, sed etiam imperāta facit. Victōria facilis erit, quod mīlitēs nostrī ducem bonum habent, cujus imperāta facient.

2. Omnēs quī bene labōrant praemia accipient. Pecūnia eīs dabitur, et laudābuntur. Eī quī male labōrant nūlla praemia accipient, neque laudābuntur.

3. Frāter meus mox in Americam ex Eurōpā perveniet. Quandō frātrēs tuī pervenient?

Frātrēs meī jam in Americā sunt.

309. VOCABULARY

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, accept, receive
ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, eager
facilis, -e, easy
fortis, -e, brave
imperātum, -ī, N., command
jam, *adv.*, now, already
omnis, -e, all
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive
quandō, *adv.*, when
victōria, -ae, F., victory

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

310. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The brave lieutenant will lead the legion to the enemy's camp. 2. All the boys are working in the fields today. 3. Those victories were not easy. 4. My brother, who came from Europe, gave me a reward. 5. The book which you have is mine.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

311. 1. Give a noun derived from **facilis.** 2. What is meant by *fortitude?* 3. Give the meanings of *omnipotent*, *omniscient*, and *omnipresent*. 4. Complete the following formula: *victory* : **victōria** : : *misery* : *x*.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **lēgātus fortis.** 2. Decline together **victōria facilis.** 3. Give the Latin for the following, putting the nouns in the nominative: *the leader whom, the leader whose, the leaders whose; the consul by whom, the consuls by whom, the consul to whom* (*as indirect object*); *the ship in which, the ships in which, the ship from which.*

LESSON XLVIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

312. Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders.

fēlīx, *fortunate* **potēns**, *powerful*

Singular

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	fēlīx	fēlīx	potēns	potēns
GEN.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	potentis	potentis
DAT.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī	potentī
ACC.	fēlīcem	fēlīx	potentem	potēns
ABL.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī, -e	potentī, -e

Plural

NOM.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
GEN.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium	potentium	potentium
DAT.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
ACC.	fēlīcīs, -ēs	fēlīcia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
ABL.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus

a. The neuter is given separately because it differs from the masculine and feminine in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

READING EXERCISE

313. Is homō erat rēx potēns. Nunc exul est, et paucōs amīcōs habet. Longē ā patriā suā habitat. Cīvēs eum in patriā esse nōn sinunt, et fīliī ejus in vincula conjectī sunt. Rēx nōn erat sapiēns, et cīvēs sunt fēlīcēs quod exul est. Comitēs ejus eum rēgem appellant, sed rēx sine potentiā est.

Multī eōrum quī ōlim rēgēs in Eurōpā erant nunc sunt exulēs. At in patriā nostrā fuit nūllus rēx. In hāc terrā

populus regit. Gentēs Americae fēlīcēs sunt quod rēgēs neque habent neque dēsīderant.

314. VOCABULARY

at, *conj.*, but
conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw
exul, exulis, M., exile
fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis**, happy
potēns, *gen.* **potentis**, powerful
potentia, -ae, F., power
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule
sapiēns, *gen.*, **sapientis**, wise
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, allow
vinculum, -ī, N., chain

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

315. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. Your friend is wise, and he gives you good advice (**cōnsilium**). 2. We have powerful allies, who will give us help. 3. We are happy because we have many friends. 4. Wise men did not expect an easy victory in that war. 5. The consul is the friend of all the citizens who love their (native) country. 6. The boy was brave, but he was not strong.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

316. 1. Find from a dictionary the source of *conjecture.* 2. What is meant by *felicity?* 3. What is a *potent* argument? 4. What is a *regent?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **terra fēlīx**. 2. Decline together **fēmina sapiēns.** 3. Give the ablative singular of the following adjectives in all genders: **bonus, miser, fortis, omnis.** 4. Rewrite the first two sentences of section **313,** changing the subjects to the plural.

LESSON XLIX

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS

317. In the fourth declension the genitive singular ends in **-ūs.** The nominative singular ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

exercitus, M., *army* — **cornū,** N., *horn*

Singular

		Endings			*Endings*
Nom.	exercitus	-us	Nom.	cornū	-ū
Gen.	exercitūs	-ūs	Gen.	cornūs	-ūs
Dat.	exercituī, -ū	-uī, -ū	Dat.	cornū	-ū
Acc.	exercitum	-um	Acc.	cornū	-ū
Abl.	exercitū	-ū	Abl.	cornū	-ū

Plural

Nom.	exercitūs	-ūs	Nom.	cornua	-ua
Gen.	exercituum	-uum	Gen.	cornuum	-uum
Dat.	exercitibus	-ibus	Dat.	cornibus	-ibus
Acc.	exercitūs	-ūs	Acc.	cornua	-ua
Abl.	exercitibus	-ibus	Abl.	cornibus	-ibus

a. The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns end in **-ubus.**

READING EXERCISE: *RŌMA DĒFENDITUR*

318. Rēx quī ex urbe expulsus est cum exercitū hostium hūc venit (*is coming*). Urbem capere et multōs occīdere cupit. Multōs in vincula conjicere etiam cupit. Impetum facere nunc parat. Nōbilēs quī eum ex urbe expulērunt perīculum suum magnum esse sciunt, sed nōn ignāvī sunt, et sē dēfendere parant. Nūntiī in omnēs partēs missī sunt, et

vigilēs in mūrō sunt. Rēx cum sociīs suīs nunc in cōnspectū est. Hī mox usque ad rīpam ulteriōrem flūminis venient. Omnēs cīvēs cum armīs convenīre incipiunt. Cōnsulēs adsunt, et omnēs prō patriā pugnāre parātī sunt. Fortis Horātius inter cīvēs pugnat. Posteā dē fortī Horātiō audiēmus.

319. VOCABULARY

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, assemble
exercitus, -ūs, M., army
Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius
impetus, -ūs, M., attack
incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin
nōbilis, -e, noble; M. *plur.*, the nobles
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill
usque, *adv.*, all the way, as far as

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

320. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. The consul was the leader of the army which captured the city. 2. The centurion was killed in sight of the legion. 3. The barbarians made many attacks on our camp, but they were repulsed. 4. Our (native) country has always been safe without large armies. 5. But our citizens ought to be prepared to defend their (native) country.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

321. 1. What is a *convention?* 2. What is the meaning of *impetus* as an English word? 3. What is the *incipient* stage of a fever? 4. What is the meaning of *inception?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **exercitus noster.** 2. Decline together **cornū longum.** 3. Give the ablative singular of **mūrus, cōnspectus, flūmen, īnsigne.** 4. Write the third person singular of **occīdō,** active and passive, in all the tenses which have been learned.

LESSON L

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

PRESENT SYSTEM OF *EŌ*

322. The irregular verb **eō,** *go,* is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
eō	ībam	ībō
īs	ībās	ībis
it	ībat	ībit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
īmus	ībāmus	ībimus
ītis	ībātis	ībitis
eunt	ībant	ībunt

a. The principal parts are **eō, īre, iī** or **īvī, itum.** The perfect is formed as in regular verbs: **iī (īvī),** etc. The second person of the perfect is **īstī** in the singular and **īstis** in the plural. The third person singular is **iit.**

COMPOUNDS OF *EŌ*

323. There are many compounds of **eō,** such as **exeō,** *go out,* **redeō,** *go back,* **trānseō,** *go across.* They are conjugated like **eō,** with the syllable **ex-, red-, trāns-,** etc., prefixed. Thus, **exeō, exīs, exit,** etc.

READING EXERCISE

324. 1. Puer sērō ad tēctum redībat, et sōlus per silvam ībat. In omnēs partēs spectābat, quod perīculum timēbat. Erat nūllum perīculum in silvā, sed puer erat parvus, et nōn saepe longē ā tēctō ībat sine patre aut mātre aut frātribus. Tandem lūcem vīdit, et currere coepit. Lūx in fenestrā erat, et

māter puerum expectābat. Māter laeta erat quod puer tūtus redībat.

2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum iter vertērunt, et nunc flūmen trānseunt quod inter agrōs sociōrum suōrum et hostēs fluit. Sed tamen paucī mīlitēs in hōc locō relictī sunt, quī oppida sociōrum dēfendunt. Post proelium tōtus exercitus hūc redībit.

325. VOCABULARY

coepī, coepisse, began
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run
eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go
redeō, -īre, -iī -itum, return
relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave
sērō, *adv.*, late, too late
tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless
tandem, *adv.*, at length
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, cross
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn

a. The verb **coepī** is commonly used instead of the perfect of **incipiō.**

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

326. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. I go because my (native) country calls me. 2. We have turned our course (march), and we shall cross the river. 3. All the soldiers who have returned are now in camp. 4. We were going through the forest in the evening with your father. 5. The small boy began to run, because he was afraid (he feared). 6. A few will cross the river which is behind the camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

327. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **currō** and the noun *current* (i. e. the *current* of the river)? 2. What is the meaning of *relinquish?* 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *relic.* 4. What is a *tandem* team? 5. What is meant by goods in *transit*? 6. What is a new *version* of a story?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **veniō** and **exeō** in the future. 2. Give the third person singular of **sedeō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect tenses. 3. Rewrite the last two sentences of 1, section **324**, changing the verbs to the future tense. 4. Name the tense of each verb found in paragraph 2 of section **324**.

LESSON LI

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME AT WHICH

328. The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

Eō annō **pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit,** *my father built a new house that year.*

a. Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition *in* or *on* or *at* in English: *in that year*; *on the same day*; *at the appointed hour.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

329. In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues. Thus, *We stayed in the country three days.* We may also say *We stayed in the country for three days.* The expressions *three days* in the first sentence, and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing. In Latin a word which is thus used to denote duration of time is put in the accusative without a preposition. ***Multās hōrās*** **in īnsulā mānsī,** *I remained on the island many hours* (or *for many hours*).

a. The ablative of time answers the question *When?* The accusative of duration answers the question *How long?*

READING EXERCISE: *VIGILIAE CASTRŌRUM*

330. Apud Rōmānōs in bellō nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvidēbātur. Duae vigiliae ante mediam noctem erant et duae post mediam noctem. Prīmā vigiliā mīlitēs, quī vigilēs appellābantur, circum vāllum castrōrum dispōnēbantur. Hī in suīs locīs usque ad fīnem prīmae vigiliae manēbant, tum ad tabernācula discēdēbant, et aliī vigilēs succēdēbant. Ita castra tōtam noctem ā vigilibus custōdiēbantur. Prīmā lūce mīlitēs ē somnō excitābantur. Hostēs nōn facile castra Rōmāna nocte expugnābant, quae nūllō tempore erant sine vigilibus. Barbarī castra sua ita nōn custōdiēbant, et castra eōrum interdum ab hostibus noctū oppugnāta sunt et capta (sunt).

331. VOCABULARY

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, with
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, guard
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, go away
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, arrange, station
quattuor, four
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, succeed, take the place of
tempus, temporis, N., time
vigilia, -ae, F., watch

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

332. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. In the first watch the enemy made an attack on the redoubt. 2. Your sister remained in Europe two years. 3. At daybreak we returned to the town with the army. 4. We walked all night, and we are tired.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

333. 1. What is a *temporary* appointment? 2. What is a *custodian?* Find another noun which is derived from

custōdiō. 3. What two meanings, apparently very different, does the English word *succeed* have? Give a noun which is derived from the past participle of **succēdō.** 4. What is the meaning of the English word *vigil?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Point out the ablatives and the accusatives in section **330** which express ideas of time. 2. Write an English sentence containing an expression of time at which, and a sentence containing an expression of duration of time.



VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

334. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XLV–LI

castellum, -ī
cōnspectus, -ūs
exercitus, -ūs
explōrātor, -ōris
exul, exulis
imperātum, -ī
impetus, -ūs
nāvis, nāvis
pōns, pontis
potentia, -ae
tempus, temporis
victōria, -ae
vigilia, -ae
vinculum, -ī

ācer, ācris, ācre
facilis, -e
fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis
fortis, -e
nōbilis, -e
omnis, -e
potēns, *gen.* potentis
prīmus, -a, -um
sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis
sublicius, -a, -um
quattuor
septem
quī, quae, quod
ūnus, -a, -um
uterque, -traque, -trumque

accipiō, -ere
coepī
conjiciō, -ere
conveniō, -īre
currō, -ere
custōdiō, -īre
discēdō, -ere
dispōnō, -ere
dīvidō, -ere
eō, īre
faciō, -ere
incipiō, -ere
lateō, -ēre
occīdō, -ere
perveniō, -īre
redeō, -īre
regō, -ere
relinquō, -ere
repellō, -ere
sinō, -ere
succēdō, -ere
trānseō, -īre
vertō, -ere

antīquitus
jam
posteā
quandō
sērō
tamen
tandem
usque

apud
intrā

at

WORD STUDY: LATIN SUFFIXES

335. A word element consisting of one or more letters or syllables joined to the end of a word is called a suffix.

It is usually difficult to give exact meanings to Latin suffixes. Often we can only say that they are used in forming certain classes of words. They differ from prefixes in that they are not usually added to whole words to form new ones. Instead, words with which suffixes are employed are usually altered by the loss or change of one or more letters before the suffix. Thus, **cīvitās** is derived from **cīvis,** but the ending **-tās** instead of being added to **cīvis** is used with **cīvi—.**

336. Among the suffixes which are used in forming nouns are **-ia, -tia, -ium,** (-t)**iō, -dō, -tās, -tūs, -tus** (-sus).

Examples of their use in forming nouns from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs are the following:

(*From nouns*)	(*From adjectives*)	(*From verbs*)
cīvitās (cīvis)	altitūdō (altus)	adventus (adveniō)
servitūs (servus)	amīcitia (amīcus)	imperium (imperō)
virtūs (vir)	celeritās (celer)	oppugnātiō (oppugnō)

CHANGES IN SPELLING

337. There are numerous English adjectives and nouns which end in *-ant* or *-ent,* such as *independent, patient, tenant, apparent, constant.* Most of these words come from Latin present participles, which have stems ending in **-ant, -ent,** or **-ient.** These different endings all became *-ant* in French, and hence we have some words, as for example *tenant,* with the ending *-ant,* although the form of the Latin word from which it comes would lead us to expect the ending *-ent.* In many cases, however, we have the ending which we should expect from the spelling of the original Latin word. All derivatives of this class which have come from verbs of the first conjugation end in *-ant.*

EXERCISE

Decide whether derivatives from the verbs **cōnstāre, mīlitāre, vigilāre,** will end in *-ent* or *-ant*. Write English sentences illustrating the use of the words *facility, fortitude, relinquish, custodian.*

LESSON LII

THE IMPERATIVE

USE OF THE IMPERATIVE

338. The imperative mood is used to express commands. Thus, *Close the door; Wait till I come.* The verbs *close* and *wait* are in the imperative mood.

THE IMPERATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

339. The present active imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations in Latin is as follows:

	I	II
SING.	portā, *carry* (said to one person)	monē
PLUR.	portāte, *carry* (said to more than one)	monēte

	III		IV
SING.	mitte	cape	audī
PLUR.	mittite	capite	audīte

a. The verbs **dīcō, dūcō,** and **faciō** have the irregular forms **dīc, dūc,** and **fac** in the singular of the present active imperative. In the plural they are regular.

b. The verb **dō** differs from other first conjugation verbs in that the **a** is short in the plural imperative **date.** The singular, **dā,** is regular.

THE IMPERATIVES OF *EŌ* AND *SUM*

340. The imperatives of **eō** are **ī** (*singular*), and **īte** (*plural*).

Compounds of **eō** form their imperatives like the simple verb. Thus **trānsī, trānsīte**, etc.

The imperatives of **sum** are **es** (*singular*) and **este** (*plural*).

READING EXERCISE: *ETRŪSCĪ RŌMAM CAPERE TEMPTANT*

341. "Gladiōs, mīlitēs, sūmite, et in Rōmānōs impetum facite. Nam pontem sublicium frangere cupiunt, quī est inter nōs et urbem eōrum. Secūrēs habent et hīs secūribus lignum caedunt. Dux eōrum est fortis Horātius, quī inter prīmōs verbera dūra dat. Eum et comitēs ejus ex ponte pellite. Nōlīte sinere Rōmānōs pontem ita frangere." Ita dux Etrūscōrum dīxit, quī Rōmam capere et rēgem Rōmānum restituere cupiēbat. Is rēx Rōmānus erat exul. Rōmānī tum cōnsulēs habēbant, quī exercitum dūcēbant et urbem regēbant. Ūnus ex hīs cōnsulibus tum erat ignāvus, neque auxilium dabat. Sed omnēs cīvēs fortiter urbem dēfendērunt. Pōns frāctus est, et urbs ita servāta est.

342. VOCABULARY

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say
dūrus, -a, -um, hard
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break
nōlīte, be unwilling, do not
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive
restituō, -ere, restituī, restitūtum, restore
secūris, secūris, -ium, F., ax
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, assume
verbera, -um, N. *pl.*, blows (*found also in a few singular forms*)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

343. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. Give your book to the boy who stands behind you. 2. Send money at once, if you are my friend. 3. Soldiers, break down the bridge with axes. 4. Citizens, defend your houses bravely. 5. Warn those men who are in danger. 6. Come at once to the river, boys.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

344. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **dīcō** and *dictionary?* What is meant by *diction?* 2. Give a noun which is derived from the past participle of **frangō.** 3. What is the difference between *repel* and *propel?* 4. What preposition is combined with **sūmō** to form the word from which *assume* is derived? 5. What is meant by the expression "to make *restitution*"?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the present active imperatives, singular and plural, of **ambulō, jubeō, dēfendō, cupiō, mūniō.** 2. Conjugate **dēfendō** in the present and future indicative, active and passive. 3. Explain and illustrate the difference between the use of the accusative and the ablative in expressions of time.



ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP

LESSON LIII

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

345. The verb **possum,** *I am able* or *I can,* is irregular. It is a compound of **sum** and the adjective **potis,** *able.* The present system in the indicative mood is as follows:

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
possum, *I am able*, or *I can*	possumus, *we are able*, etc.
potes, *you are able, you can*	potestis, *you are able*, etc.
potest, *he is able, he can*	possunt, *they are able*, etc.

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
poteram, *I was able, I could*	poterāmus, *we were able*, etc.
poterās, *you were able*, etc.	poterātis, *you were able*, etc.
poterat, *he was able*, etc.	poterant, *they were able*, etc.

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
poterō, *I shall be able*	poterimus, *we shall be able*
poteris, *you will be able*	poteritis, *you will be able*
poterit, *he will be able*	poterunt, *they will be able*

a. The principal parts are **possum, posse, potuī.** The perfect is formed like that of regular verbs: **potuī, potuistī,** etc.

READING EXERCISE: *CASTRA RŌMĀNA OPPUGNANTUR*

346. Hostēs castra Rōmāna paene circumvēnērunt. Rōmānī ex castrīs effugere nōn possunt, sed fortiter sē dēfendent. Herī duo centuriōnēs ex portā exiērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Ūnus vulnerātus in castra sine auxiliō

sē recipere nōn poterat. Sed alter hostēs reppulit et comitem suum servāvit. Signifer, vir fortis, quī erat in vāllō, interfectus est. Sociī auxilium mīsērunt, et Rōmānī eās cōpiās expectant. Sī mox venient, hostēs castra nōn capient. Rōmānī enim ex castrīs impetum in hostēs facient, et sociī ā tergō eōs oppugnābunt. Hostēs pellentur, et castra servābuntur.

347. VOCABULARY

alter, altera, alterum, the other
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, escape
enim, *conj.*, for (*never stands first in its clause*)
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out, go from
paene, *adv.*, almost
possum, posse, potuī, am able, can
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; **sē recipere,** withdraw, retreat
signifer, signiferī, M., standard-bearer

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

348. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. I cannot hear you from this place. 2. We were able to cross the river, but we were not able to capture the camp. 3. The army of the enemy could not escape. 4. The citizens who have arms will be able to defend themselves. 5. Why do you not go? Answer me (*indirect object*) at once. 6. The sound of the horses' feet in the street can be heard from this place.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

349. 1. What is an *alternative* route? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *circumvent*. 3. What is an *exit?* 4. What is the meaning of the statement "He was the *recipient* of much praise"? 5. What is a *vulnerable* place?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **possum** in the perfect, giving the meaning of each form. 2. Give the third person singular and plural of **possum** in all the tenses which have been studied. 3. Rewrite the first sentence in section **346**, changing the verb to the passive voice. 4. Conjugate **exeō** in the future indicative.

LESSON LIV

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

350. Thus far, the personal pronouns *I*, *you*, *he*, etc., as subjects of the verb, have been indicated in Latin by the personal endings of the verb, **-ō, -s, -t,** etc. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects which are not in the same person, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin as in English.

The other cases than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive of the pronouns of the first and second persons is not used to denote possession. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester** take the place of the genitive in expressions of possession. The use of the genitive singular is not common.

DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

351. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, meaning *I* and *you*, are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used in phrases meaning *part of us, many of us, part of you,* and the like. A genitive of this sort is called a *genitive of the whole.* In the phrase **pars mīlitum,** the noun **mīlitum** is a genitive of the whole.

b. The forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with nouns which denote action or feeling, to denote the person or thing which stands as object of the action or feeling expressed. They are not employed in the exercises of this book.

c. When the ablative forms **mē, tē, nōbīs, vōbīs,** and also **sē** (*Section* **281**) are used as objects of the preposition **cum,** they have **cum** attached as a final syllable: thus, **mēcum,** *with me,* **tēcum,** *with you,* **nōbīscum,** *with us,* etc.

PERSONAL PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON

352. As has been previously seen, the demonstrative **is, ea, id** serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they,* etc. The nominative may be used for emphasis or when it is needed to make the meaning clear. Sometimes the forms of **hic** and **ille** are used instead of **is** as the pronoun of the third person.

READING EXERCISE: *RŌMĀNUS ET GALLUS*

353. 1. (*The Roman speaks.*) Ego Rōmānus sum, tū Gallus es. Rōmānī cum Gallīs bellum gerunt, et exercitus noster agrōs Galliae vāstat. Sed ego numquam ā tē injūriam accēpī, et nunc mēcum in urbe nostrā tūtō manēre potes. Post bellum in patriam tuam redīre poteris, et tēcum ībō.

2. (*The Gaul speaks.*) Sed uter patriam suam magis amat, is quī in terrā hostium tūtus manet, an is quī in bellō pugnat et tēcta et agrōs cīvium suōrum dēfendit? Ego tēcum tūtus esse possum, sed amīcī meī in perīculō sunt, et in terrā hostium cum honōre manēre nōn possum. Statim redīre et prō patriā pugnāre cupiō. Amīcī meī mē ignāvum esse putābunt sī

in urbe tuā manēbō. Cum pāx inter Galliam et Rōmam erit, iterum ego et tū amīcī erimus.

354. VOCABULARY

an, *conj.*, or
ego, I
honor, -ōris, M., honor
injūria, -ae, F., injury, injustice
magis, *adv.*, more
numquam, *adv.*, never
pāx, pācis, F., peace
tū, you (*of one person*)
tūtō, *adv.*, safely
uter, -tra, -trum, which (*of two*)?

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

355. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. I shall go to (**in**) Europe; you will remain in America. 2. We are good citizens; you are enemies of the country (*not* **terra**). 3. Come with me, and I will show you a beautiful picture. 4. Many of us go to the mountains or (**aut**) to the sea in summer. 5. We have not been helped by you (*plural*), and we shall not help you. 6. Who can carry these books?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

356. 1. What sort of person is an *egotist?* 2. Can you find another word besides *honor* which has the same spelling in English and in Latin? 3. Give an adjective which is derived from **injūria**. 4. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *nostrum* as an English word.

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for the following: *us* (*direct object*), *by us*, *by you* (*plural*), *to you* (*plural, indirect object*), *to us* (*indirect object*), *to me* (*indirect object*). 2. Give the first person singular and plural of **possum** in all the tenses which have been studied. 3. Give the present active imperatives of **putō, maneō**, and **accipiō**.

LESSON LV

PAST PERFECT

MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

357. The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the English auxiliary verb *had*. Thus, *I had carried, you had carried*, etc.

FORMATION OF THE LATIN PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

358. The past perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-erā-,** which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The **ā** of the tense sign is short before the endings **-m, -t,** and **-nt.**

Singular

portāveram, *I had carried* | monueram, *I had warned*
portāverās, *you had carried* | monuerās, *you had warned*
portāverat, *he had carried* | monuerat, *he had warned*

Plural

portāverāmus, *we had carried* | monuerāmus, *we had warned*
portāverātis, *you had carried* | monuerātis, *you had warned*
portāverant, *they had carried* | monuerant, *they had warned*

THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

359. The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the past participle with the imperfect tense of **sum.**

Singular

portātus eram, *I had been carried* | monitus eram
portātus erās, *you had been carried* | monitus erās
portātus erat, *he had been carried* | monitus erat

Plural

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*	monitī erāmus
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*	monitī erātis
portātī erant, *they had been carried*	monitī erant

READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS REPELLUNTUR*

360. Ipse imperātor hostium illum locum cum multīs mīlitibus tenēbat. Parvum agmen circum montem mīserat, et hoc agmen ad castra nostra appropinquābat. Sōl surgere incipiēbat, sed vigilēs loca sua nōndum relīquerant. Mīlitēs nostrī, quī excitātī erant, signa et arma hostium vīdērunt, et multī celeriter ad vāllum cucurrērunt. Aliī portās aperuērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Hostēs nōn diū restitērunt, quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Castra sua petiērunt, sed multī in fugā interfectī sunt.

361. VOCABULARY

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum, open
fuga, -ae, F., flight
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, seek, ask for
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, resist
sōl, sōlis, M., sun
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, rise
teneō, -ēre, -uī, hold

a. **Ipse** is declined exactly like **ille** (section **149**) except that the neuter singular ends in **-um** in the nominative and accusative.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

362. 1. Saepe in eō locō sine perīculō ambulāverā— (*subject "we"*). 2. Cūr puerōs nōn monuerā— (*subject "you"*) quī tēcum erant? 3. Legiō diū restitera—, et multī interfectī erant. 4. Quis librum vīdit quem in hōc locō relīqu— (*subject "I"*)? 5. Imperātor cum exercitū vēnera—, et urbs tūta erat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

363. 1. What is a *petition?* What is a *partition?* 2. What is a *solar* eclipse? 3. What are *surging* waves? 4. What is a *tenacious* memory?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Conjugate **possum** in the past perfect indicative. 2. Give the third person singular of **petō** in the active and passive indicative. 3. Decline together **ipse dux.** 4. Conjugate **surgō** in the perfect and past perfect, active voice.

LESSON LVI

DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

364. The declension of **īdem,** *same,* is as follows:

Singular

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural

Nom.	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem

a. The forms of **īdem** are seen to be for the most part identical with those of **is** with the syllable **-dem** added. Before **d** the final **-m** is changed to **-n.**

b. Occasionally **īdem** is used as a pronoun meaning *the same person* (neuter, **idem**, *the same thing*). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.

READING EXERCISE: *RŌMULUS ET REMUS*

365. 1. Animum attendite, puerī et puellae; fābulam vōbīs nārrābō. Ōlim duo frātrēs urbem condere incipiēbant. Ūnus ex hīs frātribus erat Rōmulus. Frāter ejus erat Remus. Uterque nōmen suum urbī dare cupiēbat, et inter eōs erat contrōversia, quod duo nōmina eīdem urbī darī nōn poterant. Dēnique nōmen Rōma ex Rōmulō urbī datum est. Sed Remus erat īrātus et mūrōs urbis irrīsit, quod parvī erant. Tum ūnus ex comitibus Rōmulī Remum interfēcit.

2. Dux meus est Rōmulus, et nōmen ejus huic urbī dabitur. Nunc urbs est parva, sed posteā magna et clāra erit, et omnēs nōmen ejus audient. Cum urbs magna erit, magnōs mūrōs habēbit; hominēs tum eōs mūrōs nōn irrīdēbunt.

366. VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., mind, spirit
attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, turn toward; **animum attendere,** give attention
condō, -ere, condidī, conditum, found, establish
contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy
dēnique, *adv.*, finally
īdem, eadem, idem, same
īrātus, -a, -um, angry
irrīdeō, -rīdere, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, relate, tell a story
Remus, -ī, M., Remus
Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

367. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. We are citizens of the same town, but we are not friends. 2. These two boys were running to the same place. 3. Letters were given to the same messenger by the lieutenant and the centurion. 4. The fields of Gaul were often laid waste by the

same enemies. 5. We shall send the same soldiers again to the enemy's camp. 6. We returned to the same city in the winter, but we did not see the same men and women.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

368. 1. What is an *animated* manner? 2. What is a *controversial* manner? 3. What is meant by an *irate* parent? 4. What is a tedious *narrative?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Decline together **īdem lēgātus.** 2. Decline together **eadem urbs.** 3. Conjugate **condō** in the perfect and past perfect, active voice. 4. Conjugate **attendō** and **irrīdeō** in the future, active voice.



VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY

LESSON LVII

FUTURE PERFECT: SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

369. The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. Thus, *I shall have finished the work in two weeks.* The future perfect is used less frequently than the other tenses in English. It is used somewhat more frequently in Latin than in English.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

370. The future perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-eri-**, which is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are used as in the present tense. The **ī** of the tense sign disappears before **-ō** in the first person singular.

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*	monuerō
portāveris, *you will have carried*	monueris
portāverit, *he will have carried*	monuerit

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*	monuerimus
portāveritis, *you will have carried*	monueritis
portāverint, *they will have carried*	monuerint

THE FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

371. The future perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the past participle of a verb with the future indicative of **sum**.

Singular

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*	monitus erō
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*	monitus eris
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*	monitus erit

Plural

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*	monitī erimus
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*	monitī eritis
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*	monitī erunt

THE SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

372. A group of verb forms made up by taking any one person of a verb in all the tenses of one voice and number is called a *synopsis* of that verb. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular, active voice, indicative mood, is as follows:

PRES.	portō	PERF.	portāvī
IMPF.	portābam	P. PERF.	portāveram
FUT.	portābō	F. PERF.	portāverō

READING EXERCISE: *VERBA MĪLITUM ANTE PROELIUM*

373. Ab omnibus partibus est silentium. Nox est obscūra, quod lūna non fulget. Hostēs adventum nostrum nōn vidēbunt, et in castra eōrum perveniēmus antequam arma parāverint. Deinde impetum faciēmus et multōs capiēmus. Hostēs fugere nōn poterunt, quod castra circumveniēmus. Cum captīvīs quōs cēperimus, urbem nostram in triumphō intrābimus, et omnēs cīvēs nōs propter victōriam nostram salūtābunt et laudābunt. Laetī urbem et amīcōs iterum vidēbimus. Longē ā patriā absumus, et paene exulēs sumus.

Haec ante proelium erant verba mīlitum.

374. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M., coming, arrival
antequam, *conj.*, before
captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner
deinde, *adv.*, next
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, flee
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter
silentium, -ī, N., silence
triumphus, -ī, M., triumph
verbum, -ī, N., word

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

375. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. We shall be happy, because we shall have seen our native country again. 2. I shall have walked for a long time, and I shall be tired out. 3. When you (shall) have returned, you will be unhappy. 4. The legion will have driven back the enemy, but the danger will remain. 5. The king had fled with a few companions. 6. The Romans often led barbarians in triumph through the streets of Rome.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

376. 1. Give a noun which is derived from **adventus.** 2. Complete the following outline of derivation by replacing the dash by a Latin verb: *captive*, **captīvus,** ———. 3. Give a noun which is derived from **fugiō.** 4. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *refulgent.* 5. What is a *triumphal* procession?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the third person plural of **laudō** in the active voice, in the six tenses which have been studied. 2. Give the third person singular of **mittō** in the active and passive of the six tenses which have been studied. 3. Conjugate **maneō** in the perfect and future perfect, active voice.



ROMAN SPOONS AND BOWL

LESSON LVIII

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

377. Most verbs meaning to *please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare* govern the dative.

Equus *tibi* placet, *the horse pleases you.*

a. The verbs **pāreō** and **resistō,** previously given, are of this class.

b. The English equivalents of these verbs take direct objects, but the Latin words did not suggest to the Romans a direct object. Thus **persuādēre** meant *make attractive to,* and **placēre** meant *be pleasing to.*

READING EXERCISE

378. 1. Animum attendite et audīte, comitēs. Illum collem capere jussī sumus. Ducī nostrō pārēbimus, et statim impetum faciēmus. Cōpiae hostium nōbīs nōn diū resistent, quod paucae sunt, et castra eōrum non facile dēfendī possunt. Brevī tempore illī erunt aut captīvī aut mortuī.

2. Sociīs nostrīs grātiās agimus quod auxilium nōbīs dedērunt. Ex maximō bellō servātī sumus, et iterum in terrā nostrā est pāx. Nūper patria nostra in magnō perīculō erat, sed nunc hostēs ex urbibus agrīsque expulsī sunt. Ab omnibus partibus vōcēs eōrum audīmus quī propter fīnem bellī laetī sunt. Nunc ipsum nōmen bellī ōdimus.

379. VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, do, drive
brevis, -e, short
grātia, -ae, F., favor; **grātiās agere,** to thank
maximus, -a, -um, greatest
mortuus, -a, -um, dead
nūper, *adv.*, recently
ōdī, ōdisse, hate
-que, *conj.*, and
vōx, vōcis, F., voice

a. The conjunction **-que,** meaning *and,* is joined to the second of the two words which it connects. Thus, **collis montēsque** means *the hill and the mountains.* A word or syllable which is thus attached to the end of another word is called an *enclitic.* The preposition **cum** is used as an enclitic with the ablative forms of **ego, tū, quī,** and the reflexive **suī** (*Section* **351,** *c*).

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

380. Translate the following sentences into Latin: 1. Boys, obey your father, and remain at home. 2. The boys obeyed their father and mother and remained at home. 3. We have resisted the enemy, and we have saved the town. 4. I hear the voices of the sentinels who are in front of the camp. 5. The consul will lead the prisoners in triumph through the city. 6. The citizens thanked us, and our friends praised us.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

381. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between *action* and **agō?** 2. What is *brevity?* 3. What is meant by the *maximum* capacity? 4. What is the meaning of *odium?* 5. What is *vocal* music?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the Latin for *friend* in the sentences "He praises his friend" and "He pleases his friend." 2. Write two English sentences containing direct objects which will be translated into Latin by the dative and two containing direct objects which will be translated by the accusative. 3. Write two English sentences containing indirect objects. 4. Write the third person singular of **agō,** active and passive, in all six tenses.

LESSON LIX

FORMS OF QUESTIONS

382. There are three forms of Latin questions aside from those which are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. The first form has **-ne,** added to an important word, usually the first word, the second form is introduced by **nōnne,** and the third by **num.** The translation of these three forms is illustrated by the following:

> **Vēnitne?** *has he come?*
> **Nōnne vēnit?** *has he not come* (*hasn't he come*)*?*
> **Num vēnit?** *he has not come, has he?*

a. Sometimes **-ne** is omitted, and a question of the first form indicated merely by the interrogation point.

b. In answers "yes" is often expressed by **ita** (literally, *so*). Often a question is answered by repeating the verb. Thus, **"Vēnitne?"** *"Has he come?"* **"Vēnit,"** *"He has."* The answer "no" may be expressed by **nōn** (or **minimē**) or by repeating the verb with a negative. Thus **"Adestne?"** *"Is he present?"* **"Nōn adest,"** *"No."*

READING EXERCISE: *PUER IN FLŪMEN CADIT*

383. 1. Parvus puer in flūmen cecidit. In perīculō est, quod flūmen altum est.

Num puer natāre potest?

Minimē. Fūnem dēmittite.

Ego in flūmen dēsiliam et eum juvābō.

Potesne tū natāre?

Ita. Nōnne saepe in flūmine et lacū natō? Dā mihi fūnem, et puerum servābō.

Nunc puer fūnem prehendit. Trahite, amīcī, puerum juvāte.

2. Omnēs natāre scīre dēbent. Sīc aut vītam suam ser-

vāre aut aliōs juvāre poterunt. Is quī bene natat nōn timet cum in flūmen cadit.

Sciuntne amīcī tuī natāre?

Ita. Nōnne nōs vīdistis in flūmine quod nōn longē ab oppidō nostrō abest? Ibi saepe natāmus.

384. VOCABULARY

cadō, -ere, cecidī, fall

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, let down

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum, jump down

fūnis, fūnis, -ium, M., rope

lacus, -ūs, M., lake

minimē, *adv.*, least, not at all

prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, take hold of

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag, draw, pull

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

385. Tell which form of question is illustrated by each of the first four sentences which follow. Translate all the sentences into Latin: 1. Do you not see the men and the bridge? 2. The river is not deep, is it? 3. Do the consuls live on the Palatine? 4. Did not our soldiers save your (native) country? 5. Your army resisted the barbarians bravely, but you did not have sufficiently large forces. 6. The soldiers obey the lieutenant, but they hate him.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

386. 1. What relation in form can you see between **cadō** and *accident?* What Latin preposition is represented by the first syllable of *accident?* 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *desultory.* 3. What is a *prehensile*-tailed monkey? 4. What is a *tractor?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write English sentences illustrating each class of Latin questions described in the lesson. 2. Give the present active infinitive of each verb in the lesson. 3. Decline the pronouns **ego** and **tū.** 4. Decline the relative pronoun.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

387. VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LII–LIX

adventus, -ūs
animus, -ī
captīvus, -ī
contrōversia, -ae
fuga, -ae
fūnis, fūnis
grātia, -ae
honor, honōris
injūria, -ae
lacus, -ūs
pāx, pācis
secūris, secūris
signifer, -erī
silentium, -ī
sōl, sōlis
triumphus, -ī
verbera, verberum
vōx, vōcis

alter, altera, alterum
brevis, -e
dūrus, -a, -um
īrātus, -a, -um
maximus, -a, -um
mortuus, -a, -um

ego, *gen.* meī
īdem, eadem, idem
ipse, ipsa, ipsum
tū, *gen.* tuī
uter, -tra, -trum

agō, -ere
aperiō, -īre
attendō, -ere
cadō, -ere
caedō, -ere
circumveniō, -īre
condō, -ere
dēmittō, -ere
dēsiliō, -īre
dīcō, -ere
effugiō, -ere
exeō, -īre
frangō, -ere
fugiō, -ere
fulgeō, -ēre
intrō, -āre
irrīdeō, -ēre
ōdī
pellō, -ere
petō, -ere

possum, posse
prehendō, -ere
recipiō, -ere
resistō, -ere
restituō, -ere
sūmō, -ere
surgō, -ere
teneō, -ēre
trahō, -ere

antequam
deinde
dēnique
magis
minimē
nōndum
numquam
nūper
paene
tūtō

an

enim
-que

ROMANCE WORDS FROM LATIN

388. We have already seen (Lesson I, page 1) that the Romance languages are of Latin origin.

A glance at the following table, giving the numbers from one to ten in Latin and in the modern languages derived from

Latin, will show how close the relation is between these languages and Latin.

Latin	*Italian*	*French*	*Spanish*	*Portuguese*	*Roumanian*	*English*
ūnus	uno	un	uno	um	un	*one*
duo	due	deux	dos	dois	doi	*two*
trēs	tre	trois	tres	trez	trei	*three*
quattuor	quattro	quatre	cuatro	quatro	patru	*four*
quīnque	cinque	cinq	cinco	cinco	cinci	*five*
sex	sei	six	seis	seis	sesse	*six*
septem	sette	sept	siete	sete	septe	*seven*
octō	otto	huit	ocho	oito	opt	*eight*
novem	nove	neuf	nueve	nove	noua	*nine*
decem	dieci	dix	diez	dez	zece	*ten*

a. The French words for *the* (*le*, *la*, *les*) are derived from Latin **ille.** The word for *is* (*est*) is spelled in French exactly as in Latin although pronounced differently.

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA



A ROMAN ROAD

HORĀTIUS

Note.—New words occurring in this play and the following plays will be found in the complete Vocabulary, pages 323-352

PERSŌNAE

Porsena: *rēx Etrūscōrum.*
Sextus Tarquinius: *fīlius Tarquiniī Superbī.*
Mamilius: *rēx Tusculī, socius Porsennae.*

Scaena I.

Tarquinius Superbus: *rēx Rōmānōrum, exul.*
Vigilēs: *Etrūscī.*
Ducēs Mīlitum: *Etrūscī.*

Scaena II.

Valerius, Pulvillus: *cōnsulēs Rōmānī.*
Horātius Cocles, Spurius Lartius, Titus Herminius: *senātōrēs Rōmānī*
Vigil Prīmus, Vigil Secundus: *Rōmānī*
Cīvēs: *Rōmānī*
Mīlitēs: *Etrūscī.*

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN CASTRĪS ETRŪSCŌRUM

Vesperī. Porsena ante tabernāculum suum stat; ā dextrā Mamilius; ā sinistrā Tarquinius Superbus; ā tergō Sextus Tarquinius. Ante Porsenam ducēs mīlitum imperāta expectant. Longē ā dextrā stant vigilēs; hī Rōmam prōspectant.

POR. Bene pugnāvistis hodiē, Ō ducēs, vōs et mīlitēs Etrūscī.

DUC. Grātiās tibi agimus, rēx maxime; prō patriā et prō tē pugnāvimus.

POR. Quō nōmine hic mōns appellātur, ubi jam castra posuimus?

SEX. Jāniculum vocātur hic mōns.

SUP. Jāniculum habēmus; facile erit Rōmam capere.

Por. Quō modō Jāniculum cēpistī, Mamilī? Nārrā nōbīs!

Duc. Bene nōs dūxit Mamilius, Ō rēx maxime!

Por. Hoc sciō; attendite animum et audīte!

Mam. Ō rēx maxime, Jāniculum tenēbat Pulvillus cōnsul cum centum mīlitibus; juvenis est et malus dux; male imperat, neque Rōmānī illī pārēre volunt. At diū nōbīs resistēbant; neque facile erat illud parvum agmen dē monte pellere. Tandem centum mīlitēs circum montem mīsī; hī ā tergō Rōmānōs subitō oppugnāvērunt. Pulvillus pavidus tergum vertit; cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effūgit; cēterōs occīdimus. Ille, tertius in ōrdine ducum [*ducem quendam indicat*], prīmus in summum montem pervēnit. Hostēs illum vulnerāverant et signiferum occīderant. Statim ille signum ē dextrā mortuī rapuit et in summō monte posuit.

Por. Bene fēcistī, Mamilī; bene fēcērunt tuī mīlitēs. Tū, dux vulnerāte, hūc venī! [*Dux tertius appropinquat.*] Accipe hoc praemium! [*Armillam bracchiō*

VOCATIVE OF NOUNS IN *-IUS*

389. Proper nouns ending in **-ius,** and also the common noun **fīlius,** form the vocative by replacing the ending **-ius** of the nominative by **-ī.** Thus, **Cornēlius,** vocative **Cornēlī.**

DECLENSION OF *QUĪDAM*

390. quīdam, *a certain*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
Gen.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

circumdat. Tum dux sē in ōrdinem recipit.] Crās Rōmam oppugnābimus.

Duc. [*laetīs clāmōribus.*] Crās Rōmam capiēmus.

Sup. Crās rēx iterum erō Rōmānōrum.

Sex. Crās omnēs inimīcōs occīdam.

Sup. Crās omnēs nōbilēs in vincula conjiciam.

Sex. Vae victīs! nōs enim Rōmā expulērunt.

Sup. Ignāvī hominēs rēgem habēre nōlēbant; poenās crās dabunt.

Duc. [*murmurant.*] Fortēs, nōn ignāvī, sunt Rōmānī. Fortēs hostēs amāmus; ignāvōs ōdimus amīcōs.

Por. Quandō et quō modō Rōmam oppugnābimus?

Sex. Statim hoc faciēmus; sī enim Rōmānī pontem sublicium frangent, neque Tiberim trānsīre neque urbem intrāre poterimus..

Duc. Nōs quidem hodiē diū pugnāvimus; sine somnō mīlitēs nōn bene pugnābunt.

Sup. Vigil! Vigil!

Vig. Quid vīs, rēx?

	Plural		
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*

391. The irregular verb **volō,** *I wish, I am willing,* has the following principal parts: **volō, velle, voluī.** It is conjugated as follows in the present indicative.

Singular	*Plural*
volō	volumus
vīs	vultis
vult	volunt

Note—In the imperfect and future indicative volō is conjugated exactly like **dūcō: volēbam, volēbās,** etc., **volam, volēs,** etc.

SUP. Quid nunc Rōmānī faciunt?

VIG. Omnēs intrā moenia sē recēpērunt. Vigilēs tamen ē moenibus prōspectant.

POR. Frēgēruntne pontem?

VIG. Minimē, rēx maxime! Stat pōns.

POR. Quālis erit nox?

VIG. Obscūra; nūbilāre enim coepit, neque lūna fulgēbit. Etiam nunc vigilēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn possumus; nōn jam pōns in cōnspectū est; hāc nocte caecī erunt vigilēs.

POR. Bene dīxistis, vigilēs. Hoc igitur cōnsilium omnēs audīte! Quārtā vigiliā, dum Rōmānī adhūc dormiunt, ad pontem silentiō appropinquābimus. Antequam illūc pervēnerimus, nōs neque vidēre neque audīre vigilēs poterunt. Nūllā morā pontem trānsībimus et portam facile rumpēmus, dum Rōmānī arma petunt et tōtā urbe trepidant.

DUC. Bonum cōnsilium cēpistī, Ō rēx maxime! Vincēmus.

POR. Hoc cōnsilium, ducēs, mīlitibus nūntiāte! Deinde usque ad quārtam vigiliam dormīte!

DUC. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

POR. Vigilēs, cum quārta vigilia erit, ē somnō nōs omnēs excitāte!

VIG. Audīmus et pārēbimus.

DECLENSION OF *ALIQUIS*

392. **aliquis**, *some, someone.*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
GEN.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

SCAENA SECUNDA. RŌMAE

Ā sinistrā appārent moenia urbis; Tiberis praeter moenia fluit; rīpam ulteriōrem ad portam urbis jungit pōns sublicius. Vigilēs ē summīs moenibus prōspectant. In rīpā ulteriōre agmen Etrūscōrum ad pontem sublicium silentiō appropinquat, sed adhūc procul abest, cum sōl surgere incipit. Prīmā lūce vigilēs hostēs vident.

VIG. I. Audīsne aliquid?
VIG. II. Quam timidus es! Ventus aquam agitat.
VIG. I. Pedēs hominum audiō.
VIG. II. Nōlī hoc crēdere. Sōl mox surget; tum vidēre poterimus.
VIG. I. Aliquid videō. Aliquid sē movet.
VIG. II. Agmen est. Hostēs sunt.
VIG. I. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.
VIGILES. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

[*Cīvēs armātī portam aperiunt et prōspectant. Valerius et Pulvillus in pontem currunt.*]

VAL. Frangite pontem, cīvēs.
PUL. Tempus nōn dabunt hostēs. Eheu, nōs prīmōs occīdent. Quid facere possumus? Quō fugere dēbēmus?

Plural

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VAL. Silē, ignāve! Cūr herī mīlitēs frangere pontem nōn jussistī? Tū enim imperātor erās. Hodiē ego Rōmānīs imperō. [*Pulvillus in urbem redit. Multī cīvēs in portā appārent.*] Audīte, cīvēs! Sī duo vel trēs hostibus breve temporis spatium resistere poterunt, cēterī pontem frangent. Ita urbem servāre poterimus.

HOR. [*inter cīvēs appāret.*] Quid dīcēbat cōnsul?

CIV. Sī quis hostibus resistet, nōs pontem frangere poterimus.

HOR. Ego, Ō cōnsul, pontem dēfendam. Quis mēcum hoc prō patriā faciet?

SPU. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ego tibi socius erō, fortis Horātī.

HOR. Tū bonus eris socius. Tēcum bene pugnābō. Tamen sī trēs erimus, tōtum hostium agmen facile repellēmus.

TIT. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ecce tertius erō. Prō Rōmā et Rōmānīs cum hīs comitibus pugnābō.

VAL. Vōbīs agō grātiās.

CIV. Vōbīs grātiās agimus.

[*Etrūscī appropinquant.*]

POR. Currite, mīlitēs! Pontem occupāte!

VAL. Properāte vōs! currunt enim hostēs.

[*Trēs pontem trānseunt.*]

HOR. Ego medius stābō; tū, Spurī, ā dextrā stā, Herminī, tū ā sinistrā!

[*Etrūscī ad pontem adveniunt.*]

POR. Oppugnāte, mīlitēs! Illōs trēs occīdite et urbem intrāte!

VAL. Secūrēs sūmite, cīvēs! sūmite gladiōs! frangite pontem!

POR. Mamilī, mēcum manē! Herī satis pugnābās. Sextus contrā suam urbem hominēs dūcet.

Val. Dā mihi secūrem, tū! Ita, ita, lignum frangite.

[*Ipse pontem ferit dum mīlitēs Etrūscī pontem oppugnant.*]

Spu. Cavē, Herminī! ā sinistrā oppugnābunt.
Tit. Parātus sum; ecce, undique veniunt.
Hor. Dūra verbera date! Nōn multī eōdem tempore nōs oppugnāre possunt.
Pul. [*in moenibus appāret.*] Venīte, vōs, ad moenia! [*Multī cīvēs in moenia veniunt.*] Sagittās mittite! Jacula cōnjicite!
Sex. Mēcum venīte, mīlitēs! Ego Horātium occīdam. Mihi quidem nōn resistet.
Civ. Cūjus vōcem audīmus?
Vig. I. Sextus Tarquinius hostēs dūcit.
Civ. Apage, perfide Sexte! Num audēs Rōmam revenīre?
Sex. Mox alia clāmābitis, cum vōs in vincula conjiciam.
Civ. Occīde Sextum, Ō Horātī! Etiam sī hostēs nōs vīcerint, gaudēbimus, quod perfidus Sextus mortuus erit.

[*Sextus Horātium oppugnat; Spurius et Titus contrā aliōs pugnant.*]

Pul. Cavēte, sagittāriī! Nōlīte nostrōs occīdere! Cavēte, jaculātōrēs! Suprā capita nostrōrum jacula conjicite!
Vig. II. Uter vincet? Ecce noster illum ferit!
Civ. Iō triumphe! Mortuus est Sextus.
Pul. Minimē, surgit. Horātī, iterum ferī!

[*Alter Horātium oppugnat, dum Mamilius Sextum ē perīculō trahit.*]

Civ. Quis auxilium fert?
Pul. Mamilius.
Civ. Ecce, Sextum ē perīculō trahit.

Vig. I. Nunc redit; ipse Horātium oppugnābit.

Civ. Eheu, nōn mortuus est Sextus.

Val. Auxilium date, cīvēs; ecce, paene frāctus est pōns.

Civ. Iō, Spurius hostem occīdit; nunc alterum ferit.

Vig. II. Eheu! Horātium vulnerāvit Mamilius.

Civ. Eheu! Spurī, auxilium dā!

Vig. I. Ecce. Mamilium repellunt.

Val. [*māgnā vōce.*] Redīte, Rōmānī! paene frāctus est pōns. Jam, jam redī, Horātī!

Civ. Redīte, Rōmānī! paene frāctus est pōns! Nōs servāvistis; jam vōs servāte!

Hor. Redīte, comitēs! dum tempus manet, redīte!

Spu.
Tit. } Tū etiam nōbīscum redī! Sine tē nōn redībimus.

Civ. Redīte, fortēs virī! Jam jam cadit pōns.

Hor. Redīte, comitēs! Vōbīs hoc imperō. Cōnsilium habeō bonum; mē hostēs nōn occīdent.

Spu.
Tit. } Pārēmus. Valē! [*Ad portam redeunt.*]

Civ. Nōlīte Horātium relinquere!

Spu. Ipse imperāvit. Pārēmus.

[*Spurius et Titus urbem intrant.*]

Civ. Sērō redībis, Horātī. Cadit pōns.

Hor. [*Scūtum ad cīvēs conjicit.*] Excipite, cīvēs, scūtum! Nōn honestum est scūtum relinquere. [*Gladium in mediōs hostēs conjicit.*] Vōs, hostēs, gladium excipite! Tibi mē committō, Tiberis. [*Dum pōns cadit, Horātius in flūmen dēsilit.*]

Pul. Quid facit? Vulnerātus est; nōn potest natāre.

Civ. Ita; flūmen trānsit; ad portam natat.

Val. Dēmittite fūnēs! [*Cīvēs fūnem dēmittunt.*]

Civ. Fūnem prehendit. Trahite! trahite!

Omnes. Trahite! trahite! [*Cīvēs Horātium ex aquā in portam trahunt.*]

VAL. / PUL. Senātus tibi grātiās agit.
CIV. Populus Rōmānus tibi grātiās agit.
OMNES. Rōmam servāvistī.

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.



RUINS OF THE COLISEUM

LESSON LX

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

393. The present active participle of a Latin verb ends in **-ns,** and is formed on the present stem. The present participles of regular verbs in the four conjugations are as follows.

I	II	III		IV
(portō)	(moneō)	(dūcō)	(capiō)	(audiō)
portāns	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
carrying	*warning*	*leading*	*taking*	*hearing*

a. There is no present passive participle in Latin.

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

394. Like other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
Gen.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
Dat.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Acc.	portantem	portāns	portantīs (-ēs)	portantia
Abl.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	monēns	monēns	monentēs	monentia
Gen.	monentis	monentis	monentium	monentium
Dat.	monentī	monentī	monentibus	monentibus
Acc.	monentem	monēns	monentīs (-ēs)	monentia
Abl.	monente (-ī)	monente (-ī)	monentibus	monentibus

a. The use of the Latin present participle must not be confused with the progressive form of the verb (*Section* **76,** *a*). In the sentence *The man is standing in the street* the expression *is standing* is the progressive form of the verb, and will be translated by one Latin word, **stat.** In the sentence *The man standing on the wall is my brother*, the word *standing* is a participle modifying *man*, and will be translated by the Latin present participle, **stans.**

READING EXERCISE: A SUCCESSFUL HUNT

395. (*Ulysses speaks.*[1]) Per silvam ambulāns, magnum cervum vīdī. Ventus flābat, et cervus sonitum pedum meōrum audīre nōn poterat. Arcum meum cēpī et frontem cervī prīmā sagittā vulnerāvī. Deinde alteram sagittam mīsī, et eum interfēcī. Nunc cervum umerīs meīs ad comitēs portō. Hī murmurant et īrātī sunt, quod cibum nōn habent. Similēs animālibus sunt, quae semper cibum postulant. Nunc in lītore stantēs mē expectant. Laetī erunt cum mē appropinquantem vidēbunt. Mox cēnam parābimus. Post cēnam in silvam redībō, quod tēctum ibi vīdī. Sed nūllī virī in cōnspectū erant. Itaque hunc locum explōrāre cupiō.

396. VOCABULARY

arcus, -ūs, M., bow
cervus, -ī, M., deer
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow
frōns, frontis, M., forehead
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore
lītus, lītoris, N., shore
similis, -e, like, similar
sonitus, -ūs, M., sound
umerus, -ī, M., shoulder

a. Frequently a noun or pronoun in the dative is used with **similis: similis animālī,** like an animal.

[1] While returning from Troy, Ulysses, one of the Greek heroes, was driven to the shores of a certain island. This reading exercise and those of the three following lessons represent scenes during his stay on the island.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

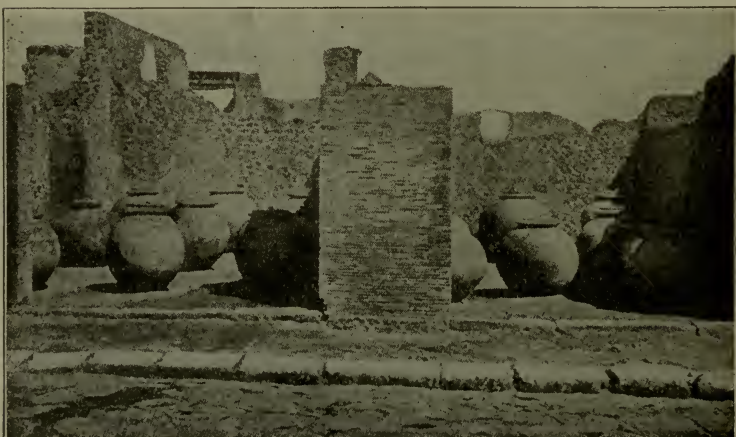
397. 1. The leader returned to the shore carrying a deer. 2. We hear the voices of the soldiers demanding food. 3. I saw a deer running through the forest. 4. The consul is the brother of that (**ille**) man standing on the bridge. 5. We made an attack on the legions crossing the river.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

398. 1. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *arch* and *archer.* 2. What is the original meaning of *inflated?* 3. What sort of ornament is a *frontlet?* 4. What is a *simile?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the declension of the present participles of **dūcō** and **capiō.** 2. Point out all the present participles in section **395,** and name the case of each. 3. Give the present active and past passive participles of **laudō** and **videō.** 4. Decline **sonitus.** 5. Give a synopsis of **flō** in the third person singular, active voice.



ROMAN OIL VAULT

LESSON LXI

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL PHRASE

399. A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence. Thus, *A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.* In this sentence the phrase *a new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

400. The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence given above as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in gender, number, and case. This use of the ablative is called the *ablative absolute.*

Duce captō hostēs fūgērunt. *The leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

Fīliīs meīs laudātīs laetus sum, *my sons having been praised, I am happy*

401. The participle used in agreement with the noun or pronoun of the ablative absolute may be the past participle, as in the sentences which have been given, or it may be the present participle.

Barbarīs prōcēdentibus nostrī arma parābant, *the barbarians advancing, our men prepared arms.*

a. In the ablative absolute the past participle denotes an act taking place before the time of the verb of the clause, but the present participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as that of the verb.

402. Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute construction.

> **Amīcō meō invītō diūtius nōn manēbō,** *my friend (being) unwilling, I shall not remain longer.*
> **Caesare duce mīlitēs semper fortiter pugnābant,** *Caesar (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.*

a. The participle *being,* which is often used in translating an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, has no equivalent in Latin.

b. The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if these phrases are translated with the preposition *with.*

FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

403. In English, independent phrases which correspond to the literal translation of the ablative absolute are not very often used. It is, therefore, frequently necessary to translate the ablative absolute by a clause introduced by *when, after, if, since,* or *although,* as the sense of the main clause may suggest.

> **Monte occupātō,** *when the mountain had been seized.*
> **Duce captō,** *after the leader had been captured.*

a. Various prepositional phrases, also, may be employed in translating this ablative.

> **Gallīs invītīs,** *against the will of the Gauls.*
> **Caesare cōnsule,** *in the consulship of Caesar.*

READING EXERCISE: A DISSATISFIED COMPANY

404. (*The sailors speak*). Rēctē ducem nostrum culpāmus, quī nōs hūc dūxit. Ēsurīmus, neque cibum invenīre possumus. Certē dux bonus nōn est, neque dī immortālēs eum amant. In silvam cum arcū iit, quia cervī in silvā sunt, sed cervō

interfectō ipse cibum habēbit, et nōs ēsuriēmus. Patriā nostrā relictā, in bellō cum eō (homine) pugnāvimus, sed nunc nōs dēseruit. Hōc duce relictō, nāvem parābimus et ad patriam redībimus. Ibi amīcī nōs expectant, et hī nōbīs cibum dabunt. Sī tūtī illam terram iterum vidēbimus, numquam eam relinquēmus. Satis in bellō pugnāvimus et satis errāvimus.

405. VOCABULARY

certē, *adv.,* certainly, surely
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame
dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, desert
deus, -ī (*nom. pl.* **dī**), a god
ēsuriō, -īre, be hungry
immortālis, -e, immortal
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find
quia, *conj.,* because
rēctē, *adv.,* rightly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

406. 1. Taking the bow (the bow having been taken) the man hurried toward the forest. 2. On seeing the enemy (the enemy having been seen) the soldiers seized (took) their arms. 3. Hearing the sound of battle (*abl. absolute*), the soldiers ran to the gate of the city. 4. After the capture of the city (the city having been captured), the king was killed. 5. If the gods defend (shall defend) our city, we shall be safe.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

407. 1. What is a *culpable* action? 2. From which of the principal parts of **dēserō** have our English derivatives come? 3. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with **immortālis.** 4. What is the original meaning of *invent?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the present participles of **culpō, dēserō, inveniō.** 2. Point out the ablatives absolute in section **404.** 3. Conjugate **ēsuriō** in the future indicative active. 4. Write two English sentences which would require the ablative absolute if translated into Latin.

LESSON LXII

QUOTATIONS: INDIRECT DISCOURSE

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

408. 1. A direct quotation is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker. Thus, *He said, "I will come."*

2. An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought but not the exact words of the original speaker. In English an indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction *that*. Thus, *He said that he would come.*

a. Sometimes no conjunction is used. Thus, *He said he would come.*

INDIRECT QUOTATIONS IN LATIN

409. In Latin, a simple sentence when used in an indirect quotation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the accusative. No conjunction is used to introduce indirect quotations in Latin.

Dīcit puerum in silvā ambulāre, *he says that the boy is walking in the forest.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

410. The name *indirect discourse* is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations, and also to certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations. In such sentences as *I heard that you had received a letter*, and *Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant*, the clauses introduced by *that* take the same form in Latin as the indirect quotations given above. That is, their verbs will be infinitives and their subjects will stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of *saying*, *hearing*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *believing*, *seeing*, and the like.

Crēdō tē librum meum habēre, *I believe* (*that*) *you have my book.*

a. A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject.

Arbitrāmur ducem nostrum *fortem* esse, *we think* (*that*) *our leader is brave.*

READING EXERCISE: THE FAULT-FINDERS REPROVED

411. (*The sailor who has been left in charge speaks.*) Dīcō ducem nostrum fidēlem esse. Quod cibum non habēmus, in silvam iit, ubi crēdō eum cibum petere. Ferīs interfectīs carnem nōbīs dabit. Putō vōs ignāvōs esse et nihil scīre. Mare timētis et omnia timētis. Quod ēsurītis, ducem bonum nostrum culpātis et dīcitis eum vōs dēseruisse. Vōs nōn dēseruit neque dēseret. Etiam nunc aliquem videō quem esse ducem nostrum crēdō. Rēctā ad nōs venit, et aliquid grave umerīs portat. Habitus ejus ostendit eum esse ducem nostrum. Cervum portat, quem in silvā interfēcit. Mox cervus in (*on*) igne pōnētur, et vōs cibum habēbitis.

412. VOCABULARY

carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat
fera, -ae, F., wild animal
fidēlis, -e, faithful
gravis, -e, heavy
habitus, -ūs, M., appearance, garb
ignis, ignis, -ium, M., fire
mare, maris, N., the sea
nihil, *indeclinable,* N., nothing
rēctā, *adv.,* directly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

413. 1. You say that your friends love you. 2. I think you do not have many friends. 3. The sailors believe that their leader wishes to desert them. 4. I say that our leader is faithful. 5. Having killed a deer (a deer having been killed), the leader will return to the shore.



VICTIMS FOR A ROMAN SACRIFICE

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

414. 1. What is a *carnivorous* animal? 2. Give nouns derived from **fidēlis** and **gravis.** 3. Find a verb derived from **ignis.** 4. What are *marine* animals? 5. What does a *nihilist* desire in the way of government?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Why is **ducem,** of the second line of Section **411,** in the accusative case? 2. Give the present active and past active infinitives of **dīcō.** 3. Give the present passive and past passive infinitives of **mittō.** 4. Decline **habitus** in the singular number. 5. Write two English sentences which, if translated into Latin, would take the construction of indirect discourse.

LESSON LXIII

NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION: IMPERSONAL VERBS

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

415. The genitive singular of the fifth declension ends in **-ēī** (after a consonant **-eī**). The nominative singular always ends in **-ēs.** The nouns **diēs,** *day,* and **rēs,** *thing,* are declined as follows:

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*	*Endings*	
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	**-ēs,**	**-ēs**
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	**-ēī (-eī)**	**-ērum**
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	**-ēī (-eī)**	**-ēbus**
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	**-em,**	**-ēs**
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	**-ē,**	**-ēbus**

a. **Diēs** is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine, except one compound of **diēs.**

b. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined in full. The other nouns of this declension lack some or all of the plural forms.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

416. There are a few Latin verbs which have only the third person singular, the infinitives, and (occasionally) the participles. Such verbs are called impersonal. The most important are **oportet,** *it is necessary* (or *proper*), and **licet,** *it is permitted.*

USE OF *OPORTET*

417. The impersonal verb **oportet** is regularly used with an infinitive and an accusative as subject of the infinitive. In English the accusative is often translated as subject of the verb *ought,* with a dependent infinitive.

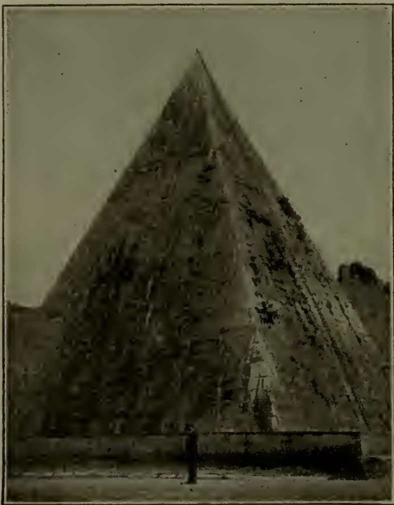
> **Oportet nautās fortēs esse,** *the sailors ought to be brave* (more literally *it is proper that the sailors be brave*).



ROMAN LAMPS

USE OF *LICET*

418. With **licet** a dative is used to denote the person who is permitted to do some act, and the infinitive is used to denote the act permitted. In English the dative is often translated as the subject of *may* or *might* with a verb representing the infinitive.



THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS

Eīs redīre licet, *they may return* (more literally *it is permitted them to return*).

a. Frequently the dative is translated as subject of a form of *permit* (or *allow*) with a dependent infinitive. The sentence above may be translated *they are permitted to return.*

READING EXERCISE: FOOD AT LAST

419. Hic nauta rāmōs siccōs portat, ille (nauta) rēmum frāctum habet, quem in lītore invēnit. Omnēs ignem quam prīmum accendere et cēnam parāre properant. Nam per omnem diem sine cibō in lītore fuērunt, et nunc laetī ducem appropinquāre vident cum cervō, quem umerīs portat. Saepe murmurāvērunt, dīcentēs ducem nōn esse fidēlem, sed hanc rem nōn esse vēram nunc sciunt. Oportet eōs ducem laudāre, oportet eōs ducī grātiās agere, quī vītam eōrum servāvit. Sed multī ex eīs neque bonī neque fortēs sunt. Sī licet eīs cibum habēre, nihil aliud volunt, nihil aliud sciunt. Nōn vident ducem fortem vītam eōrum servāvisse.

420. VOCABULARY

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, kindle, light
diēs, diēī, M. *or* F., day
licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal,* it is permitted
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it is proper (*or* fitting), one ought
quam prīmum, as soon as possible.
rāmus, -ī, M., bough, branch
rēmus, -ī, M., oar
rēs, reī, F., thing
siccus, -a, -um, dry
vērus, -a, -um, true

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

421. 1. On that day (*Section* **328**) many brave men were killed. 2. I have often heard this fact (thing). 3. You are not permitted (it is not permitted to you) to kindle a fire in this place. 4. You ought to announce this fact (thing) at once. 5. You know that the days are long in summer.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

422. 1. What is the literal meaning of *sine die?* How is this phrase used in connection with the meetings of assemblies? 2. What connection can you see between the meaning of **licet** and *license?* 3. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *ramify.* 4. What is the derivation of *real?* 5. What is a *veracious* narrative?

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Give the genitive plural of **porta, rāmus, dux, ignis, exercitus, diēs.** Give the ablative singular of these six words. 2. Give the forms of **licet** in the third person singular, active voice, in the six tenses of the indicative. 3. Write an English sentence which can be translated into Latin with the use of **oportet.** Tell what would be the case of the subject of this sentence when translated into Latin. 4. With what classes of verbs is indirect discourse used?

LESSON LXIV

CARDINAL NUMERALS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

CARDINAL NUMERALS

423. The numerals used in counting or in telling how many persons or objects are meant are called *cardinal numerals*. The Latin cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

ūnus, -a, -um, *one*
duo, duae, duo, *two*
trēs, tria, *three*
quattuor, *four*
quīnque, *five*
sex, *six*
septem, *seven*
octō, *eight*
novem, *nine*
decem, *ten*
ūndecim, *eleven*
duodecim, *twelve*
tredecim, *thirteen*
quattuordecim, *fourteen*
quīndecim, *fifteen*
sēdecim, *sixteen*
septendecim, *seventeen*
duodēvīgintī, *eighteen*
ūndēvīgintī, *nineteen*
vīgintī, *twenty*

DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

424. The numerals **duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
duōs *or* duo	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. With the exception of **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs**, the numerals given above are not declined. The declension of **ūnus** is like that of **sōlus**, which is given in Section **13** of the Appendix. **Trēs** is declined like the plural of **omnis**, Section **11**, (2), of the Appendix.



ROMAN TABLE

425. READING EXERCISE: CONVERSATION DURING THE FEAST

Nauta I. Haec carō dulcis est.
N. II. Ita est; gaudeō quod carnem iterum edō.
N. III. Quam callidus dux noster est.
N. IV. Gaudēmus quod tam callidum ducem habēmus.
N. III. Cervum in silvā invēnit et frontem ejus sagittā trānsfīxit.
N. N. I et II. Dā nōbīs iterum carnem.
N. V. Similēs suibus estis. Nihil cēterīs relinquētis.
N. N. I et II. Sed per omnem diem nūllum cibum habuimus. Ēsuriēbāmus.
N. VI. Nōs quoque ēsuriēbāmus, sed non suēs sumus. Nōn oportet duōs aut trēs hominēs tōtum cervum edere.
N. N. VII et VIII. Crās in silvam ībimus. Inde multōs cervōs referēmus.

N. IX. Vix dux callidus noster ūnum invēnit; certē vōs nōn facile multōs inveniētis.

Dux. Ipse in silvam quam prīmum redībō, quia tēctum ibi vīdī. Quis in hōc tēctō habitat? Id scīre cupiō.

426. VOCABULARY

callidus, -a, -um, shrewd, wise
dulcis, -e, sweet, delicious
edō, -ere,[1] **ēdī, ēsum,** eat
inde, *adv.* from there
referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back
sūs, suis, M., F., hog, swine
trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī-, -fīxum, pierce
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

427. 1. My brother has gone to the forest with two companions. 2. We crossed the river with three legions. 3. Five sailors remained on the shore. 4. I saw four men who had been in Spain. 5. Our companions ought to return to the ship with our leader.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

428. 1. What are *dulcet* tones? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of the Italian phrase *Dolce far niente.* What do you suppose is the origin of the Italian word *dolce?* 3. What is the origin of the word *swine?* 4. What is the origin of the words *refer* and *relate?*

SUGGESTED DRILL

1. Write the declension of **dulcis**. 2. Decline together **duo hominēs**. 3. Decline together **duae puellae**. 4. Conjugate **trānsfīgō** in the present indicative passive and the perfect indicative active. 5. Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **sūs**.

[1] In classical Latin the present active infinitive of this verb is regularly **ēsse,** and the third person singular of the present active indicative is **ēst**. In this book **edere** and **edit** are used instead of the classical forms.

CIRCĒ

Persōnae.

Ulīxēs, *quī domum iter facit.*
Eurylochus, *quem Ulīxēs nautīs praefēcit.*

Scaena I.

Aegyptius, Philippus, Menexenus, Alexander, Crēsius — *nautae.*
Cēterī nautae.

Scaena II.

Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius — *nautae*

Circē: *maga.*
Ancillae quattuor.
Minister.
Coquus.
Servus alius.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN LĪTORE ĪNSULAE.

In saxō stat Eurylochus; circum eum vīgintī nautae, aliī humī sedent, aliī stant; omnēs murmurant.

Eur. Nōlīte ducem nostrum culpāre!
Aeg. At quis nōs in īnsulam dēsertam dūxit?
Cet. Respondē, Ō Eurylochē! Nōnne Ulīxēs?
Eur. Sānē, magnus Ulīxēs vōs hūc dūxit; sed nōlīte illum culpāre!
Phi. Cūr nōn oportet nōs illum culpāre?

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

429. Verbs compounded with **ante, ob, prae,** and **sub** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. ***Legiōnī* praeest,** *he is in command of the legion.*

a. If the simple verb from which the compound is formed would take an object, the compound verb may take both the accusative and the dative: **Eurylochum *nautīs* praefēcī,** *I placed Eurylochus in command of the sailors.*

CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche. Cūr nōn oportet nōs illum culpāre?
EUR. Quia dī immortālēs [*palmās tollit*] nōs et illum in haec perīcula addūxērunt.
MEN. Sī dī Ulīxem nōn amant, nōn jam noster erit dux.
CET. Rēctē dīcis; nōn jam noster erit dux.
ALE. [*ventrem tangit.*] Ēsuriō; dā mihi cibum, Euryloche!
OMNES. Ēsurīmus; dā nōbīs cibum, Euryloche!
EUR. Nōnne magnanimus Ulīxēs in mediās silvās iit, quia cibum nōbīs petere volēbat?
CRE. Num hoc crēdis? Nōs quidem hoc nōn crēdimus.
OMNES. Nōn crēdimus. Immō vērō nōs dēseruit.
AEG. Sī ferās arcū occīdet, ipse eās edet.
OMNES. Ipse carnem edet avium et bēstiārum.
PHI. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habeō.
OMNES. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habēmus.
EUR. Ō stultī; fidēlis est noster dux; crēdite illī!
MEN. [*quī circum sē spectat.*] Hominem quī advenit, videō.
CET. Hostisne an amīcus venit?
MEN. Nesciō; adhūc procul abest.

[*Aliī nautae nunc stant.*]

ALE. Ecce, dē summō colle dēscendit.
CET. Quō habitū est? Quae vestīmenta, quae arma portat?

---

b. The dative is sometimes used with compounds of **ad, circum, com, in, inter, post, prō, super.** If the compounds of **ad** and **in** denote motion the accusative with **ad** or **in** is regularly used instead of the dative.

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

430. The ablative modified by an adjective is sometimes used to describe a person or thing. **Homō *magnā virtūte*,** *a man of* (literally *with*) *great courage.*

a. The genitive modified by an adjective is also used to describe a person or thing. In many phrases, such as

Cre. Arcum sagittāsque fert; rēctā ad nōs venit.

Omnes. Ulīxēs est.

Aeg. Quid umerīs portat?

Phi. Carnem nōbīs affert.

Omnes. Ō magnanimum Ulīxem! Ō optimum ducem!

Ulixis Vox. Cervum sagittā occīdī. Cibum vōbīs afferō. Carnem edēmus omnēs.

Omnes. Iō, Iō! Ō magnanimum Ulīxem! Ō optimum ducem!

Eur. Ligna petite, nautae! Properāte vōs!

[*Dum Ulīxēs appropinquat, nautae ligna per lītus petunt et in mediō cumulant.*]

Men. Rēmum frāctum invēnī, quī in lītore jacēbat.

Ale. Siccōs rāmōs afferō, quī dē arbore cecidērunt.

Cre., Aeg. Grave est id quod portāmus; gubernāculum ferimus nāvis nostrae, quod mare in lītus jēcit.

Phi. Rōstrum nāvis repperī; ecce, Minervae imāginem undae perdidērunt; eam vix possum agnōscere.

[*Ulīxēs appāret et cervum humī dēpōnit.*]

Eur. Salvē, Ulīxēs! Nautae, ignem accendite!

Cet. Nōn possumus ignem accendere. Ō callidissime omnium hominum [*Ulīxī hoc dīcunt*], hoc prō nōbīs fac, quia ēsurīmus et quam prīmum cēnāre volumus.

Eur. [*Dum Ulīxēs ligna cōnfricat et ignem accendit.*] Nunc callidus et magnanimus est is quī nūper pessimus ducum erat et īnfīdissimus.

[*Ulīxēs in saxō cōnsīdit; nautae in summō igne cervum tōtum pōnunt. Tum circum Ulīxem et ignem sē dispōnunt.*]

---

the example given above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used. But physical traits are usually denoted by the ablative, and measure is always denoted by the genitive. The expression *a four-foot wall* will be translated **mūrus *quattuor pedum*** (*a wall of four feet*).

ULI. Per silvam errābam, cum hunc cervum haud procul vīdī —

MEN. Dulcis est fūmus.

ULI. Mē post arborem cēlāvī —

ALE. [*sonitum labrīs facit.*] Dulcem carnem jam gustō.

ULI. Ventus adversus flābat; nōn igitur mē olfacere cervus poterat.

CRE. Carnem equidem olfaciō dulcissimam.

ULI. Sagittam arcumque parāvī.

AEG. Nōs quidem convīvium parāmus.

ULI. Sagittā prīmā cervī frontem trānsfīxī. Nōnne magna et pulchra sunt cornua, Ō Euryloche?

PHI. Magna et pulchra erit cēna.

MEN. Jam certē tostus est cervus. Licetne mihi statim edere?

OMNES. Statim edere volumus.

ULI. Edite, comitēs! Gaudeō quod nōn jam ēsuriētis.

EUR. Vorāte, vōs quī suibus estis similēs; nihil nisi cēna cibusque vōbīs in mentem venit.

[*Nautae cervum dīvidunt et carnem vorant; intereā Ulīxēs nārrat.*]

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

431. The comparative and superlative of English adjectives regularly end in *-er* and *-est*: *long, longer, longest.*

In Latin the comparative regularly ends in **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and **-ius** for the neuter, and the superlative in **-issimus, -issima, -issimum,** declined like **bonus.**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
wide	*wider*	*widest*
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
brave	*braver*	*bravest*
fēlīx (*gen.* fēlīcis)	fēlīcior, fēlīcius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
happy	*happier*	*happiest*

ULI. Postquam cervum occīdī, circum mē spectāre coepī. Haud procul inter arborēs appārēbat tēctum domūs. Fūmus inde ascendēbat.

ALE. Sine dubiō torrēbant carnem.

CET. Carō dulcis est! Libenter iterum carnem gustāmus.

CRE. Nōnne usque ad domum īvistī, Ō dux?

ULI. Minimē; comitum mihi in mentem vēnit famēs. Ad vōs igitur quam prīmum praedam meam rettulī.

AEG. Crās ad illam domum ībimus. Quid cēnsētis, comitēs?

CET. Placet; ad eum locum ībimus.

MEN. Fortasse ibi multam carnem et bene tostam inveniēmus.

EUR. Glandēs saltem in silvā inveniētis.

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN ĀTRIŌ CIRCAE.

Nēmō in ātriō adest; sed per jānuam quae ā dextrā est nunc fēminās quae rīdent, nunc suēs quī edunt audītis. Ā sinistrā intrant Ulīxēs et Eurylochus et trēs nautae, Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius.

NAU. Ubi sunt comitēs nostrī?

PRO. Eōs quōs perdidimus, neque videō neque audiō.

RHO. At vōcēs audiō.

EUR. Sānē, fēminās quae rīdent audīs.

NAU. Nōnne suēs audītis, comitēs, quī edunt?

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

432. The comparatives are third declension adjectives, and are declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, -īs	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

PRO. Silēte, fēmina nunc cantat.

ULI. Circē, maga, pessima fēminārum, cantat quia nostrōs comitēs perdidit.

RHO. Nōnne nōs etiam perdet?

ULI. Priōrēs eam oppugnābimus.

NAU. At sī baculum illud agitābit, nōnne mortuī nōs omnēs cadēmus?

ULI. Sī mihi pārēbitis et omnia quae nunc imperābō faciētis, eam vincēmus.

EUR. Tibi pārēbimus, Ō dux noster, vir callide! Quid imperās?

NAUTAE. Tibi pārēbimus nōs omnēs.

ULI. Apud hanc fēminam nōlīte edere, nōlīte bibere.

OMNES. Nihil hīc edēmus, nihil bibēmus.

ULI. Etiam sī ego cibum et pōculum accipiam, vōs nōlīte idem facere.

RHO. Cūr hoc tibi licet quod nōs facere vetās?

ULI. Hunc quem teneō flōrem Mercurius mihi dedit.

PRO. Quō modō tē dēfendere hic flōs potest?

ULI. Dum hunc flōrem olfaciō, Circē mē laedere nōn poterit.

EUR. Silēte omnēs; aliquem enim audiō quī jānuam aperit.

ULI. Mementōte id quod imperāvī, et pārēte!

[*Intrat Circē cum ancillīs quattuor.*]

CIR. Salvē, Ō Ulīxēs.

ANC. I. Salvē, Ō Euryloche.

ANC. II. Salvē, Ō Naupactōe.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

433. Adjectives ending in **-er** in the positive form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -rima, -rimum** to the nominative singular of the masculine instead of using the ending **-issimus.**

pulcher	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um

ANC. III. Salvē, Ō Proxene.
ANC. IV. Salvē, Ō Rhodī.
ULI. Salvē, Ō rēgīna. Tē, quae meum nōmen scīs, quō modo vocābō?
EUR. [*ancillae I.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
NAU. [*ancillae II.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
PRO. [*ancillae III.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
RHO. [*ancillae IV.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?
CIR. Salvēte, omnēs advenae! Nōmen meum nōlīte rogāre, sed vīnum meum bibite et carnēs meās edite. [*Manibus plaudit.*]

[*Intrat minister quī quīnque pōcula fert.*]

MIN. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.
ANCILLAE. Dā nōbīs pōcula. [*Ē manibus ministrī quattuor pōcula accipiunt. Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat servus quī amphoram fert.*]
SER. Adsum, Ō rēgīna!
CIR. Appropinquā, serve! [*Dum baculum suprā amphoram agitat, venēnum in vīnum dēmittit.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, vīnum cōnsecrō.
ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte vīnum. [*Servus vīnum in pōcula fundit.*]
SER. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Aurea mīrificō complēvī pōcula vīnō.

SPECIAL ADJECTIVES IN *-LIS*

434. The following adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-limus**: **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, humilis.**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um

a. Other adjectives in **-lis** form their superlatives regularly with **-issimus.**

CIR. Mihi dā pōculum, Ō minister.
MIN. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Tē vel[1] callidiōrem hoc vīnum reddet, Ulīxēs.
ULI. Tum erō tam callidus quam vulpēs.
CIR. Hoc tibi prōmittō. Accipe, Ō rēx. Rēgīna tibi vīnum offert.
ANC. I. Accipe, Ō Euryloche; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.
ANC. II. Accipe, Ō Naupactōe; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.
ANC. III. Accipe, Ō Proxene; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.
ANC. IV. Accipe, Ō Rhodī; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum offert.

[*Virī ā fēminīs pōcula accipiunt. Rhodius sē post columnam cēlat.*]

ULI. Oculōs mihi advertite. [*Intereā Eurylochus et Naupactōus et Proxenus vīnum humī effundunt, sed Rhodius bibit.*] Vīnum bibō, grātus quia nōs advenās tam benignē excēpistī, Ō rēgīna. [*Flōrem olfacit, dum vīnum bibit. Omnēs Ulīxem diū spectant.*]
ULI. Quid spectātis? Bonum est vīnum quod hospitibus dās, Ō rēgīna; dī tibi praemium meritum dabunt.
CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Vulpēs eris! Hoc imperō.

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

435. The following important adjectives are compared irregularly:

bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
multus	......, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

[1] *Even.*

ULI. Quid facis? Quid dīcis? [*Rīdet.*] Eia! Nunc intellegō; tam callidus sum quam vulpēs.

ANC. I. Placetne tibi vīnum, Euryloche? Nōnne aliquid sentīs?

EUR. Dulce est hoc vīnum.

ANC. II. Et tū, Naupactōe, quid dīcis?

NAU. Numquam anteā tam dulce vīnum bibī.

ANC. III. Nōnne optimum est vīnum, Ō Proxene?

PRO. Nectar est, dīs idōneum, [*sibi dīcit*] sed nōn hominibus.

ANC. IV. Tibine grātum est vīnum, Ō Rhodī?

[*Rhodius suis sonitum facit et suī similis ex ātriō currit, Ulīxēs nihil videt.*]

NAU. Vīdistīne suem quī ex ātriō currēbat?

PRO. Ubi est Rhodius? Multum timeō.

EUR. Ulīxī crēdite.

ULI. At aliquid mihi in mentem venit, Ō rēgīna. Aliīne hīc adsunt apud tē hospitēs?

CIR. Multās bēstiās apud mē habeō, sed hominēs nūllōs.

ULI. Ante hōs duōs diēs[2] comitēs meī, nautae, ad tuam domum vēnērunt, quia ēsuriēbant.

CIR. Ita est. Illīs cibum dedī; hominēs brevī hinc discessērunt.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

436. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives. Those derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions regularly end in **-ē**. Those derived from adjectives of the third declension regularly end in **-ter** or **-iter**.

lātus, *wide*	lātē, *widely*
fortis, *brave*	fortiter, *bravely*
audāx (*gen.* audācis), *bold*	audācter, *boldly*
prūdēns, *prudent*	prūdenter, *prudently*

---

[2] *Two days ago.*

ANCILLAE. [*rīdent.*] Suēs tamen apud nōs manent.

NAUTAE. Quid dīcere vultis? Nōn suēs erant comitēs quōs perdidimus, sed virī.

[*Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat coquus quī carnēs in paterā fert.*]

COQ. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.

CIR. Quid affers?

COQ. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Ambrosiam hospitibus dulcem fēlīcibus offers.

CIR. Bibistis, Ō hospitēs! Nunc edite!

ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte carnēs.

CIR. [*baculum suprā carnēs agitat.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, carnēs cōnsecrō. [*Deinde Ulīxī offert. Omnēs carnem manibus accipiunt.*]

ULI. [*subitō clāmat.*] Ubi est Rhodius? [*Dum omnēs circumspectant, nautae carnēs rejiciunt.*]

ANC. IV. Ex ātriō fūgit—[*parvā vōce*]—sūs. [*Rīdent ancillae.*]

ULI. Carnem edō et tibi, Ō rēgīna, grātiās agō.

[*Omnēs diū spectant.*]

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Tandem vulpēs eris! Hoc imperō ego cui nōmen est Circē.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

437. The comparative of an adverb is the same as the neuter comparative of the corresponding adjective. The superlative of an adverb is formed by changing the ending **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective to **-ē**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (*from* lātus)	lātius	lātissimē
ācriter (*from* ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (*from* facilis)	facilius	facillimē

Uli. [*māgnō rīsū.*] Tē agnōscō, fēmina dīs hominibusque īnfesta, improba maga. Nihil efficere potes. [*Gladium stringit.*] Tē et tuās ancillās occīdam, quia tot hominēs jam perdidistis.

Cir. Ignōsce mihi, Ō optime rēx! Nōn iterum hominēs laedam, sī mihi ignōscēs.

Uli. Sī tē occīdam, hoc prō certō habēbō.

Eur. Ubi sunt nostrī comitēs? Jubē eam, Ō Ulīxēs, hoc dīcere.

Cir. Sī tibi hoc dīcam, nōnne ignōscere vīs?

Uli. Sī hoc faciēs, vīvēs.

Cir. [*baculum agitat.*] Ō suēs, quī comitēs Ulīxis fuistis, este iterum hominēs!

[*Intrant cēterī nautae, quī comitēs salūtant.*]

Uli. Nōlī iterum hominem in bēstiae formam mūtāre! Hoc jūrā!

Cir. Hoc jūrō.

Ancillae [*lacrimant.*] Hoc jūrāmus, quod domina jūrāvit.

Uli. Abīte, miserae.

[*Fēminae discēdunt; nautae gaudent.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

IRREGULAR ADVERBS

438. The following adverbs are compared irregularly or are from adjectives of irregular comparison.:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *badly*	pejus	pessimē
magnopere, *greatly*	magis	maximē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum, *little*	minus	minimē

The comparison of adverbs is still further explained in the Appendix, Sections 17 and 18.

POLYPHĒMUS

PERSŌNAE

Ulīxēs.
Nautae XII.
Polyphēmus.
Aliī Cyclōpēs.
Ariēs et ovēs.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN ANTRŌ POLYPHĒMĪ.

Ā dextrā ovīlia; ā sinistrā calathī cāseō plēnī et crātērae lācte plēnae; ā tergō saxum post quod nautae sē cēlant. Ulīxēs et nautae antrum Polyphēmī intrant.

ULI. Ecce! in cavernā ingentī sumus. Sine dubiō Cyclōpis domus est quem nūper vīdimus.

NAUTA I. Sine dubiō ejus caverna est. Tantum mōnstrum ego numquam vīdī.

N. II. Hominī dissimilis vidētur.

N. III. Ūnum modo oculum in mediā fronte habet.

N. IV. Ovēs et caprōs in agrīs pāscēbat.

OMNES. Sine dubiō in hōc antrō habitat.

ULI. Ita: nam hūc spectāte, virī; nōnne vidētis illōs calathōs cāseō plēnōs? et ovīlia in quibus agnī sunt et haedī? et haud procul crātērās cōnspiciō lācte plēnās.

N. V. Certē, avidus est, sī haec omnia edere potest!

N. VI. Fortasse nōs quoque comedere cupiet, Ō domine.

N. VII. Redīre ad lītus quam prīmum[1] optimum erit.

N. VIII. Mihi quoque id optimum vidētur. Sed cāseum nōbīscum auferēmus et agnōs paucōs haedōsque. Nam cibum nōn habēmus multum in nāvibus.

ULI. Nōlō jam redīre, virī. Melius erit hīc manēre et dōna rogāre cum Polyphēmus redībit.

[1] *As soon as possible.*

N. IX. Temerārius est Ulīxēs. Nōs omnēs perībimus.

Uli. Cēnam parāte, nautae. Cum cēnāverimus, forte ille domum redībit.

[*Nautae cēnam parāre incipiunt.*]

N. X. Hei mihi! Quid audiō? Ipse appropinquat.

N. XI. Fugite, amīcī. Vae miserīs nōbīs.

Uli. Venīte mēcum, virī. In intimam cavernam nōs recipiēmus.

[*Virī sē post saxum cēlant, unde Polyphēmum spectant.*]

N. I. Adestne ille?

N. II. Jam jam gregem in cavernam agit.

N. III. Quid nunc facit?

N. IV. Agnōs et haedōs extrā jānuam relīquit: sed ovēs intrā cavernam dūcit.

N. V. Cūr tam obscūra caverna fit?

N. VI. Jānua jam clausa est, nam saxum magnum ante jānuam posuit.

CONJUGATION OF *FĪŌ*

439. The verb **fīō**, *become, be made,* is used as the passive of **faciō,** which has no passive forms of its own in the present, imperfect, and future. It is conjugated as follows in the present, imperfect, and future indicative.

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
fīō	. . . .	fīēbam	fīēbāmus	fīam	fīēmus
fīs	. . . .	fīēbās	fīēbātis	fīēs	fīētis
fit	fīunt	fīēbat	fīēbant	fīet	fīent

a. The principal parts are **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

b. The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are formed regularly with the past participle **factus** and the forms of **sum. Factus sum, factus eram, factus erō,** etc.

N. VII. Quid Cyclōps nunc agit?

N. VIII. Ovēs et caprās mulget.

N. IX. Nōnne ignem nunc accendit? Flammae lūcem dant.

N. X. Tacēte amīcī. Nōs audiet.

Pol. Hem! Quid audiō? Quis adest? [*virōs videt*] Ohē! Quī estis, advenae? Unde vēnistis?

N. XI et XII. Hei mihi! Quid nōs agere poterimus?

Uli. Nōlīte timēre, amīcī. Ego prō omnibus respondēbō, et fortasse benignē nōs trāctābit. Graecī sumus, quī Trōjā venīmus et domum mare trānsīmus. Sed Juppiter, quī nōbīs īrātus est, ventōs et undās nōs ā viā prohibēre sinit. Itaque ad tuam īnsulam invītī vēnimus. Sed benignus es,[1] Ō hospes, nam supplicēs tuī sumus. Sī tū auxilium nōbīs dederis, dī tē remūnerābuntur.

Pol. Stultus es, aut procul ab hāc terrā habitās, sī mē tālem esse putās. Deōs enim nōs Cyclōpēs neque venerāmur neque timēmus. Grātissima

---

DEPONENT VERBS

440. A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active in meaning. Its principal parts are passive forms. The endings of the present infinitives of deponent verbs of the four conjugations are as follows:

I	II	III	IV
-ārī	**-ērī**	**-ī**	**-īrī**

a. Examples of the conjugation of deponent verbs are given in Section **33** of the Appendix. Their forms are exactly the same as those of the passive voice of the model verbs before given, except that deponents have the active form for the future infinitive. **Remūneror** in line 51 is conjugated like the passive of **portō,** except that its future infinitive is **remūnerātūrus esse.**

[1] See Section **340.**

autem cēna mihi eritis, tū et nautae tuī. Duōs enim māne et duōs vesperī edam dōnec omnēs mortuī eritis. [*Duōs captōs occīdit et comedit.*]

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

Ulīxēs cōnsilium init.

Postrīdiē māne Ulīxēs et octō nautae in antrō sedent et inter sē loquuntur.

Polyphēmus, quī duōs nautās hodiē comēdit, exiit.

NAUTAE OMNES. Vae nōbīs miserīs! ad patriam nostram numquam redībimus.

N. V. Crūdēlior Cyclōps est quam fera; duōs nostrum herī, duōs hodiē comēdit, et mox omnēs ad ūnum dēvorābit.

ULI. Nōlīte dēspērāre, virī; dī nōs etiam nunc juvāre possunt, et ego ipse cōnsilium inīre incipiō.

N. VI. Tua cōnsilia nōbīs nōn placent; nam propter tē amīcī nostrī quattuor miserrimē periērunt.

OMNES. Vīsne Cyclōpem, dum noctū dormit, occīdere, Ō domine?

ULI. Id facere volō: sed etiam sī eum interficiam, nōs ex antrō per clausam jānuam effugere nōn poterimus.

OMNES. Quam prūdēns dominus noster est! Sed quid nōs facere jam possumus?

ULI. Audīte mē. Baculum longum quod Cyclōps humī relīquit cōnspiciō. Id acuēmus, et in igne adūrēmus. Vesperī, cum Polyphēmus redierit, vīnum eī dabō; nam—ut meministis—optimum vīnum mēcum hūc attulī. Cum ille somnō vīnōque sepultus erit, oculum ejus baculō ārdentī extinguēmus. Tum impotēns ille et imbēcillus fīet.

OMNES. Sapientissimum cōnsilium est. Omnēs tē adjuvābimus.

ULI. Crās, ubi jānua aperta erit, cum ovibus nōs quoque exībimus. Sīc ad lītus et nāvēs tandem effugere poterimus.

OMNES. Omnium prūdentissimus dominus noster est.

SCAENA TERTIA. IN EŌDEM LOCŌ.

Polyphēmī oculum Graecī extinguunt.
Vesperī: Ulīxēs et octō nautae Polyphēmum expectant.

ULI. Parātīne estis, virī? Mox enim redībit Polyphēmus.

NAUTAE. Ita, parātī sumus. Baculum acūtum ārdēnsque habēmus.

ULI. Quī in oculō Cyclōpis baculum mēcum contorquēre audēbunt? Quattuor ad hunc labōrem sorte ēligere optimum erit.

NAUTAE. Ita vērō: id faciēmus.

N. VII. Hīc est galea, in quam sortēs conjicere possumus.

N. VIII. Hīc lapidēs nōnnūllī sunt, quōs in galeam conjicere possumus.

N. IX. Ego galeam tenēbō et quatiam.

[*IV Nautae sortēs accipiunt.*]

ULI. Et ego quīntus erō. Dī sortēs optimē rēxērunt; vōs enim quattuor ipse dēligere cupiēbam.

N. X. Aliquem audiō quī appropinquat!

OMNES. Sine dubiō Cyclōps ipse adest.

N. XI. Ita, ovium enim bālātūs audiō.

OMNES. Post saxum recipiēmus nōs, dōnec ille dormiet.

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

441. The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. **Puer *quinque mīlia* passuum ambulāvit,** *the boy walked five miles.*

[*Polyphēmus cavernam intrat, ovēs mulget, duōs nautās captōs dēvorat. Ulīxēs crātēram vīnō plēnam eī offert.*]

ULI. Ecce, Cyclōps, vīnum tibi offerō. Carnem hominum ēdistī; vīnum nunc bibe: grātissimum est. [*Cyclōps bibit.*]

POL. Dā mihi iterum bibere. Vīnum tuum jūcundum est. Et dīc mihi nōmen tuum. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. [*Sēcum*] Eum fallere optimum erit.

POL. Iterum, advena: vīnum tuum mē multum dēlectat. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. Nōmen meum interrogāvistī: id nōn cēlābō. "Nēmō" nōmen meum est: "Nēminem" māter mea paterque et sociī omnēs mē appellant.

POL. Nēmō, prō beneficiīs tuīs tē remūnerārī cupiō. Postrēmum igitur tē dēvorābō.

ULI. [*sēcum*] Edepol! Grātiās tibi maximās agō. Postrēma tibi cēna erō.

[*Polyphēmus sē humī jacit; mox somnus eum opprimit. IV Nautae ex intimā cavernā exeunt.*]

NAUTAE. Adestne tempus, domine? Dormitne Cyclōps?

ULI. Ita, graviter dormit. Nunc, dī patriī, adjuvāte nōs.

[*Baculum ārdēns afferunt, et in oculō Polyphēmī vehementer contorquent. Ille clāmōrēs horribilēs tollit, et per antrum furibundus ruit.*]

POL. Vae mihi! Quid factum est? Quis oculum meum extīnxit? Ubinam estis, virī? [*Aliī Cyclōpēs extrā cavernam stant.*]

ALII CYC. Cūr tantōs clāmōrēs tollis, Polyphēme? Nōs dormīre prohibuistī! Quis tē laedit, aut quis tē occīdere temptat?

POL. Nēmō mē occīdit, amīcī.

ALII CYC. At sī nēmō in cavernā **tēcum** est, Juppiter fortasse tē laedit. Tū autem patrī tuō Neptūnō supplicā.

ULI. Ohē virī! dolus meus et nōmen simulātum eum fefellērunt!

N. VII. Quid facit ille? Quid fāctūrus est? Potesne vidēre?

N. VIII. Saxum summōvit, et ipse humī ante jānuam sedet.

N. IX. Nōs, dum exīmus, rapere cupit.

OMNES. Quandō fugere temptābimus, Ō domine?

ULI. Prīmā lūce, cum ovēs ad agrōs exībunt, nōs quoque cum eīs exībimus.

SCAENA QUĀRTA. IN EODEM LOCŌ.

In cavernā omnēs sedent.

ULI. Festīnāte virī! Sōl mox surget; deinde nōs fugam capere poterimus.

N. XI. Sed quō modō effugiēmus, domine? Nōn intellegō.

N. XII. Cyclōps enim nōs, dum exīmus, capiet.

ULI. Singulī hominēs ā ternīs arietibus ferentur. Trēs enim arietēs colligābō, quōrum medius hominem

---

442. The English verb has only present and past participles. The Latin verb has also future participles. The future active participle of **laudō** is **laudātūrus (-a, -um)**, translated *going to praise* or *about to praise*.

The future active participle may usually be found by changing the ending **-us** of the past passive participle to **-ūrus**. It is declined like the adjective **bonus**, and must agree in gender, number, and case with a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood.

	Past passive participle	*Future active participle*
(laudō)	laudātus	laudātūrus
(moneō)	monitus	monitūrus
(dūcō)	ductus	ductūrus
(capiō)	captus	captūrus
(audiō)	audītus	audītūrus

a. The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus**.

ūnum portābit. Sīc omnēs ad lītus incolumēs perveniēmus. Agite arietēs ad mē.

N. VII. Ēn callidum cōnsilium!

[*Ulīxēs arietēs ternōs colligat; singulī hominēs sub ternīs arietibus ligantur.*]

N. VIII. Quō modō tē ipsum servātūrus es?

ULI. Vidēsne hunc ducem gregis? Multō grandior et rōbustior est quam cēterī. Ejus sub ventre vellus tenēbō, et ipse postrēmus exībō.

N. IX. Ecce, sōl surgit! et ovēs exīre incipiunt.

OMNES. Brevī tempore ad lītus perveniēmus. [*vōce parvā.*] Valē Polyphēme!

[*Omnēs ē cavernā efferuntur. Ulīxēs postrēmus sequitur. Polyphēmus arietem dētinet.*]

POL. Quid, Crasse? Tū postrēmus hodiē exīs? Id mīror; nam antehāc prīmus māne exīre, prīmus merīdiē ad rīvōs dēscendere, prīmus vesperī domum redīre solēbās. Bonus amīcus dominī miserī tuī semper fuistī, cujus oculum Nēmō extīnxit? Ēn hominem improbum! Sed haud impūne fīlium Neptūnī caecum effēcit!

[*Ariēs tandem aliōs sequitur. Polyphēmus nautās et Ulīxem in cavernā frūstrā quaerit.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

---

443. Frequently the future active participle is used with forms of **sum**. Thus, **laudātūrus sum,** *I am going to praise,* **monitūrus est,** *he is going to warn.*

444. Latin verbs have a future active infinitive formed by using the future active participle with **esse**. Thus, **laudātūrus esse, captūrus esse, futūrus esse.**

When a subject in the accusative is used with a future infinitive (*Section* **409**), the participle of the infinitive must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case.

REDITUS ULĪXIS

PERSŌNAE.

Ulīxēs, *quī Trōjā captā domum redit.*
Tēlemachus: *fīlius Ulīxis.*
Eumaeus: *pāstor.*
Minerva: *dea.*

Scaena I.

Argus: *canis Ulīxis.*

Scaena II.

Pēnelopē: *uxor Ulīxis.*
Antinous: *procus.*
Amphinomus: *procus.*
Aliī procī.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN LĪTORE ITHACAE.

Ā sinistrā stat casa Eumaeī; prope casam jacet Argus, macer, īnfirmus. Ā dextrā Ulīxēs humī dormit.

ULI. [*sē ex somnō excitat.*] Eheu! Miserrimus hominum sum. Tot perīcula enim passus et tot per terrās et maria vagātus, ignōtam tandem in terram ā Phaeācibus allātus sum et hīc relictus. [*Intrat Minerva speciem vestēsque juvenis gerēns.*] Ecce autem! Juvenis adest; ille fortasse mē adjuvābit. Salvē, Ō amīce! Quae terra est haec, quō advēnī? Aliēnus enim sum, neque lītus cognōscō.

MIN. Amoena est terra omnibusque arboribus et frūctibus praedita; Ithaca est.

ULI. Quid audiō? Ithaca enim omnium terrārum mihi est cārissima. Cujus etiam est ista casa? Nōnne Eumaeī? Quam fēlīx sum! Quam benignī mihi dī immortālēs sunt! Vīvitne Eumaeus? Et Lāertēs pater meus? Nārrā mihi dē uxōre. Resistitne adhūc Pēnelopē procīs meumque reditum expectat?

[*Minerva suam formam sūmit propriam.*]

MIN. Ecce, Ō patiēns Ulīxēs! Dea sum, et tē adjuvābō. Senem squālidum pannōsumque tē faciam. [*In*

senem squālidum pannōsumque Ulīxem mūtat.] Haec est casa Eumaeī, quī semper fidēlis tē et Pēnelopam et Tēlemachum amat. Ille tē cūrābit, dum ego Spartam abeō, unde Tēlemachum redūcam. Ille enim tē petendī causā ante duōs annōs ab Ithacā discessit. Cum redierit, tū tē revēlābis; deinde, illō adjuvante, procōs interficiēs. Valē.

ULI. Ō benigna Minerva! nam tē agnōscō, tibi grātiās agō. [*Exit Minerva. Eumaeus ex casā ēgreditur.*] Salvē, Ō pāstor! Auxilium tuum precor; longum enim iter perfēcī, et multa et dūra passus valdē ēsuriō.

THE GERUND

445. The Latin gerund is a neuter noun of the second declension. It has no nominative and is used only in the singular. The gerunds of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
GEN.	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
DAT.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
ACC.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
ABL.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

a. The genitive is translated *of carrying*, *of warning*, etc. The ablative without a preposition is translated *by carrying* or *with carrying*, etc. The ablative is also used with prepositions. The accusative is used only with prepositions. The dative is not often used.

b. It must be remembered that the form in *-ing* used to translate the Latin gerund is not a present participle but an English gerund, or, as it is sometimes called, a verbal noun. In the sentence *I am fond of walking* the word *walking* is not a participle but a gerund (or verbal noun).

EUM. Ego etiam senex et miser sum, sed tē adjuvābō; parum tamen cibī habeō, parum opum ex eō diē quō Ulīxēs Trōjam discessit; sed id quod habeō tibi dabō. Venī mēcum in casam.

ULI. Dī tē servābunt; miser enim ipse miserōs adjuvās. [*Ad casam appropinquant; Ulīxēs canem cōnspicit.*] Cujus est hic canis?

EUM. Argus vocātur, fidēlis Ulīxis canis; prīdem sagācissimus in nostrā īnsulā erat et omnium canum validissimus quī ferās sequuntur. At absentem dominum dēsīderat, neque longum vītae spatium, ut crēdō, eī manet.

[*Eumaeus casam intrat.*]

ULI. Arge, Arge, nōnne tuum dominum agnōscis?

[*Canis caput ērigit et dominum agnōscit.*]

ARG. Ō cāre domine, quot post annōs rediistī! Eheu! Sērō venīs. Semper tē amāvī, semper expectāvī. Nunc tandem tē redeunte gaudeō fēlīxque jam ē vītā excēdō. Valē!

ULI. Valē, fidēlis canis, valē!

[*Argus moritur. Eumaeus ex casā prōdit.*]

EUM. Cūr morāris?

ULI. Canis mortuus est.

EUM. Nōn rūrsus ergō dominum suum vidēbit.

ULI. Nōnne tū servus Ulīxis erās?

EUM. Ita eram, sed numquam iterum eum hīs oculīs vidēbō. Lāertēs, pater ejus, aetāte gravis mox dē vītā discēdet. Tēlemachus procul abest, neque umquam fortasse domum redībit. Pēnelopē in diēs[1] miserior lacrimās semper fundit; nōn tamen virum dēspērat. Procī autem improbī illam precantur: "Memoriam Ulīxis dēpōne et alterum virum ē nōbīs ēlige." Illa tamen recūsat neque

[1] Day by day.

cuiquam ex eīs nūbere vult, quī opēs dominī nostrī edendō bibendōque vāstant, et quī dīcere audent—Ō audāciam impudentem—"Sī Tēlemachus redībit, eum occīdēmus."

ULI. Et māter Ulīxis vīvitne adhūc?

EUM. Eheu! Nōlī dē eā loquī: mortua enim est.

ULI. [*lacrimās dissimulat.*] At quid tū putās? Redībitne Ulīxēs annon?

EUM. Numquam: certē mortuus est.

ULI. Nōn vēra dīcis; ipse enim eum vīdī, dum in īnsulā Crētā errō. Vīvus mox domum redībit. Quid audiō? Aliquis appropinquat—amīcus, ut vidētur, nōn enim ululant canēs.

[*Intrat Tēlemachus.*]

EUM. Salvē, Ō Tēlemache! quam fēlīx sum! Saepe enim mēcum dīxī: "Tēlemachum reductum numquam vidēbō."

TEL. Et tū, salvē, Ō fidēlis Eumaee! Quid novī dē Ulīxe mihi dīcēs? Equidem enim nihil dē eō audīvī.

EUM. Heu! Heu! Neque ego. Hic senex tamen, ut dīcit, eum in īnsulā Crētā vīdit; nōlī autem eī crēdere; nōn enim crēdibilem fābulam nārrat. Ego autem māgnō cum gaudiō ad ātrium curram tuum reditum nūntiandī causā. Tū hīc manē et cum sene cibō vīnōque vīrēs renovā!

DECLENSION OF *QUISQUAM*

446. quisquam, anyone

	Masculine and Feminine	*Neuter*
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
GEN.	cujusquam	cujusquam
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam

(*Plural lacking*)

[*Eumaeus exit. Appāret Minerva, quam sōlus Ulīxēs videt et audit.*]

TEL. [*mortuum Argum cōnspicit.*] Mortuus jacet Argus, quī dominum suum iterum videndī causā tot annōs vīxit. Frustrā ad summam senectūtem dūrāvistī.

MIN. Nunc, Ō Ulīxēs, tempus est! Tē fīliō revēlā. Cōnsiliō captō, omnēs procōs interficiēs. Tē igitur ex sene rūrsus in juvenem mūtābō. Fortis es! Valē!

[*Minerva Ulīxem in juvenem mūtat et exit.*]

TEL. [*sē vertit.*] Eia tū, quis es, quī modo senex, modo juvenis fīs? Certē Prōteus vel alius deōrum immortālium.

ULI. Nōn deus sum, mī fīlī! Nōnne patrem agnōvistī?

TEL. Nōn crēdō; mortuus enim est pater meus neque iterum eum vidēbō.

ULI. Nēquāquam mortuus, sed vīvus domum rediī. Minerva ipsa mē mūtāvit.

TEL. Ō pater cārissime! [*sē amplectuntur.*] Quam grātus mihi redīs, quam procīs odiōsus! At unde venīs? quō modō hūc vēnistī? Cūr ita morātus es? Nārrā mihi, tē precor.

ORDINAL NUMERALS

447. Ordinal numerals are used to number objects in order, as in a row or series, as *first*, *second*, *third*, etc. The first twenty Latin ordinals are as follows:

prīmus
secundus
tertius
quārtus

quīntus
sextus
septimus
octāvus

ULI. Mox tibi et omnibus perīcula mea nārrābō. Nunc autem tempus est dēlīberāre; ego et tū sōlī procōs interficiēmus.

TEL. At enim multī sunt; quid nōs tam paucī possumus?

ULI. Venī mēcum ad ātrium. Crēde dīs; Minerva et Juppiter nōbīs auxilium dabunt.

[Ulīxēs iterum in senem mendīcum mūtātur et cum Tēlemachō exit.]

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN ĀTRIŌ ULĪXIS

Ā tergō sedet Pēnelopē, quae tēlam lentē texit. Ab utrāque manū accumbunt procī; aliī edunt, aliī bibunt. Prope Pēnelopam in mūrō pendet arcus Ulīxis. Intrat ā sinistrā Eumaeus.

EUM. Audīte, Ō rēgīna et prīncipēs, Tēlemachus enim ad Ithacam rediit, et mox ad ātrium adveniet.

PEN. Quid novī dē Ulīxe refert?

EUM. Ēheu! Nōn illum vīdit; nihil dē illō audīvit. Sed nōlī tamen lacrimāre, cāra domina; gaudēre enim nunc melius erit, quod fīlius tuus salvus rediit.

PEN. Haud tamen lacrimās retinēre possum, quia nunc post reditum Tēlemachī necesse est mihi virum ex procīs ēligere.

---

nōnus	quīntus decimus
decimus	sextus decimus
ūndecimus	septimus decimus
duodecimus	duodēvīcēsimus
tertius decimus	ūndēvīcēsimus
quārtus decimus	vīcēsimus

a. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Thus, **prīmus, prīma, prīmum,** etc. Compound ordinals, such as **tertius decimus,** have both parts declined.

EUM. Crēde autem dīs, Ō rēgīna! Etiam nunc fortasse Ulīxēs redībit. [*Exit Eumaeus ā sinistrā.*]

ANT. Quam molestus nōbīs est Tēlemachus!

PRO. Sine dubiō ex ātriō nōs fugābit.

ANT. Quid cēnsētis, amīcī meī? Nōnne eum occīdere dēbēmus?

PRO. Vērum dīcis, Ō Antinoe; eum occīdēmus.

AMPH. Nōlīte, Ō amīcī, sanguinem effundere. Hoc enim facere semper nefās est, et nōs poenās dabimus.

PEN. Quam generōsus es, Ō Amphinome! Tū enim sōlus me adjuvās.

PRO. Cōnsilium capiēmus; interficiētur Tēlemachus.

PEN. Ō crūdēlēs, Ō ingrātī vōs quibus Ulīxēs bene faciēbat! Nōnne estis memorēs? Tuum enim patrem, Ō Antinoe, ā populō ē rēgnō expulsum Ulīxēs nōn sōlum prōtēxit sed etiam restituit. Nunc autem nōn satis est tibi illīus ātrium spoliāre et uxōrem contumēliā afficere, sed cupis etiam fīlium ipsum occīdere.

[*Intrat ā sinistrā Tēlemachus.*]

TEL. Salvē, Ō māter mea!

PEN. Salvē, Ō cāre fīlī! [*sē amplectuntur.*] Nārrā mihi dē errōribus tuīs. Quid novī audīvistī?

TEL. Ēheu! Quamquam multōs hominēs dē patre rogāvī, nēmō tamen eum aut vīvum aut mortuum vīderat. Menelāus autem semper iterābat: "Nōlī metuere; Ulīxēs enim redībit et procōs occīdet."

PEN. Quam fēlīx erō, sī hoc fīet. Nunc enim, ut prōmīsī, necesse est mihi odiōsō cuidam nūbere.

[*Intrat Ulīxēs speciem senis mendīcī gerēns, cum Eumaeō.*]

TEL. Venī, Ō senex, accipe pānem!

ULI. Māximās tibi grātiās agō, Ō benigne juvenis.

AMPH. Quis est ille? Semper mendīcīs bene facere fās est. Venī, Ō mendīce, pānem accipe!

ULI. Dī tē servābunt, Ō prīnceps, quisquis es.

ANT. [*Eumaeō.*] Expelle hunc impudentem! [*Ulīxī.*] Heus tū, quārē aliēnum ātrium invocātus intrās? nisi exībis tē feriam.

ULI. Ō optime, misericordiam precor. Ipse enim ōlim tam dīves eram quam tū, et miserīs hominibus semper benignus.

ANT. Vāpulābis, impudentissime! Apage!

ULI. Superbus es. Cavē autem; mors enim numquam procul abest.

ANT. Accipe plāgās. [*Ulīxem ferit.*]

AMPH. Nōlī ferīre senem, Ō Antinoe; fortasse enim deus est dissimulātus et nōs pūniet.

PEN. Ō crūdēlem hominem! Quandō Ulīxēs redībit!

TEL. Cavē, Antinoe; tū mox mortuus humī jacēbis.

ANT. Nunc tempus est edere et bibere; hāc nocte enim, quia Tēlemachus jam rediit, Pēnelopē virum ē nōbīs ēliget. Quis nostrum, Ō cāra rēgīna, grātissimus tibi esse vidētur?

PEN. Amātōrēs dōna offerre dēbent, nōn spoliāre.

PRO. Ecce! Dōna tibi offerimus. Quis optimum dat?

[*Quisque dōna ante Pēnelopam offert.*]

PEN. Omnia pariter splendida sunt; sed superest vōbīs

DECLENSION OF *QUISQUE*

448. quisque, each

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
NOM.	quisque	quaeque	quidque
GEN.	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
DAT.	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemque	quamque	quidque
ABL.	quōque	quāque	quōque

(*Plural rare*)

nunc novissimum certāmen. In ātriō pendet arcus Ulīxis. Quis vestrum eum flectere, nervum aptāre, sagittam per circulōs duodecim mittere potest? Omnibus quidem temptāre licet, neque recūsābitis. Deinde eī tandem nūbam quī id facere poterit quod vir meus haud difficulter faciēbat. Incipite! Eumaee, dēme arcum, nervum, sagittam! [*Exit Pēnelopē ā tergō.*]

PRO. Heu! Heu! Haud facile erit nōbīs hoc facere, quī edendō, bibendō, dormiendō, tam dēbilēs factī sumus.

ANT. Fortēs este! Necesse est temptāre; nisi temptābimus, Achaeī ita dīcent: "Ubi est virtūs eōrum quī Pēnelopam in mātrimōnium dūcere volunt?" Nec frūstrā equidem, ut putō, temptābō. Heus, Eumaee, dā mihi arcum.

[*Antinous cōnātur nervum arcuī aptāre; nē flectere quidem arcum potest.*
Dum cēterī procī temptant, Ulīxēs Eumaeum retrahit.]

ULI. Nōlī exclāmāre; sed audī quod dīcam. Ulīxēs in hōc ātriō adest; ego enim sum Ulīxēs. Nōnne crēdis? Spectā igitur signum quod in crūre semper habeō.

EUM. Ō cāre domine! signum enim haud dubium agnōscō. Fugam pete, precor; nisi fugiēs, procī mox tē occīdent.

ULI. Nōlī timēre, sed auxilium mihi dā. Refer mihi arcum meum; ego enim sōlus eum flectere possum et sagittās per circulōs mittere. Sī modo arcum manibus meīs tenēbō, lētō meritō procōs mox pūniam.

EUM. [*procō quī arcum jam tenet.*] Redde mihi arcum; mendīcus enim temptāre vult.

PRO. Quam rīdiculus est ille mendīcus! Nūgās aufer!

ANT. Sī mendīcus poterit, Achaeī ita dīcent: "Senex validior est quam Pēnelopae amātōrēs."

TEL. Meus est arcus; redde mihi; etiam mendīcō licet vīrēs ostendere.

[*Ulīxēs arcum accipit et flectere incipit.*]

PRO. Quam aptē arcum tractat! Quam validōs mōnstrat lacertōs! Sōlus arcum flectere potest. Ecce! nunc nervō sagittam aptat. Quam perītē arcum intendit! Nunc mittitur sagitta. Edepol, omnēs per circulōs volāvit.

ULI. Jam aliō cursū sagittās mittam. Ego sum Ulīxēs. Mors tibi adest, Antinoe odiōse! [*Antinoum sagittā trānsfīgit.*] Sīc moriēminī omnēs procī, quī tam diū meum ātrium foedāvistis.

PRO. Ēheu! Mortuus est Antinous. Quō modō effugere poterimus? [*Procī fugere cōnantur.*]

ULI. Eumaee, claude jānuam! [*Eumaeus jānuam claudit.*]

AMPH. [*ante pedēs Ulīxis sē jacit.*] Mihi quidem ignōsce, Ō Ulīxēs! ego enim semper tē amō et ōdī procōs.

ULI. Cūr meō in ātriō mānsistī? Moriēris, stulte! [*Amphinomum trānsfīgit.*] Tēlemache, mī fīlī, et Eumaee, stāte prope mē et auxilium date! Nōs trēs illōs scelerātōs interficiēmus. [*Tēlemachus Eumaeusque arma rapiunt et sē Ulīxī sociōs jungunt.*] Ō dī benignī, renovāte mihi vīrēs, membra mea rōbusta reddite!

[*Intrat Minerva mīlitī similis, arma et tēla gerēns. Prope Ulīxem adstat.*]

MIN. Fortis es, Ō Ulīxēs! Fortūna fortibus favet. Ego prō tē pugnābō.

[*Procōs singulōs occīdunt; omnēs mortuī humī jacent; intrat Pēnelopē et Ulīxem agnōscit.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

PAGES 163-164

1. The sentinels stand in front of the tents of the Etruscans. 2. Romans, fight for your country and for your friends. 3. Senator, remain in the city and warn the citizens. 4. Soldiers, obey, and resist the Etruscans. 5. Attack the enemy suddenly from the rear. 6. Fifty men escaped, and the others were killed.

PAGES 165-166

1. All our weapons are now prepared. 2. We love brave friends, and we fear brave enemies. 3. The sentinels roused all the Etruscans. 4. The king himself speaks; hear and obey. 5. The city is no longer in sight, but we can see the bridge. 6. On the right stands an Etruscan, on the left a Roman.

PAGES 167-168]

1. At daybreak we shall approach in silence. 2. We wish to break down the bridge, but time is not given. 3. Three brave Romans appear on the bridge. 4. The city will be defended by Horatius and his brave companions. 5. The citizens will take axes and break down the bridge. 6. A soldier gives an ax to the consul, Valerius.

PAGES 169-170

1. The enemy are led by Sextus, the son of the king. 2. The voice of Sextus is heard, and the Etruscans appear on the bank of the river. 3. We ourselves shall attack the faithless Sextus. 4. The archers will kill many Etruscans. 5. Horatius has a good plan, and the enemy will not kill him. 6. Throw your shields to the citizens. 7. I shall jump into the river and swim to the gate of the city.

PAGES 187-188

1. The gods, by whom our leader is not loved, have brought us into these dangers. 2. The sailors who stand about Eurylochus murmur. 3. The leader will give food to the sailors, who are hungry. 4. I shall kill animals with the bow which I carry. 5. Your leader, who is faithful, will not desert you. 6. The men whom you see are sailors. 7. The deer was killed by an arrow of Ulysses.

PAGES 189-191

1. Lay down these branches on the ground. 2. Ulysses, who was wandering through the forest, saw a deer. 3. The forehead of the deer was pierced by an arrow. 4. The deer had large and beautiful horns. 5. The woman whom you see is Circe. 6. The sailors are seen through the door which is at the left. 7. Perhaps our companions will be found in the halls.

PAGES 192-193

1. The voices of women are heard through the door. 2. The woman who was singing was an enchantress. 3. The flower which was given by Mercury will defend me. 4. Open the door which is at the left. 5. Men, do not drink the wine which Circe has given you. 6. The jar which the servant brings (**ferre**) is full. 7. The golden cups were received by the companions of Ulysses.

PAGES 194-197

1. Rhodius, who had concealed himself behind a column, drank the wine. 2. All the maids were watching Ulysses and his friends. 3. The wine is delicious (sweet), and it will please you. 4. You see no guests here, but you see beasts. 5. We did not throw away the cups which you gave us. 6. We do not see Rhodius, who drank the wine. 7. You have changed Rhodius into the form of a beast—I am certain of this.

PAGES 198-199

1. The sailors see a large cavern, which is the home of Polyphemus. 2. The sheep and goats sleep in the cave at night. 3. Without doubt Ulysses is smaller than this monster. 4. It is best to return to the sea at once. 5. The sailors, who were preparing dinner, saw the monster. 6. These Greeks flee because I am approaching. 7. I shall drive the sheep into the cave, but I shall leave the lambs outside the door.

PAGES 200-201

1. The Cyclops, who is a cruel monster, will eat us all. 2. Ulysses was sitting in the middle of the cave and talking with the sailors. 3. The plan which I have formed is a good one (is good). 4. In the morning the Cyclops will go out from the cave with his flock. 5. My plan does not please the sailors, because they fear Polyphemus. 6. Four sailors have perished, and their friends wish to flee. 7. The wine which I have brought is very good.

PAGES 202-204

1. Polyphemus's eye will be put out by the Greeks with a sharp staff. 2. I cannot twist this staff without help. 3. The gods themselves have chosen the best men. 4. I have asked your name; do not conceal it. 5. The Cyclops will eat nobody tomorrow. 6. Friends, why do you stand outside the door of the cavern? 7. Neptune, who is my father, does not help me.

PAGE 205

1. At daybreak we shall all take flight. 2. We shall drive the sheep to our leader, who will tie them together. 3. This ram, which has a large fleece, will carry our leader. 4. Farewell, friends, whom we shall not see again. 5. You seek us in vain, because you are blind.

PAGES 206-207

1. Troy has been captured, and we are returning home. 2. Eumaeus, who was in the cottage, did not see Minerva. 3. We are the most unfortunate of all the Greeks. 4. The suitors are now happy, and they do not expect your return. 5. The immortal gods will help you, because you have been faithful. 6. Minerva will go away to Sparta, where Menelaus lives.

PAGES 208-210

1. Eumaeus was an old man who had always been faithful to his master. 2. Ulysses had loved this dog, and he recognized him at once. 3. My husband is far away, but I do not despair of him. 4. The servant eats and drinks in the cottage with his sons. 5. My friends will soon return home alive. 6. I have seen an old man who was in this island. 7. The story which you tell is not credible.

PAGES 211-212

1. I have been changed from a young man into an old man by Minerva. 2. Where is my father, and why has he delayed thus? 3. The suitors saw a beggar, who entered with Telemachus. 4. Hear, O queen, I have seen your son, Telemachus. 5. The people drove your father from his kingdom, but I restored him. 6. What news has Telemachus heard about his father? 7. Your son will not be killed by the cruel suitors. 8. My father is alive, but he has not been seen by Menelaus.

PAGES 213-215

1. I have received bread from you, and I will help you. 2. We will drive this impudent man out of (from) the hall. 3. The gods will punish you (*singular*) because you have been cruel. 4. I offer you a splendid gift, which you do not accept. 5. Dear friend, you see your master here in the hall. 6. The suitor who was holding the bow was not able to bend it. 7. The old man to whom I have given the bow will now show his strength.

PAGE 215

1. The door had been closed, and the suitors could not flee. 2. Ulysses will pierce Amphinomus also with an arrow. 3. Telemachus stood near his father and helped him. 4. The gods are kind; for they have restored my strength. 5. The suitors are being killed one by one, and soon they will all lie dead on the ground.

MEDICUS

PERSŌNAE.

Titus: *puer Rōmānus, duodecim annōs nātus.*
Octāvia: *Titī māter.*

Lūcius, Pūblius: *Titī frātrēs, geminī, septem annōs nātī.*
Medicus.

SCAENA. IN CUBICULŌ PUERŌRUM.

Ā sinistrā stat lātus lēctulus; ibi dormiunt trēs puerī, Titus et Lūcius et Pūblius. Ā dextrā est fenestra, ā tergō jānua. Gallus extrā cantat et puerōs ē somnō excitat.

TIT. Quota hōra est?

LUC. [*ad fenestram currit.*] Prīma ferē hōra est. Sōl mox surget.

TIT. Ō mē miserum! Pēnsum meum nōn fēcī. Quid Orbilius dīcet?

PUB. Immō vērō, quid faciet Orbilius?

TIT. Jam fèrulam sentiō. Ad lūdum īre nōn audeō.

LUC. Gaudeō quia nōndum ad lūdum īmus, ego et Pūblius.

TIT. Quālēs frātrēs estis! Quia vāpulābō, gaudētis.

LUC. ET PUB. [*saltant et cantant.*] Titus vāpulābit; Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. [*īrātus.*] Vōs etiam vāpulābitis.

[*Frātrēs loculīs ferit.*]

LUC. ET PUB. [*lacrimant.*] Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit. Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. Quia vōs vāpulāvistis, lacrimātis. Iterum autem lacrimābitis, nisi bonum cōnsilium mihi inveniētis; nam ego vāpulāre hodiē nōlō.

PUB. Cōnsilium habeō.



A STREET SCENE IN ROME

Tit. et Luc. Dīc nōbīs.

Pub. Manēte; cōgitō.

Tit. Festīnā, Pūblī; Ō mē miserum, vāpulābō.

Luc. Fortasse malum Pūblius habet cōnsilium; tum vāpulābis, Tite.

Tit. Nisi statim cōnsilium nārrābis, iterum idem accipiēs. [*Loculōs sūmit.*]

Pub. Cōgitāvī. Audīte cōnsilium. Vesperī apud Quīntum cēnābās.

Tit. Illud jam scīmus.

Pub. Bene, ibi nimis ēdistī.

Tit. Quid dīcere vīs? Semper nimis edō; tū quoque et Lūcius.

Pub. Sānē, at tū hodiē aegrōtās, quia nimis vesperī ēdistī.

Tit. At nōn aegrōtō, mī frāter!

Luc. Ō stulte, nōnne intellegis? Hodiē aegrum simulābis.

Tit. Intellegō. Euge, Pūblī! bonum cōnsilium invēnistī! Tū, Lūcī, ī ad mātrem; illī dē morbō meō aliquid nārrā! [*Exit Lūcius.*] Pūblī, in aquam hunc pannum merge! Festīnā! nam mātrem audiō; pannō meōs oculōs preme! Heu! heu! quantum doleō!

[*Octāvia intrat cum Lūciō.*]

Oct. Hercle! Quam aeger es! Quid habēs, mī fīlī?

Tit. Multum doleō. Nunc calidus sum, nunc frīgidus.

Oct. Ō cāre fīlī, medicum arcessam. Quis medicum venīre jubēbit?

Luc. Ego medicum arcessam, mea māter.

Pub. Et ego cum Lūciō ībō.

Oct. Īte, parvulī, et medicāmentum ferre medicum jubēte.

Luc. Acerbum medicāmentum sēcum feret medicus.

Pub. Acerbum medicāmentum. [*Exeunt geminī.*]

Tit. Ut sitiō, māter cārissima!

Oct. Miselle puer! Aquam frīgidam tibi dabō. Bibe! [*Titus bibit.*]

Tit. Māter, nunc frīgidus sum. Ecce! membra mea tremunt.
Oct. Ēn, vestīmentīs tē tegam.
Tit. Māter, nimis calidus sum.
Oct. Eheu! Quī morbus tē tenet? Quandō medicus veniet?
Tit. Aliquis jānuam pulsat.

[*Medicus cum puerīs intrat.*]

Med. Salvē, domina! Quis aeger est?
Oct. Salvē, medice! Fīlius meus aegrōtat.
Med. Salvē, puer! Aegerne es? [*Titus annuit.*]
Luc. et Pub. Ita, medice, valdē aeger est.
Med. Num edere potes? [*Titus annuit.*]
Luc. et Pub. Minimē; nihil edere potest.
Med. Ostende mihi linguam tuam. Hem! Quid herī ēdistī?
Tit. Nesciō, medice.
Luc. Sciō equidem.
Pub. Et ego.
Luc. Apud Quīntum vesperī cēnābat.
Pub. Nimis ēdit—porcum.
Luc. Et pōma.
Pub. Et lība.
Luc. Et alia multa.
Oct. Minimē mīrum, sī hodiē aegrōtās.
Med. Minimē mīrum est. Medicāmentum tibi parābō. [*Medicus medicāmentum parat.*]

Luc. Quāle medicāmentum parās?
Pub. Acerbumne est annōn?
Med. Acerbum est.
Luc. et Pub. Acerbum est medicāmentum. Acerbum est medicāmentum.

MED. Dā mihi pōculum, domina! [*Fundit.*] Nunc bibe, puer! [*Titus medicāmentum gustat.*]

TIT. Nōlō bibere. Tāle pōculum numquam bibam.

OCT. Ohē, puer improbe! Quō modō aegrōtāre dēsinēs, nisi medicāmentum bibēs?

LIC. ET PUB. Titus bibere nōn vult. Titus bibere nōn vult.

MED. Necesse est bibere.

LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est. Gaudēmus, quia acerbum est medicāmentum.

TIT. Aliquis mox vāpulābit. [*Geminī audiunt et silent.*]

OCT. Statim bibe; sīn minus, patrem vocābō.

TIT. Nōlō. [*Exit Octāvia.*]

PATRIS VOX. Tite, audīsne mē?

TIT. Ita, mī pater.

PATRIS VOX. Nōnne medicāmentum bibere vīs?

TIT. Sānē, mī pater, bibere volō. [*Dum bibit, Octāvia intrat.*]

OCT. Medicāmentum bibit Titus.

MED. Bene; deinde tranquillē dormiēs. Mox validus iterum eris et rōbustus. Valē, domina; valēte, puerī.

OMNES. Valē, medice. [*Exit Medicus.*]

TIT. Jam validior sum. Licetne mihi surgere, māter?

OCT. Nōn licet, Ō stulte. Tōtum diem in lectulō jacēbis. Et ego prope tē manēbō.

TIT. Nōn necesse est tibi, cārissima māter, prope mē manēre.

OCT. Meus es fīlius. Prope tē manēbo, dum aegrōtās.

LUC. ET PUB. Licetne nōbīs in hortō lūdere?
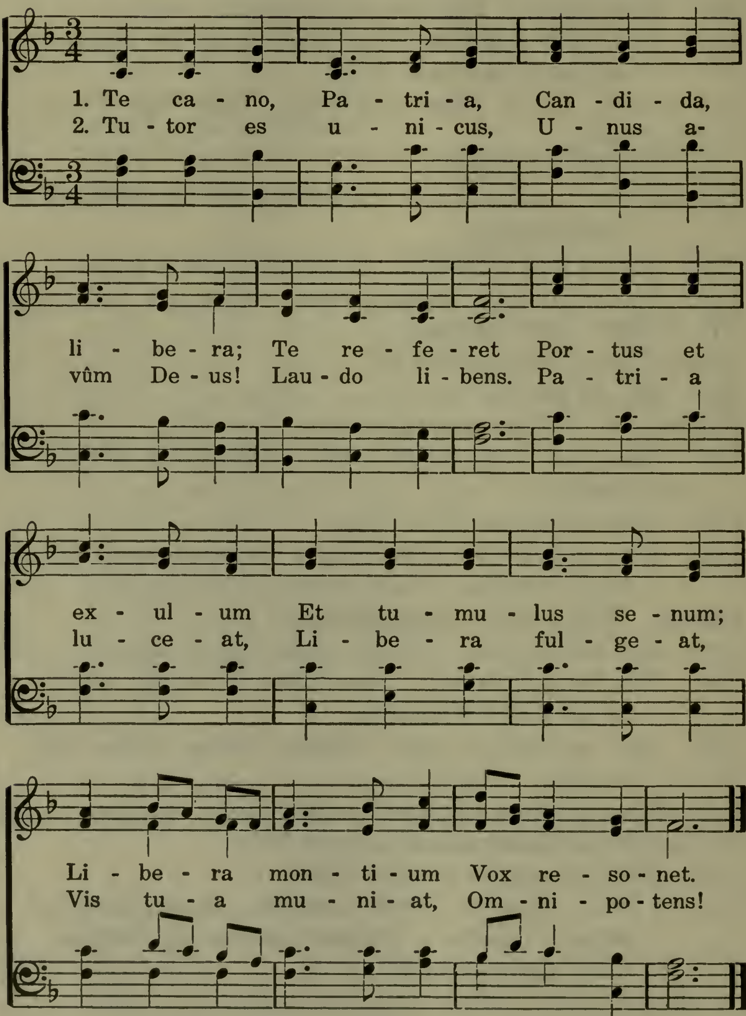
OCT. Abīte, geminī, et in hortō lūdite.

LUC. ET PUB. Titus in lectulō manēbit, tōtum diem in lēctulō manēbit. [*Exeunt Lūcius et Pūblius. Titus pugnum agitat.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

America

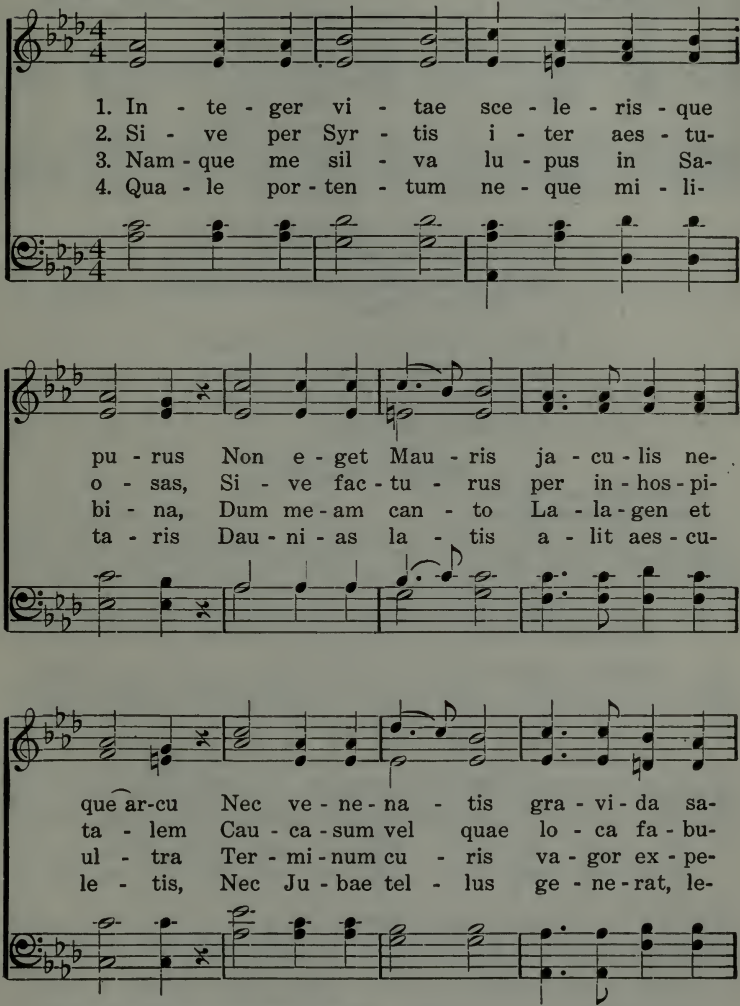
Samuel F. Smith — Henry Carey



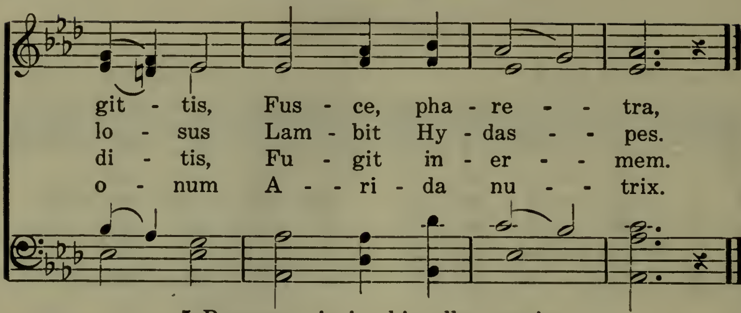
The Latin version is by Professor George D. Kellogg, and is printed by permission.

Integer Vitae[1]

HORATIUS, B.C. 65–8 FR. F. FLEMMING, c. 1811



(1) For English translation see page 229.



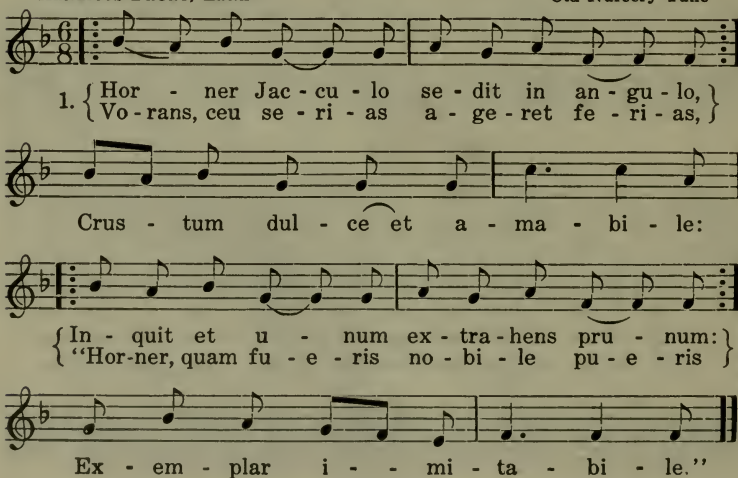
5 Pone me pigris ubi nulla campis
Arbor aestiva recreatur aura,
Quod latus mundi nebulae malusque
Juppiter urget;

6 Pone sub curru nimium propinqui
Solis, in terra domibus negata;
Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo,
Dulce loquentem.

Horner Jacculo[1]

Gammer Gurton, English
Henricus Drury, Latin

Old Nursery Tune



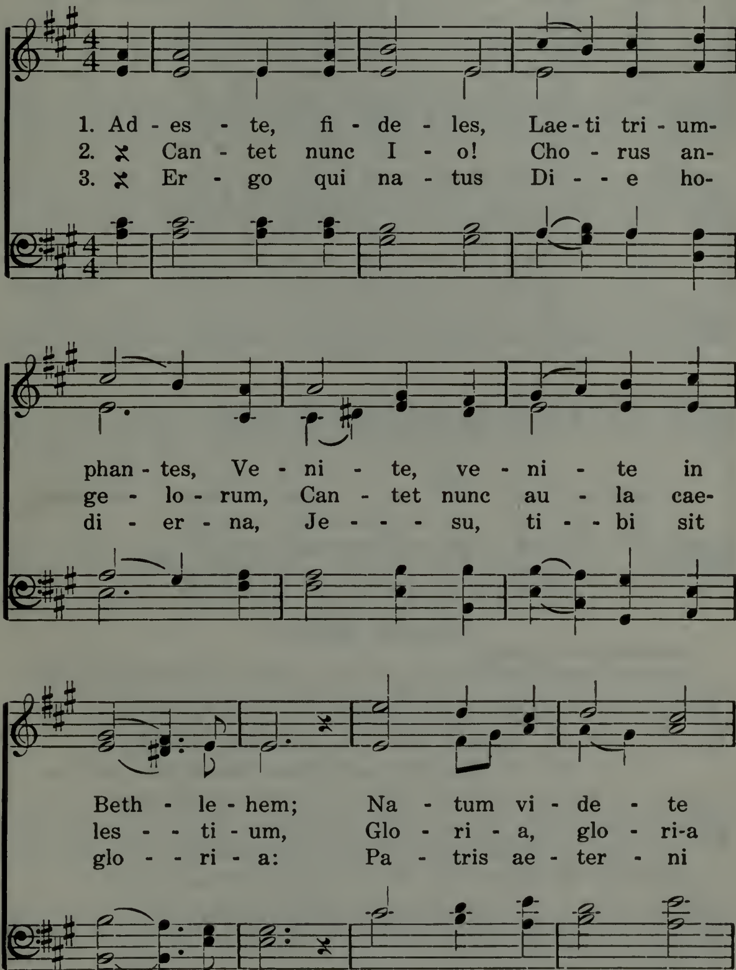
(1) For English words see page 229.

Adeste Fideles[1]
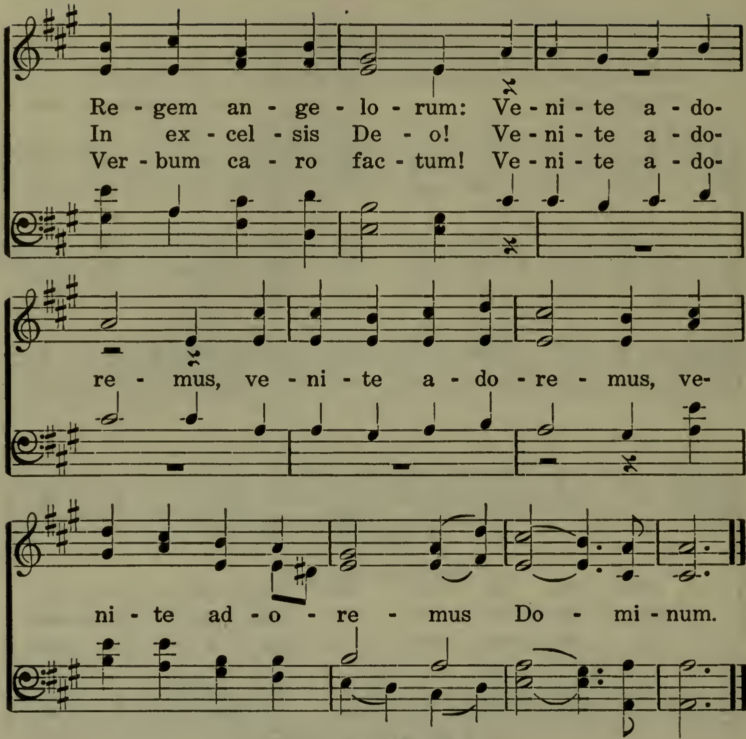
Author unknown
17th or 18th cent.

(PORTUGUESE HYMN)

JOHN READING, d. 1692



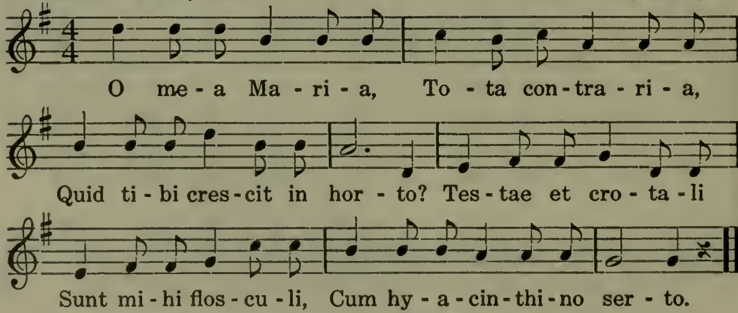
(1) For English words see page 229.



Domina Maria[1]

Gammer Gurton, English
Henricus Drury, Latin

Old Nursery Melody



(1) For English words see page 230.

ENGLISH WORDS OF THE LATIN SONGS

INTEGER VITAE

The man upright in life and free from guilt, needs not, O Fuscus, Moorish darts nor bow nor quiver loaded with envenomed arrows, whether his journey is to be over the boiling Syrtis or through the inhospitable Caucasus or in the places washed by the Hydaspes, famed in story. For while in the Sabine woods I was singing of my Lalage, and carefree was wandering beyond bounds, a wolf fled from me though I was unarmed. No such monster does the warlike Daunia nourish in its oak forest, nor does the land of Juba, that desert nurse of lions, produce the like. Place me where on the lifeless plains no tree is warmed to new life by the summer breeze, a region over which hang clouds and a gloomy sky; place me beneath the course of the sun as it draws too near the earth, in a land devoid of human dwellings; still will I love Lalage with her sweet smile and her sweet words.

LITTLE JACK HORNER

Little Jack Horner
Sat in a corner,
Eating a Christmas pie.
He put in his thumb
And pulled out a plum,
And cried, "What a good boy am I!"

O COME, ALL YE FAITHFUL[1]

O come, all ye faithful, joyfully triumphant;
To Bethlehem hasten now with glad accord.
Lo! in a manger lies the King of angels,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

Raise, raise, choirs of angels, songs of loudest triumph;
Through heaven's high arches be your praises poured.
Now to our God be glory in the highest;
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

---

[1] The words of this hymn are based upon the Latin hymn *Adeste Fideles*, but they are not an exact translation.

Amen, Lord, we bless Thee, born for our salvation;
O Jesus, forever be Thy name adored;
Word of the Father, late in flesh appearing,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

MISTRESS MARY

Mistress Mary,
Quite contrary,
How does your garden grow?
With silver bells
And cockle-shells
And hyacinths all of a row.

APPENDIX

THE DERIVATION OF LATIN WORDS

1. Many Latin words are derived from other Latin words by the use of syllables or letters placed at the beginning or at the end of these words. A syllable placed at the beginning of a word is called a Prefix; a syllable placed at the end is called a Suffix. Words formed with a particular prefix or suffix regularly have special meanings given them by the prefix or suffix with which they are formed. But occasionally changes of meaning take place, so that it is not always easy to see the relation between the meaning of a word and that of the word from which it is derived.

The use of some of the most important prefixes and suffixes is as follows:

(1) Nouns ending in **-tor** (occasionally **-sor**) indicate the person who does the act expressed by the verb from which they are derived: **victor,** *a conqueror,* from **vincō.**

a. Such nouns may be formed from **moneō, capiō, dūcō, audiō,** and many other verbs.

b. These nouns in **-tor** and **-sor** are masculine. There is a corresponding feminine form, ending in **-trīx: victrīx, adiūtrīx, administrātrīx.**

(2) Names of qualities are formed from adjective stems, with the endings **-tās** and **-tūdō,** and from adjective or noun stems with the ending **-tūs.** These nouns are all feminine:

lībertās, *freedom,* from **līber.**
magnitūdō, *greatness,* from **magnus.**
virtūs, *manliness, courage,* from **vir.**

a. Nouns with the ending **-tās** may be formed from **gravis,** *heavy,* **levis,** *light,* **nōbilis,** *well-known, noble.* Some of these words came to be used as collective nouns, indicating a group of persons possessing the quality named: **nōbilitās,** originally *celebrity,* came to mean *the prominent persons* of a state.

b. Nouns with the ending **-tūdō** may be formed from **lātus,** *broad,* **altus,** *high,* **fortis,** *brave.*

c. Other nouns formed like **virtūs** are **servitūs,** *slavery,* from **servus; senectūs,** *old age,* from **senex** (*old*).

(3) Nouns formed with the ending **-lus (-ulus, -ellus, -illus)** are diminutives; that is, they indicate a small object. The ending is really an adjective ending, but most of the words thus derived have come to be used as nouns:

fīliolus, *a little son,* from **fīlius.**
rēgulus, *a petty king, chieftain* from **rēx** (stem **rēg-**).

a. Nouns ending in **-r** change the final **r** to **l** when **-lus** is added: **libellus,** *a little book,* from **liber; agellus,** *a little field,* from **ager.**

(4) Adjectives ending in **-ōsus** are formed from nouns, and mean *full of* or *abounding in* that which is named by the nouns from which they are derived:

perīculōsus, *full of danger, dangerous,* from **perīculum.**
annōsus, *full of years, aged,* from **annus.**

a. An adjective meaning *abounding in space* may be derived from **spatium.**

(5) Adjectives ending in **-īlis, -ālis, -ārius,** are formed from nouns and mean, originally, *belonging to, connected with,* etc., that which is denoted by the noun from which they are derived.

hostīlis, *hostile,* from **hostis.**
mortālis, *mortal,* from **mors.**
legiōnārius, *legionary,* from **legiō.**

(6) There are also certain syllables used as prefixes with special meanings.

a. The syllable **re-** or **red-** means *back* or *again:*

redīre, *to come back.* **rescrībere,** *to write in reply.*

b. Sometimes the prefix seems to have lost its force, leaving no appreciable difference between the simple verb and the derivative: **manēre, remanēre.**

(7) The syllable **in-** prefixed to adjectives means *not:*

injūstus, *not just.*
indignus, *not worthy.*

a. In English derivatives from these words the prefix usually becomes *un-: unjust, uncommon.* But sometimes it keeps its original form: *incapable, incorrect.*

b. The Latin preposition **in,** meaning *in, on,* or *against,* used to form compound verbs, is a different word.

(8) The syllable **per-** used with adjectives and adverbs means *very:*

perfacilis, *very easy.*
permultī, *very many.*

a. **per** when used with verbs means *through* or else serves to emphasize the meaning of the verb:

perrumpere, *to break through.*
perfruī, *to enjoy thoroughly.*

(9) The syllable **dis-** or **dī-** used with verbs means *apart:*

discēdere, *to go apart.*
dīmittere, *to send apart* or *away.*

(10) Most prepositions are used as prefixes to form compound verbs, usually with their original meaning. Sometimes, however, they serve merely to emphasize.

ēdūcere, *to lead out.*
trānseō, *to go across.*

THE FORMATION OF ENGLISH WORDS FROM LATIN

TERMINATIONS DERIVED FROM LATIN

2. As has already been stated (Lesson I), certain changes in spelling have occurred in many of the Latin words which have been taken into English. These changes in many instances have affected the endings and have given us English terminations which appear in a large number of words of different groups. These English terminations are not derived from the nominative ending of the Latin word, but for convenience the Latin nominative is given in the lists of words which follow, to indicate the general classes to which the nouns belong. Some of the most important of these terminations are as follows:

NOUN ENDINGS

(1) *-ty* from **-tās** (gen. **-tātis**)
liberty from **lībertās**; *dignity* from **dignitās**; *humanity* from **hūmānitās.**

(2) *-y*, *-ce*, *-cy* from **-ia** or **-tia.**
victory from **victōria**; *infamy* from **īnfāmia**; *temperance* from **temperantia**; *eloquence* from **ēloquentia**; *constancy* from **cōnstantia**; *frequency* from **frequentia.**

a. Some words ending in *-y* or *-e* are derived from words in **-ium**: *subsidy* from **subsidium**; *study* from **studium**; *vestige* from **vestigium**; *edifice* from **aedificium.**

(3) *-tude* from **-tūdō** (gen. **-tūdinis**).
multitude from **multitūdō**, *altitude* from **altitūdō.**

(4) *-tor* from **-tor** (gen. **-tōris**).

The words *orator*, *victor*, *dictator*, etc., have the same form in Latin as in English.

(5) *-ion* from **-iō** (gen. **-iōnis**).

nation from **nātiō**; *occasion* from **occāsiō**; *station* from **statiō.**

(6) *-ure* from **-ūra.**

nature from **nātūra**; *stature* from **statūra**; *culture* from **cultūra.**

(7) *-ment* from **-mentum.**

ornament from **ōrnāmentum**; *document* from **documentum**; *monument* from **monumentum.**

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

(8) *-il*, *-ile* from **-īlis.**

civil from **cīvīlis**; *hostile* from **hostīlis**; *servile* from **servīlis.**

(9) *-al* from **-ālis.**

immortal from **immortālis**; *mural* from **mūrālis**; *triumphal* from **triumphālis.**

(10) *-ar* from **-āris.**

consular from **cōnsulāris**; *familiar* from **familiāris**; *singular* from **singulāris.**

(11) *-ary* from **-ārius.**

legionary from **legiōnārius**; *mercenary* from **mercēnārius**; *necessary* from **necessārius.**

(12) *-ose*, *-ous* from **-ōsus.**

bellicose from **bellicōsus**; *copious* from **copiōsus**; *seditious* from **sēditiōsus.**

(13) *-an* (*-ane*) from **-ānus.**

Roman from **Rōmānus**; *veteran* from **veterānus**; *human* (also *humane*) from **hūmānus.**

(14) *-id* from **-idus.**

horrid from **horridus**; *frigid* from **frīgidus**; *pallid* from **pallidus.**

(15) *-ent* from **-ēns** (gen. **-entis**).

frequent from **frequēns**; *patient* from **patiēns**; *innocent* from **innocēns**; *silent* from **silēns.**

a. These Latin forms in **-ēns** are mainly participles.

(16) *-ior* (*-or*) from **-ior.**

exterior, interior, junior, senior, superior, inferior, major, minor. These are comparative adjectives, and are taken from Latin without change of form.

VERB ENDING

(17) *-ate* from participial forms in **-ātum.**

create from **creō (creātum)**; *demonstrate* from **dēmōnstrō (dēmōnstrātum)**; *migrate* from **migrō (migrātum)**; *narrate* from **nārrō (nārrātum).**

Note. Some English words which are formed with the endings given above are not derived directly from the Latin forms which they most closely resemble. When these endings had come to be used extensively in English, they were sometimes employed in the formation of new words from other English words. But the endings were originally derived from the Latin.

PREFIXES

3. The use of Latin prepositions as prefixes in the formation of other words is very important. Many words formed with these prefixes have been taken into English, and the prefixes are sometimes used with English words to form new words. The spelling of these prepositions was sometimes changed because of the first letter of the word with which they were used. Thus **adficiō,** from **ad** and **faciō** became **afficiō,** hence we have *affect* from the past participle **affectus.** In like manner *occur* is derived from **occurrō,** which is the compound of **ob** and **currō.** The most important prepositions used as prefixes in English derivatives are the following:

(1) **ā, ab (abs),** *away from, from.*
avert, absent.

(2) **ad** (sometimes becoming *ac, af, ag, al, ap, ar*), *to.*
adhere, acquire, affable, aggression, allusion, approve, arrogant.

(3) **ante,** *before.*
antecedent.

(4) **circum,** *around.*
circumnavigate.

(5) **cum,** as a prefix appearing as **com** (sometimes becoming *con, col, cor, co*), *with.*
composition, contract, collect, correct, coöperate.

(6) **contrā,** *against.*
contradict.

(7) **dē,** *from, down, about.*
depend, decline, describe.

(8) **ex, ē,** *out, out of, from.*
expose, elect, evade.

(9) **extrā,** *beyond.*
extraordinary, extradition.

(10) **in** (sometimes becoming *il, im, ir*), *in, into.*
invade, illusion, immigrant, irrigate.

(11) **inter, intro,** *between, among.*
intervene, intermission, introduction.

(12) **ob** (sometimes becoming *oc, of, op*), *against.*
observe, occur, offer, oppress.

(13) **per,** *through.*
pervade, perforate.

(14) **post,** *after.*
postpone, postscript.

(15) **prae** (in English derivatives regularly *pre*), *before.*
prefix, predict, precede.

(16) **prō,** *before, for, in favor of.*
proceed, profess.

(17) **sub** (sometimes becoming *suc, suf, sup*); *under.*
submit, succeed, suffer, support.

(18) **super,** *above.*
superintend, superfluous.

(19) **trāns** (sometimes becoming *tra*), *beyond.*
transport, transition, traverse.

a. In addition to the prepositions which have been given above, there are a few Latin prefixes which are never used as separate words. The most important of these are the following:

(1) **di-, dis-,** *apart, not.*
distract, dissimilar, discontent.

(2) **in-** (a different word from the preposition), *not.*
inevitable, incompetent.

(3) **re-, red,** *back, again.*
retract, redemption.

(4) **sē-,** *apart.*
secede, seclude.

FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

The following list of phrases includes quotations from Latin which are frequently found in English literature, and also a number of mottoes and phrases which are in common use:

Ad astra per aspera, To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).

Ad utrumque parātus, Prepared for either event.

Alter ego est amīcus, A friend is one's second self.

Aurī sacra famēs, Accursed greed for gold.

Ē plūribus ūnum, One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).

Ex animō, Sincerely.

Esse quam vidērī, To be rather than to seem.

Fāta viam invenient, The fates will find a way.

Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.

Fīat lūx, Let there be light.

Fīat iūstitia, Let justice be done.

Fortēs fortūna iuvat, Fortune favors the brave.

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō, I am a man, and I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with humanity.

Horribile dictū, Horrible to relate.

In hōc signō vincēs, In this sign you shall conquer.

Labōrāre est ōrāre, To labor is to pray.

Labor omnia vincit, Toil conquers all things.

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō, A sound mind in a sound body.

Mēns sibi cōnscia rēctī, A mind conscious in itself (to itself) of right.

Mīrābile dictū, Wonderful to say.

Montānī semper līberī, Mountaineers are always freemen (motto of West Virginia).

Nōn prōgredī est regredī Not to go forward is to go backward.

Nōn sibi sed omnibus, Not for one's self but for all.

Pāce tuā, With your permission.

Possunt quia posse videntur, They can because they think they can.

Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (abbr. *Q. E. D.*), Which was to be proved.

Semper parātus, Always ready.

Sīc ītur ad astra, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).

Sīc semper tyrannīs, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).

Sīc trānsit glōria mundī, Thus passes away the glory of the world.

Sine diē, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns without a date fixed for meeting again).

Tempora mūtantur et nōs mūtāmur in illīs, The times change and we change with them (in them).

Vincit quī patitur, He conquers who endures.

Vincit quī sē vincit, He conquers who conquers himself.

VOCABULARY FOR ORAL EXERCISES

4. The following vocabulary of grammatical terms, together with a few additional words, is given for the convenience of teachers who may wish to use Latin in giving directions for the work of the class room.

noun, *nōmen*
adjective, *adjectīvum*
pronoun, *prōnōmen*
verb, *verbum,*
adverb, *adverbium*
preposition, *praepositiō*
conjunction, *conjūnctiō*
interjection, *interjectiō*
case, *cāsus*
  nominative, *nōminātīvus*
  genitive, *genitīvus*
  dative, *datīvus*
  accusative, *accūsātīvus*
  ablative, *ablātīvus*
  vocative, *vocātīvus*
gender, *genus*
  masculine, *masculīnum*
  feminine, *fēminīnum*
  neuter, *neutrum*
person, *persōna*
  first, *prīma*
  second, *secunda*
  third, *tertia*
number, *numerus*
  singular, *singulāris*
  plural, *plūrālis*
tense, *tempus*
  present, *praesēns*
  imperfect, *imperfectum*
  future, *futūrum*
  perfect, *perfectum*
  past perfect, *praeteritum perfectum*
  future perfect, *futūrum perfectum*
voice, *vōx*
  active, *actīva*
  passive, *passīva*
mood, *modus*
  indicative, *indicātīvus*
  imperative, *imperātīvus*
  infinitive, *īnfinītīvus*
  subjunctive, *subjūnctīvus*
deponent, *dēpōnēns*
transitive, *trānsitīvum*
intransitive, *intrānsitīvum*
impersonal, *impersōnāle*
conjugation, *conjugātiō*
declension, *dēclīnātiō*
blackboard, *tabula, -ae*
paper, *charta*
chalk, *crēta*
pencil, *stīlus*
question, *interrogātiō*
answer, *respōnsum*
decline, *dēclīnō*
conjugate, *conjugō*

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

5. FIRST DECLENSION, ā-stems

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	rosa	rosae
Gen.	rosae	rosārum
Dat.	rosae	rosīs
Acc.	rosam	rosās
Abl.	rosā	rosīs

6. SECOND DECLENSION, o-stems

Singular

N.	amīcus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
D.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac.	amīcum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

Plural

N.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	amīcōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e**: **amīce.**

7. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) CONSONANT STEMS

Singular

N.	lēx	mīles	frāter	homō
G.	lēgis	mīlitis	frātris	hominis
D.	lēgī	mīlitī	frātrī	hominī
Ac.	lēgem	mīlitem	frātrem	hominem
Ab.	lēge	mīlite	frātre	homine

Plural

N.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
G.	lēgum	mīlitum	frātrum	hominum
D.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus
Ac.	lēgēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
Ab.	lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus

NOTE.—Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s.** If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g,** the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x: dux,** nominative from the stem **duc-; lēx,** nominative from the stem **lēg-.** If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t** the final consonant is dropped before **-s: laus,** nominative from the stem **laud-.** If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **prīnceps,** nominative from the stem **prīncip-; mīles,** nominative from the stem **mīlit-.**

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter: frāter** from the stem **frātr-; māter** from the stem **mātr.**

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-; multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-.** The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

Singular

N.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
G.	flūminis	capitis	corporis	itineris
D.	flūminī	capitī	corporī	itinerī
Ac.	flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
Ab.	flūmine	capite	corpore	itinere

Plural

N.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
G.	flūminum	capitum	corporum	itinerum
D.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
Ac.	flūmina	capita	corpora	itinera
Ab.	flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus

NOTE.—Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-.** A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-.**

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us: corpus** from the stem **corpor-.** The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-.**

(2) I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

Singular

N.	collis	caedes	nox
G.	collis	caedis	noctis
D.	collī	caedī	noctī
Ac.	collem	caedem	noctem
Ab.	colle	caede	nocte

Plural

N.	collēs	caedēs	noctēs
G.	collium	caedium	noctium
D.	collibus	caedibus	noctibus
Ac.	collīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	noctīs (-ēs)
Ab.	collibus	caedibus	noctibus

		Singular	
N.	īnsigne	exemplar	animal
G.	īnsignis	exemplāris	animālis
D.	īnsignī	exemplārī	animālī
Ac.	īnsigne	exemplar	animal
Ab.	īnsignī	exemplārī	animālī
		Plural	
N.	īnsignia	exemplāria	animālia
G.	īnsignium	exemplārium	animālium
D.	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus
Ac.	īnsignia	exemplāria	animālia
Ab.	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus

(3) IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
G.	—	vīrium	bovis	boum
D.	—	vīribus	bovī	būbus *or* bōbus
Ac.	vim	vīrīs *or* -ēs	bovem	bovēs
Ab.	vī	vīribus	bove	būbus *or* bōbus

8. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī *or* -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

9. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(1) **bonus**, *good*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

(2) **miser**, *unhappy*

		Singular	
N.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō
		Plural	
N.	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(3) **pulcher**, *beautiful*

		Singular	
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

		Plural	
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

11. THIRD DECLENSION

(1) THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

ācer, *sharp*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs,-ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(2) TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-STEMS)

omnis, *all*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Ac.	omnem	omne	omnīs *or* -ēs	omnia
Ab.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

(3) ONE TERMINATION

fēlīx, *fortunate* — **potēns,** *powerful*

	Singular			
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	fēlīx	fēlīx	potēns	potēns
G.	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	potentis	potentis
D.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī	potentī
Ac.	fēlīcem	felīx	potentem	potēns
Ab.	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	potentī, -e	potentī -e

Plural

N.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
G.	fēlīcium	fēlīcium	potentium	potentium
D.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	fēlīcīs, -ēs	fēlīcia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
Ab.	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus

12. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
G.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
D.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Ac.	portantem	portāns	portantīs, -ēs	portantia
Ab.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

13. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius	**ūnus**	**alter**
sōlus	**tōtus**	**neuter**
ūllus	**nūllus**	**uter**

N.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
D.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(*The plurals are like those of* **bonus** *and* **miser.**)

14. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlīx	fēlīcior, fēlīcius	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

16. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, *broader*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
G.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
D.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Ab.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, *more*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	———	plūs	plūrīs *or* -ēs	plūra
Ab.	———	——	plūribus	plūribus

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	pejus	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

19. NUMERALS

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus

XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
C.	centum	centēsimus
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

a. DECLENSION OF **DUO, TRĒS,** and **MĪLIA**

duo, *two*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, *three* — **mīlia,** N., *thousands*

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Neut.*
N.	trēs	tria	mīlia
G.	trium	trium	mīlium
D.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Ac.	trēs, trīs	tria	mīlia
Ab.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

PRONOUNS

20. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, **ego**, *I*		Second person, **tū**, *you* (*thou*)	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is**, *he*, **ea**, *she*, **id**, *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

21. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	First person, **meī**, *of myself*		Second person, **tuī**, *of yourself*		Third person, **suī**, *of himself, etc.*	
	Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
G.	meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Ab.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

22. POSSESSIVES

Singular

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, *my*
2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)
3d pers. { suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive)
ejus (gen. sing. of **is**) *his,* etc. (not reflexive)

Plural

1st pers.	noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
2d pers.	vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)
3d pers.	suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive) eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (not reflexive)

23. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

(1) **hic**, *this*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(2) **ille**, *that*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(3) **is**, *this, that, he, she, it*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
G.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

24. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

īdem, *the same*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem
G.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural

N.	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
Ac.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

25. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

26. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

27. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	Singular			*Plural*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quis	quae	quid *or* quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid *or* quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes **quī**. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always **quod**.

28. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

(1) **quisque**, *each*

	Singular		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
G.	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
D.	cuique	cuique	cuique
Ac.	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque
Ab.	quōque	quāque	quōque

(*The plural is rare*)

(2) **quisquam**, *anyone*

	Singular	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
G.	cujusquam	cujusquam
D.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Ac.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Ab.	quōquam	quōquam

(*Plural lacking*)

(3) quīdam, *a certain*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
G.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(4) aliquis, *some*

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
G.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VERBS

29. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
portō, *I carry*	portāmus, *we carry*
portās, *you carry*	portātis, *you carry*
portat, *he carries*	portant, *they carry*

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portābam, *I was carrying*	portābāmus, *we were carrying*
portābās, *you were carrying*	portābātis, *you were carrying*
portābat, *he was carrying*	portābant, *they were carrying*

FUTURE

Singular	*Plural*
portābō, *I shall carry*	portābimus, *we shall carry*
portābis, *you will carry*	portābitis, *you will carry*
portābit, *he will carry*	portābunt, *they will carry*

PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*	portāvimus, *we have carried*, etc.
portāvistī, *you have carried*, etc.	portāvistis, *you have carried*, etc.
portāvit, *he has carried*, etc.	portāvērunt, -ēre, *they have carried*, etc.

PAST PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
portāveram, *I had carried*	portāverāmus, *we had carried*
portāverās, *you had carried*	portāverātis, *you had carried*
portāverat, *he had carried*	portāverant, *they had carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
portāveris, *you will have carried*
portāverit, *he will have carried*

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
portāveritis, *you will have carried*
portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portā, *carry* (*thou*) *Plur.* portāte, *carry* (*ye*)

INFINITIVES

Pres. portāre, *to carry*
Past portāvisse, *to have carried*
Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, *carrying* *Fut.* portātūrus, *about to carry*

GERUND

G. portandī, *of carrying*
D. portandō, *to* (*for*) *carrying*
Ac. portandum, *carrying*
Ab. portandō *from, by carrying*

30. *PASSIVE VOICE*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
portor, *I am carried*	portāmur, *we are carried*
portāris, -re, *you are carried*	portāminī, *you are carried*
portātur, *he is carried*	portantur, *they are carried*

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābar, *I was (being) carried*
portābāris, -re, *you were (being) carried*
portābātur, *he was (being) carried*

Plural

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*
portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*
portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

FUTURE

Singular

portābor, *I shall be carried*
portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
portābitur, *he will be carried*

Plural

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT

Singular

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he has been carried*

Plural

portātī sumus, *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they have been carried*

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

Plural

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

Plural

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

INFINITIVES

Pres. amārī, *to be loved*
Past amātus esse, *to have been loved*
Fut. amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLE

Past portātus, *having been carried*



ROMAN BUCKLES

31. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
monet	dūcit	capit	audit
monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbatis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PERFECT

monuī, etc.	dūxī, etc.	cēpī, etc.	audīvī, etc.

PAST PERFECT

monueram, etc.	dūxeram, etc.	cēperam, etc.	audīveram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō, etc.	dūxerō, etc.	cēperō, etc.	audīverō, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē	dūc[1]	cape	audī
monēte	dūcite	capite	audīte

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns

FUTURE

monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monēre	dūcere	capere	audīre

PAST

monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse

FUTURE

monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse

GERUND

monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

[1] See section **339**, *a*, page 141.

PASSIVE VOICE

32. INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
monētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur
monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī
monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT

monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	audītus sum

PAST PERFECT

monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	audītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	audītus erō

PARTICIPLE

PAST

monitus	ductus	captus	audītus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī

PERFECT

monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	audītus esse

FUTURE

monitum īrī	ductum īrī	captum īrī	audītum īrī

33. DEPONENT VERBS

I. **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
II. **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**
III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
IV. **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I.	II.	III.	IV.
cōnor	polliceor	sequor	potior
cōnāris, -re	pollicēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
cōnātur	pollicētur	sequitur	potītur
cōnāmur	pollicēmur	sequimur	potīmur
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
cōnāntur	pollicentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

IMPERFECT

cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar

FUTURE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	potiar

PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potīrī

PAST

cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse

FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	potiēns

PAST

cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	potītus

FUTURE ACTIVE

cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

34. CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est, *he, she, it is*	sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he, she, it was*	erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he, she, it will be*	erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, I was*	fuimus, *we have been, we were*
fuistī, *you have been, you were*	fuistis, *you have been, you were*
fuit, *he, she, it has been, was*	fuērunt *or* -ēre, *they have been, etc.*

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he, she, it had been*	fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he, she, it will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

	Singular	*Plural*
2d pers.	es, *be* (*thou*)	este, *be* (*ye*)

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

INFINITIVES

Pres. esse, *to be*
Past fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse *or* fore, *to be about to be*

35. CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT *Singular*	*Plural*	PERFECT *Singular*	*Plural*
possum	possumus	potuī	potuimus
potes	potestis	potuistī	potuistis
potest	possunt	potuit	potuērunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
poteram	poterāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
poterās	poterātis	potuerās	potuerātis
poterat	poterant	potuerat	potuerant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
poterō	poterimus	potuerō	potuerimus
poteris	poteritis	potueris	potueritis
poterit	poterunt	potuerit	potuerint

INFINITIVES

Pres. posse *Past* potuisse

36. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Active		*Passive*	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERFECT			
ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
FUTURE			
feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur
PERFECT			
tulī	tulimus	lātus sum	lātī sumus
PAST PERFECT			
tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus eram	lātī erāmus
FUTURE PERFECT			
tulerō	tulerimus	lātus erō	lātī erimus

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d pers. fer ferte

INFINITIVES

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Past	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

	Active		*Passive*
Pres.	ferēns	*Past*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus		

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

37. CONJUGATION OF EŌ

Principal parts: **eō, īre, iī** *or* **īvī, itum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
eō	īmus	iī	iimus
īs	ītis	īstī (iistī)	īstis (iistis)
it	eunt	iit	iērunt
IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
ībam	ībāmus	ieram	ierāmus
ībās	ībātis	ierās	ierātis
ībat	ībant	ierat	ierant
FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
ībō	ībimus	ierō	ierimus
ībis	ībitis	ieris	ieritis
ībit	ībunt	ierit	ierint

a. Forms are sometimes found in the perfect system with the stem **īv-**, as **īvī, īveram**, etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers. ī, **īte,**

INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES	
Pres.	īre	*Pres.*	iēns (*gen.* euntis)
Past	iisse *or* īsse	*Fut.*	itūrus
Fut.	itūrus esse		

GERUND

eundī, etc.

38. CONJUGATION OF FĪŌ

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
fīō	—	factus sum	factī sumus
fīs	—	factus es	factī estis
fit	fīunt	factus est	factī sunt
IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
fīēbam	fīēbamus	factus eram	factī erāmus
fīēbās	fīēbātis	factus erās	factī erātis
fīēbat	fīēbant	factus erat	factī erant
FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
fīam	fīēmus	factus erō	factī erimus
fīēs	fīētis	factus eris	factī eritis
fīet	fīent	factus erit	factī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers. fī, fīte

INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	fierī	*Perf.*	factus
Past	factus esse		
Fut.	factum īrī		

39. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
volō	volumus	voluī	voluimus
vīs	vultis	voluistī	voluistis
vult	volunt	voluit	voluērunt

IMPERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
volēbam	volēbāmus	volueram	voluerāmus
volēbās	volēbātis	voluerās	voluerātis
volēbat	volēbant	voluerat	voluerant

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
volam	volēmus	voluerō	voluerimus
volēs	volētis	volueris	volueritis
volet	volent	voluerit	voluerint

INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	velle	*Pres.*	volēns
Past	voluisse		

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

40. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

(3) A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the word which it explains.

(4) A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

41. (1) The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate.

THE GENITIVE

42. (1) The genitive is the case of the possessor. (*Genitive of Possession.*)

(2) With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to denote the whole of that to which the part belongs. (*Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.*)

(3) The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Genitive of Description.*)

THE DATIVE

43. (1) The indirect object is put in the dative case. (*Dative of Indirect Object.*)

(2) The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *dear*, *useful*, *near*, and some others. (*Dative with Adjectives.*)

(3) Most verbs meaning *to please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *believe*, *persuade*, *serve*, *obey*, *favor*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare* govern the dative. (*Dative with Special Verbs.*)

(4) Verbs compounded with **ante**, **ob**, **prae**, and **sub**, frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative.

This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad, circum, com-, in, inter, post, prō,** and **super.** (*Dative with Compounds.*)

THE ACCUSATIVE

44. (1) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case. (*Accusative as Direct Object.*)

(2) A noun which is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is put in the accusative. (*Accusative of Duration of Time.*)

(3) The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. (*Accusative of Extent of Space.*)

(4) Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative. (*Accusative with Prepositions.*)

THE ABLATIVE

45. (1) Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent*, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab, dē,** or **ex.** (*Ablative of Separation.*)

(2) With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.** (*Ablative of Agent.*)

(3) The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (*Ablative of Place.*)

(4) The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition. (*Ablative of Time.*)

(5) The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act. (*Ablative of Accompaniment.*)

(6) The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum**, is used to express manner. (*Ablative of Manner.*)

(7) A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition. (*Ablative of Means.*)

(8) A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. (*Ablative Absolute.*)

(9) The measure or degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. (*Ablative of Degree of Difference.*)

(10) The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (*Ablative of Respect* or *Specification.*)

(11) The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Ablative of Description.*)

(12) The ablative is used to express cause. (*Ablative of Cause.*)

(13) **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative. (*Ablative with Certain Deponents.*)

THE VOCATIVE

46. The vocative denotes the person addressed.

MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

47. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply as answer a statement of fact.

THE IMPERATIVE

48. The imperative is used to express commands.

THE INFINITIVE

49. (1) The infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb, by denoting an action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. (*Complementary Infinitive.*)

(2) The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying*, *hearing*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *believing*, *seeing*, and the like. (*Indirect Discourse.*)

THE GERUND

50. The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and in the singular number. The cases in which it is used are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

SUPPLEMENTARY LATIN READINGS

I. THE STORY OF PERSEUS

The stories of *Perseus* and of *Hercules* which follow are also included in *A Junior Latin Reader* of the series to which *First Latin Lessons* belongs. The purpose of presenting this material in both books is to meet the needs of different types of schools and also of classes of varying degrees of ability. Teachers who do not desire to use this material with first-year classes will find it more convenient to have it available in the second-year book, especially in schools which provide free textbooks and in which second-year pupils must give up first-year books at the end of the year.

PERSEUS

Perseus and his mother were set adrift on the sea by Acrisius, king of Argos, the grandfather of Perseus, because an oracle had declared that Acrisius would some day perish at the hands of his grandson.

Jupiter, however, saved the mother and child, bringing them to the island of Seriphus, where they were kindly received by Polydectes, the king.

When Perseus reached manhood he was ordered by Polydectes to bring him the head of Medusa, an undertaking which was likely to prove fatal. But Apollo and Minerva directed him on his journey and gave him a special equipment for his task. With the aid thus afforded, he accomplished the perilous exploit in safety and escaped from the companions of Medusa, who sought to kill him. On his way back he rescued Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus, the king of the Ethiopians, who was about to be devoured by a sea monster. He married Andromeda and soon after returned with her to the island from which he had been sent by the crafty Polydectes. Finding that his mother had taken refuge from the king, he turned the latter into stone through the magic power of the head of Medusa. Afterwards, while taking part in athletic games he accidentally killed his grandfather, Acrisius, thus fulfilling the oracle which Acrisius had vainly sought to escape.

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

1. Set Adrift

Haec nārrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus fīlius erat Jovis, maximī deōrum. Avus ejus Ācrisius appellābātur. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum, nepōtem suum, necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum, adhūc īnfantem, et cum mātre in arcā ligneā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare conjēcit. Danaē, Perseī māter, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātris dormiēbat.

2. Cast on an Island

Juppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit et fīlium suum servāre cōnstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum et arcam ad īnsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Hujus īnsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit et sēdem tūtam in fīnibus

---

1. **Haec,** *these things,* or *these stories.*

2. **Ācrisius:** predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.

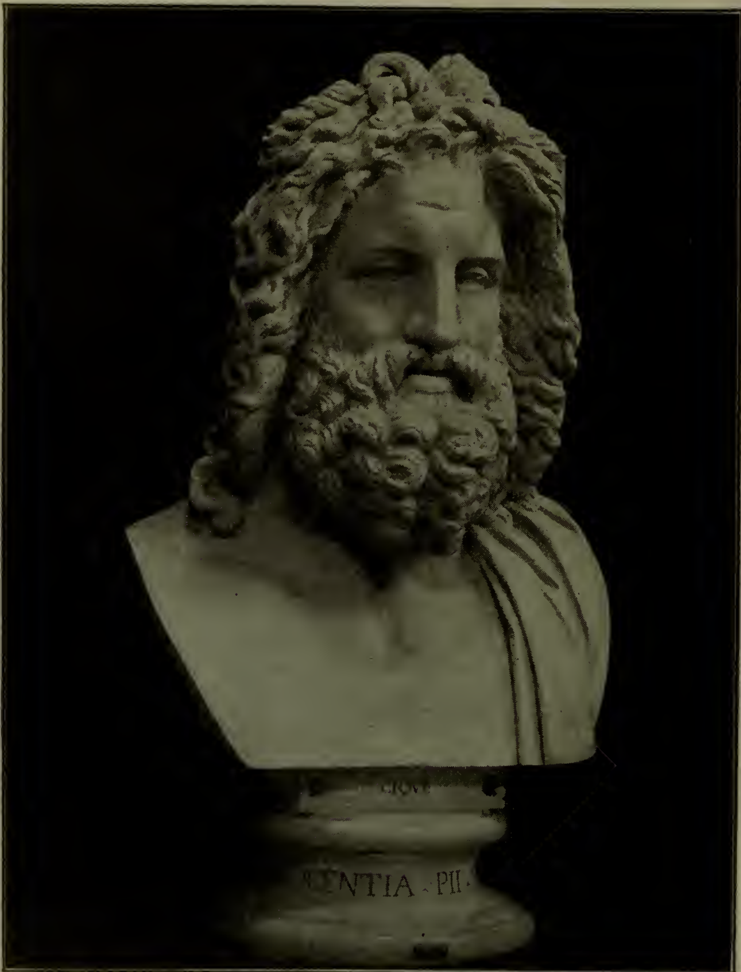
6. **Danaē:** a Greek name, with genitive ending in *-ēs,* accusative in *-ēn.*

7. **enim:** always stands after one or more words of its sentence; the same is true of *autem,* line 8.

11. **Serīphum:** in apposition with *īnsulam.* We usually say in English "the island of," "the city of," etc.

12. **Postquam:** with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with the English equivalents "after" or "when," we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.

13. **piscātōre quōdam:** the forms of *quīdam* sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify.



JUPITER

suīs dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

3. Perseus Sent on His Travels

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitāvit et cum mātre suā vītam ēgit beātam. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōnstituit. Tum juvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est vītam hanc ignāvam agere; jam dūdum tū adulēscēns es; quousque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

4. Perseus Gets His Outfit

Perseus, ubi haec audīvit, ex īnsulā discessit et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā

---

16. dedit: *iīs*, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

18. annōs: accusative of duration of time.

21. Perseō: dependent on *grātum.*

23. haec dīxit, *spoke as follows.*

agere: subject of *est;* an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, *turpe,* is neuter.

24. jam dūdum es, *you have long been;* with *jam dūdum* a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; *jam dūdum erās* would mean *you had long been.*

25. abī: imperative of *abeō.* What is the imperative of *eō?*

26. refer: the verb *ferō* has as its present imperative in the singular number the form *fer.* Its compounds have the same irregularity.

27. Perseus, ubi: in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause denote acts by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause.

haec: the neuter plural of *hic,* used without a noun (literally *these things*), may often be translated *this.*

---

1. Decline the demonstrative *hic.* 2. In section **1** point out a preposition governing the accusative. 3. Give the principal parts of *videō, agō, dīcō, dō.* 4. Give the meaning of *grātiās agō.* 5. Give the genitive singular and nominative plural of *tempus.* 6. Explain the derivation and the meaning of the English word "habitation."

quaerēbat; nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribilī; capita enim eārum serpentibus omnīnō contēcta erant; manūs etiam ex aere factae erant.

5. The Gorgon's Head

Rēs erat difficillima abscīdere caput Gorgonis; ejus enim cōnspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva illud speculum dederat. Perseus igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īnspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput ejus ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt et, ubi rem vīdērunt, īrā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occīdere volēbant; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam magicam induit et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōnspectū eārum ēvāsit.

---

31. galeam magicam: this rendered the wearer invisible.

33. pedibus, *on his feet;* dative, governed by the compound verb *induit.*

āera: this form is an accusative singular. The word *āēr* is a Greek noun carried over into Latin; it keeps its Greek accusative ending.

36. speciē horribilī, *of horrible aspect,* ablative of description.

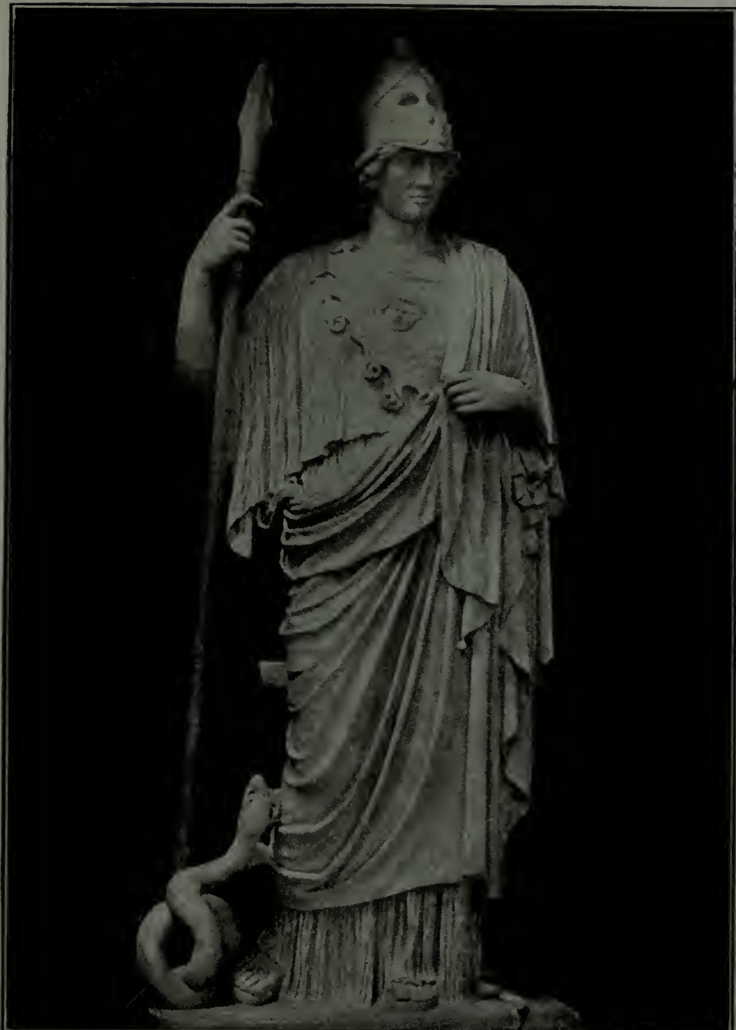
37. aere: from *aes.*

40. vertēbantur: the Latin imperfect often expresses repeated or customary action.

42. speculum: ancient mirrors consisted of polished metal plates.

hōc modō, *in this way;* the ablative case, sometimes with the preposition *cum* and sometimes, as here, without *cum,* is used to express the manner in which an action is done.

46. dum fugit, *while he fled, while fleeing;* a clause with *dum* meaning *while* takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.



MINERVA

6. The Sea Serpent

Post haec Perseus in fīnēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, atque ā deō jussus est fīliam mōnstrō trādere. Ejus autem fīlia, nōmine An-

---

49. **Cēpheus quīdam,** *a certain Cepheus,* or *a man named Cepheus.*

50. **tempore:** ablative of time.

Hic: a pronoun, referring to *Cēpheus.*

53. **omnium,** *of all* (*i.e., men*)*;* the masculine plural of *omnēs* often means *all men,* or *everybody;* the neuter plural often means *all things,* or *everything.*

54. **ōrāculum:** the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert.

55. **mōnstrō:** indirect object of *trādere.*

nōmine: ablative of respect.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

adulēscēns	turpis	fugiō	etiam
beneficium	tūtus	occīdō	frūstrā
cōnspectus		perdūcō	igitur
domus	quīdam	perveniō	jam
juvenis		quaerō	libenter
lītus	addūcō	referō	magnopere
mare	agō	reperiō	minimē
sēdēs	appellō (-āre)	servō	ōlim
tempestās	commoveō	trādō	omnīnō
vīta	comprehendō	vertō	tamen
	conjiciō	volō (velle)	tandem
brevis	cōnstituō		
cēterī	dīmittō	cotīdiē	dum
tantus	excipiō	diū	

dromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō perīculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam cōnstituit imperāta Hammōnis facere.

7. A Human Sacrifice

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est et in cōnspectū omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum ejus dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum expectant, Perseus accurrit, et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum, horribilī speciē, procul cōnspicitur. Ejus cōnspectus timōrem maximum omnibus injēcit. At mōnstrum magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, jamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

---

56. Cēpheus, ubi: the order of words is explained in the note on *Perseus, ubi*, line 27.

60. diem: in the plural, *diēs* is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

omnia, *all things, everything;* or with *parāvit, made all preparations;* see note on line 53.

63. nec . . . tenēbant, *and did not restrain; neque* is regularly used in Latin for *and not.*

dum . . . expectant, *while they were awaiting;* for the present tense with *dum,* see note on line 46.

64. accurrit: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present; it may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.

67. speciē: the case use is the same as in line 36.

68. timōrem . . . omnibus injēcit, *inspired all with the greatest fear;* literally, *threw the greatest fear into all; omnibus* is a dative governed by a compound verb, like *pedibus* in line 33.

69. magnā celeritāte: another example of the ablative denoting manner, like *hōc modō,* line 42.

8. The Rescue

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit, et, postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum ejus graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam mersit. Perseus, dum circum lītus volat, reditum ejus expectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine īnficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

9. The Reward of Valor

Perseus, postquam in lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus est. Meritam grātiam prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitāvit, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem

---

72. sublātus est: perfect passive of *tollō*.

in (*mōnstrum*), *on*.

80. neque: translate as in line 63.

83. terrōre, *with terror;* the ablative denotes cause.

86. Meritam grātiam rettulit, *made a deserved requital,* or *repaid the favor as it deserved.*

prō, *in return for.*

88. puellam dūxit, *married the girl. Dūcō* has reference to that part of the ceremony in which the bridegroom led the bride to his own house.

---

1. Decline the demonstrative *is*. 2. In section **4** point out three prepositions governing the accusative. 3. Give the principal parts of *veniō, accipiō, quaerō, discēdō*. 4. Give the meaning of *ob eam causam*. 5. Decline *rēs*. 6. Find the derivation and the meaning of "aërial."

suam rūrsus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

10. Turned to Stone

Postquam Perseus ad īnsulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat. At domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam īnsulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus, ubi haec cognōvit, īrā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit et, ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est, et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem, simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

11. The Oracle Fulfilled

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisiī rediit. Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est. Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs

---

93. sē . . . contulit, *betook himself, proceeded.*

97. quod: not a relative pronoun.

99. eō: an adverb.

100. magnō timōre affectus est, *was very badly frightened.* What is it literally?

102. simul atque, *as soon as;* the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to *postquam* and *ubi;* see note on line 12.

106. istud: this word is declined like *ille,* and usually means *that* or *that of yours.* Here the force is, *that oracle of which you know.*

107. Lārissam, *of Larissa;* an appositive translated like *Serīphum,* line 11.

108. neque: translate as if *nōn.*

109. lūdōs fēcit, *gave games.*

in omnēs partēs, *in all directions.*

partēs dīmīserat et diem ēdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conjicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ejus certāminis forte stābat.

---

112. discōrum: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.

113. cāsū, *by chance, accidentally;* the ablative of *cāsus* without a preposition is often used in this meaning.

---

1. Conjugate *videō* and *quaerō* in the future active. 2. Decline the demonstrative *ille*. 3. What case is *diēs* in line 95, and why used? 4. What are the meanings of *volō, velle,* and *volō, volāre*? 5. What is the meaning of *magnō terrōre affectus*? 6. Who was the mother of Perseus? 7. Why did Perseus need the mirror when he slew Medusa? 8. What was the name of the maiden whom Perseus rescued from the sea-monster? 9. How did Acrisius meet his death?

VOCABULARY REVIEW

cāsus	appropinquō	redeō	iterum
celeritās	cognōscō	sentiō	mox
certāmen	cōnferō	solvō	paene
cīvis	cōnspiciō	terreō	posteā
impetus	conveniō	timeō	praetereā
mora	cupiō	tollō	procul
salūs	dēdūcō		simul
spēs	dēpōnō	eō	subitō
vinculum	expōnō	forte	ubi
	gerō	graviter	undique
gravis	injiciō	hūc	
paucī	inveniō	ibi	apud
tōtus	reddō	intereā	post
			propter

II. THE STORY OF HERCULES

HERCULES

Hercules was a Greek hero, celebrated for his feats of strength. While only an infant he strangled two serpents which had been sent by Juno to destroy him. In his boyhood he devoted himself to athletic pursuits, and in a fit of anger he slew the Centaur who was his teacher of music. Having been seized by the King of Egypt as a victim for sacrifice, he killed the king, as well as the priest who was about to sacrifice him. His next exploit was to cut off the ears of the envoys of the Minyae who had come to Thebes to demand tribute, thus causing a war, in which the Thebans under the leadership of Hercules were victorious. While in a state of temporary madness he slew his children, and thereupon was ordered by the oracle at Delphi to give himself up to the service of Eurystheus, King of Tiryns. At his command he performed the celebrated Twelve Labors, as follows: 1. Slaying the Nemean lion. 2. Slaying the Hydra of Lerna. 3. Capturing the Cerynian stag. 4. Capturing the boar of Erymanthus. 5. Cleaning the Augean stables. 6. Killing the birds of Stymphalus. 7. Capturing the Cretan bull. 8. Capturing the horses of Diomede. 9. Obtaining the girdle of Hippolyte. 10. Bringing the oxen of Geryon from the island of Erythia. 11. Procuring the golden apples of the Hesperides. 12. Bringing Cerberus from the lower world. In connection with these labors he also performed numerous other exploits.

His death came from the putting on of a poisoned robe which had been dipped in the blood of the Centaur, Nessus. After his death he was taken by Jupiter to Olympus.

THE STORY OF HERCULES

1. The Infant Prodigy

Herculēs, Alcmēnae fīlius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dīcitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam ōderat, et Herculem, adhūc īnfantem, necāre voluit. Mīsit igitur duās serpentēs saevissimās; hae mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. Nec tamen in cūnīs, sed in scūtō magnō cubābant. Serpentēs jam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

2. Hercules and the Serpents

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvīs manibus serpentēs statim prehendit et colla eārum magnā vī compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audīverat et marītum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit; Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

---

1. Hic dīcitur fuisse, *he is said to have been.*

3. ōderat, *hated;* this verb has only the tenses formed on the perfect stem; the perfect, however, is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

5. mediā nocte, *in the middle of the night.*



JUNO

3. The Music Lesson

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum dīligenter exercēbat. Magnam partem diēī in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conjicere. Hīs exercitātiōnibus vīrēs ejus cōnfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā etiam ā Linō Centaurō ērudiēbātur. (Centaurī autem equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant.) Huic tamen artī minus dīligenter studēbat. Hic Linus Herculem ōlim culpābat, quod parum studiōsus erat. Tum puer īrātus citharam subitō rapuit et summīs vīribus caput magistrī īnfēlīcis percussit. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere voluit.

4. Hercules Escapes from Being Sacrificed

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia nārrantur. Ōlim, dum iter facit, in fīnēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quīdam, nōmine Būsīris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem, vir crūdēlissimus, hominēs immolāre cōnsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et in vincula conjēcit. Tum nūntiōs dīmīsit et diem sacrificiō ēdīxit. Mox ea diēs appetīvit, et omnia rītē parāta sunt.

---

18. ā puerō, *from boyhood;* literally, *from a boy.*

19. palaestrā: the name given by the Greeks to the place in which instruction and training were given in wrestling and boxing.

23. Huic artī . . . studēbat, *he devoted himself to this art; studeō* takes the dative.

25. summīs vīribus, *with all his might.*

26. Ille, *he* (*i.e.,* Linus); *ille* is here used as a pronoun.

27. paulō post, *a little later.*

id officium: *i.e.,* the task of instructing Hercules in music.

29. haec inter alia, *these stories among others.*

31. vir: in apposition with *hic.*

32. cōnsuēverat, *was accustomed; cōnsuēscō* means *become accustomed;* its perfect tense therefore means *has become accustomed,* i.e., *is accustomed;* likewise the past perfect *cōnsuēverat* means *had become accustomed,* i.e., *was accustomed.*

33. sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice,* dative.

Manūs Herculis catēnīs ferreīs vīnctae sunt, et mola salsa in caput ejus īnspersa est. Mōs enim erat apud antīquōs salem et fār capitibus victimārum impōnere. Jam victima ad āram stābat; jam sacerdōs cultrum sūmpserat. Subitō tamen Herculēs magnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit. Tum ictū sacerdōtem prōstrāvit, alterō rēgem ipsum occīdit.

5. Ear-Cropping

Herculēs, jam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus, Creōn appellābātur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānīs fīnitimī erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs quotannīs veniēbant et centum bovēs postulābant. Thēbānī enim ōlim ā Minyīs superātī erant; tribūta igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannīs pendēbant. At Herculēs cīvēs suōs hōc stīpendiō līberāre cōnstituit. Lēgātōs igitur comprehendit atque aurēs eōrum abscīdit. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sacrī habentur.

6. Defeat of the Minyae

Ergīnus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer īrātus erat, et cum omnibus cōpiīs in fīnēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum ejus per explōrātōrēs cognōvit; ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit; nam magnō timōre affectus est. Thēbānī igitur Her-

---

37. capitibus: dative governed by a compound verb.

40. alterō: *ictū* is to be supplied.

43. Thēbānīs: dative, depending on the adjective *fīnitimī.*

44. veniēbant: the imperfect denoting repeated action; they came every year.

47. cīvēs suōs, *his fellow-citizens.* **stīpendiō,** *from tribute.*

49. habentur, *are regarded;* the passive forms of *habeō* often have this meaning.

53. magnō timōre affectus est: see note on Perseus, 100.

---

1. Decline *omnis.* 2. Compare *validus* and *saevus.* 3. Give the principal parts of *moveō, terreō, comprimō, rapiō.* 4. Give the genitive singular and the nominative plural of *caput* and *nōmen.* 5. What English prepositions are most frequently used in translating the Latin ablative case? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "culpable."

culem imperātōrem creāvērunt. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et cōpiās coēgit. Tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem īnstrūxit. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs fēcērunt. Illī autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, itaque aciēs hostium pulsa est atque in fugam conversa.

7. Madness and Murder

Post hoc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. Omnēs Thēbānī propter victōriam maximē gaudēbant. Creōn autem magnīs honōribus Herculem decorāvit, atque fīliam suam eī in mātrimōnium dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā vītam beātam agēbat; sed post paucōs annōs subitō in furōrem incidit atque līberōs suōs ipse suā manū occīdit. Post breve tempus ad sānitātem reductus est, et propter hoc facinus magnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe effūgit et in silvās sē recēpit. Nōlēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum eō habēre.

8. Hercules Consults the Oracle

Herculēs magnopere cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Cōnstituit igitur ad ōrāculum Delphicum īre; hoc enim ōrāculum

---

57. in, *on.*

59. conversa: supply *est;* the other forms of *sum* are also sometimes omitted in the perfect passive.

61. gaudēbant: the principal parts of this verb are *gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum;* the present, imperfect, and future tenses are active in form, the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are passive. All, however, are active in meaning. Such a verb is called semi-deponent.

64. in furōrem incidit, *become insane.*

65. ipse suā, *his own;* but the two Latin words are more emphatic than the English translation.

68. sē recēpit, *betook himself, withdrew.*

sermōnem habēre, *to associate,* literally, *to have conversation.*

71. ōrāculum Delphicum: the most famous oracle of antiquity, at Delphi, in Greece.

erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis, plūrimīs dōnīs ōrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pȳthia, et cōnsilium dabat iīs quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur, et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtam exposuit neque scelus cēlāvit.

9. The Oracle's Reply

Ubi Herculēs fīnem fēcit, Pȳthia diū tacēbat. Tandem tamen jussit eum ad urbem Tīryntha īre et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem illam contendit et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit.

---

72. omnium: supply *ōrāculōrum.*

73. dōnīs: presented by states and by individuals.

Hōc in templō: a preposition of one syllable may stand between a noun and a modifier.

80. Tīryntha: a word of Greek origin, retaining its Greek accusative form. Proper names must always be translated by the nominative.

82. in servitūtem, *in slavery.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

adventus	proximus	gaudeō	suscipiō
gēns	summus	imperō	sustineō
iter	tālis	incidō	taceō
mōs		īnstruō	
officium	quisquam	interficiō	ita
scelus		nōlō	maximē
servitūs	cōgō	ōdī	quotannīs
vīs	colō	pellō	vehementer
voluntās	cōnficiō	proficīscor	vix
	cōnsūmō	recipiō	
alter	dēligō	sedeō	itaque
fīnitimus	discō	studeō	
idōneus	doceō	sūmō	

Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit. Hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scrīpta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

10. First Labor—Slaying the Nemean Lion

Prīmum ab Eurystheō jussus est Herculēs leōnem occīdere, quī illō tempore vallem Nemaeam reddēbat īnfestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat statim sē contulit. Mox feram vīdit, et arcum quem sēcum attulerat intendit; ejus tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trājicere nōn potuit. Tum clāvā magnā, quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit. Frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occīdere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī bracchiīs suīs complexus est et faucēs ejus summīs vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tempore exanimātus est; nūlla enim respīrandī facultās eī dabātur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umerīs rettulit, et pellem, quam dētrāxerat, posteā prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant et Herculem magnō in honōre habēbant.

11. Second Labor—Slaying the Lernaean Hydra

Post haec jussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat quod novem capita habēbat. Her-

---

85. plūrima, *a great many things.*

89. reddēbat, *rendered.*

91. sēcum: the preposition *cum* is regularly attached as an enclitic to a personal, a reflexive, or a relative pronoun.

94. neque, *not,* as in Perseus, 108.

97. respīrandī facultās, *chance of breathing, chance to breathe; respīrandī* is a gerund.

99. prō veste, *as a garment.*

103. Hoc: although the reference is to *Hydram,* a feminine noun, the demonstrative, in accordance with Latin usage, takes the gender of the predicate noun *mōnstrum.*

culēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāō profectus est ad palūdem Lernaeam, quam Hydra incolēbat. Mox mōnstrum invēnit et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, collum ejus laevā prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscīdere coepit. Quotiēns tamen hoc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur. Diū frūstrā labōrāvit; tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit; cōnstituit deinde arborēs succīdere et ignem accendere. Hoc celeriter fēcit, et, postquam ligna ignem comprehendērunt, face ardente colla adussit, unde capita exoriēbantur. Nec tamen sine magnō labōre haec fēcit. Auxilium enim Hydrae tulit cancer ingēns, quī, dum Herculēs capita abscīdit, crūra ejus mordēbat. Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine ejus imbuit itaque mortiferās reddidit.

12. Third Labor—Capture of the Cerynian Stag

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, magnus timor animum ejus occupāvit. Jussit igitur Herculem cervum quendam ad sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in

---

107. rēs: while the word "thing" furnishes a starting-point in getting at the meaning of *rēs*, a more exact translation should always be given if possible—e.g., *fact, affair, circumstance;* here, *task* would be a good translation.

magnī perīculī, (*one*) *of great danger;* a descriptive genitive in the predicate.

109. exoriēbantur, *grew out,* or *would grow out;* imperfect, denoting repeated action.

110. hōc cōnātū, *from this undertaking;* an ablative thus used is called an ablative of separation.

112. comprehendērunt, *caught.*

113. unde, *from which.*

117. reddidit: supply as object *eās*, referring to *sagittās.*

120. tantae audāciae: genitive of description.

---

1. Decline *impetus.* 2. Conjugate *īnstruō* in the perfect active. 3. Give the principal parts of *possum, pellō, dēligō, occīdō.* 4. Give the genitive singular of *scelus, voluntās, fīnis, leō.* 5. What case is *eī* in line 97, and why used? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "tacitly."

urbe retinēre. Hic autem cervus, cujus cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incrēdibilī fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur prīmum vēstīgia ejus in silvīs animadvertit. Deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, summīs vīribus currere coepit. Usque ad vesperum cucurrit, neque nocturnum tempus sibi ad quiētem relīquit. Frūstrā tamen, nūllō enim modō praedam cōnsequī poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurrerat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū exanimātum cēpit et vīvum ad Eurystheum rettulit.

13. Fourth Labor—The Erymanthian Boar

Post haec jussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere, quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et incolās hujus regiōnis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prōgressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim refūgit et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam sē prōjēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat injēcit et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsī multum relūctābātur, nūllō modō sē līberāre potuit, et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vīvus relātus est.

14. Hercules at the Centaur's Cave

Dē quārtō labōre, quem suprā nārrāvimus, haec etiam trāduntur. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam

---

121. fuisse trāduntur, *are said to have been.*

122. incrēdibilī celeritāte, *of incredible swiftness;* ablative of description; either the ablative or the genitive of description may stand in the predicate.

125. sibi: dative after *relīquit,* but may be omitted in translation.

ad, *for.*

127. ita trāditur, *so the story goes.*

132. rem: see note on line 107.

134. aprō: dative governed by *occurrit,* which is a compound of *ob* and *currō.*

136. injēcit: supply *eī* (dative with a compound verb).

140. nārrāvimus: the plural as used by the writer to refer to himself was formerly common in English also, in newspaper editorials.

regiōnem vēnit quam Centaurī incolēbant. Mox, quod nox jam appetēbat, ad antrum dēvertit, in quō Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculem benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Herculēs, postquam cēnāvit, vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat autem in antrō magna amphora, vīnō optimō replēta, quam Centaurī ibi dēposuerant. Pholus hoc vīnum dare nōlēbat, quod reliquōs Centaurōs timēbat; nūllum tamen vīnum praeter hoc in antrō habēbat. "Hoc vīnum," inquit, "mihi commissum est. Sī igitur hoc dabō, Centaurī mē interficient." Herculēs tamen eum irrīsit, et ipse cyathum vīnī ex amphorā hausit.

15. The Fight with the Centaurs

Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor jūcundissimus undique diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāvissimum erat. Centaurī nōtum odōrem sēnsērunt et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt.

Ubi ad antrum pervēnērunt, magnopere īrātī erant, quod Herculem bibentem vīdērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt, et Pholum interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū antrī cōnstitit, et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs ārdentēs in eōs conjēcit; multōs etiam sagittīs suīs vulnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae eaedem erant quae sanguine Hydrae ōlim imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittīs vulnerāverat

---

143. jam, *now,* or *by this time; nunc* means *now* in the sense of *at the present time.*

146. Erat, *there was.* Latin has no word corresponding to *there* in the sense here used. The position of a verb at the beginning of a sentence, however, often gives the same effect.

150. inquit: this verb is regularly used with direct quotations and stands after one or more words of a quotation; it corresponds to the English "I said," "he said." It is defective, that is, it lacks some forms of person, tense, and mood.

153. hausit, *drew.*

160. cōnstitit: from *cōnsistō.*

161. in, *at,* the usual meaning of *in* with words meaning *to throw.*

venēnō statim absūmptī sunt; reliquī autem, ubi hoc vīdērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt.

16. The Fate of Pholus

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus est, et corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittīs interfectī erant. Magnopere autem mīrātus est, quod tam levī vulnere exanimātī erant, et causam ejus reī quaerēbat. Adiit igitur locum ubi cadāver cujusdam Centaurī jacēbat et sagittam ē vulnere trāxit. Haec tamen, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, ē manibus ejus lāpsa est et pedem leviter vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post breve tempus vī venēnī exanimātus est. Mox Herculēs, quī reliquōs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediit, et magnō cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vīdit. Multīs cum lacrimīs corpus amīcī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyathum vīnī hausit, somnō sē dedit.

17. Fifth Labor—Cleansing the Augean Stables

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem graviōrem imposuit. Augēās quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis magnitūdinis inclūdēbantur. Stabulum autem illuviē ac squālōre obsitum erat; neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam pūrgātum erat. Hoc jussus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnīus

---

164. reliquī, *the others.*

165. fugā, *in flight;* the ablative denotes means, however.

171. sīve . . . deōrum, *either by chance or by design of the gods.*

179. Herculī, *upon Hercules;* the dative is governed by the compound verb *imposuit.*

181. tria mīlia boum, *three thousand cattle;* it must be kept in mind that the singular *mīlle* is usually an adjective, while the plural *mīlia* is always a noun used with a dependent genitive. *Boum* is the genitive plural of *bōs*.

183. neque umquam, *never.*

diēī pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operae, negōtium suscēpit. Prīmum, magnō labōre fossam duodēvīgintī pedum fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrum stabulī perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrum perrūpit, aquam in stabulum immīsit et tālī modō, contrā opīniōnem omnium, opus cōnfēcit.

18. Sixth Labor—The Birds of Stymphalus

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; jusserat enim eum Eurystheus avēs Stymphālidēs

---

185. erat multae operae, *was one of great labor;* another genitive of description standing in the predicate, as in line 107.

186. duodēvīgintī pedum: the genitive of description with numerals is regularly employed to express measure. The reference is to width.

---

1. Give the principal parts of *jubeō, referō, trādō, currō*. 2. Decline in full the phrase *illud tempus*. 3. What form is *bibentem*, line 158? 4. Give the ablative singular of *fossa, antrum, nōmen, aditus, diēs*. 5. Where was Arcadia? 6. Give the derivation and meaning of the English word "vim".

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aditus	levis	ferō	celeriter
bracchium	nōtus	jaceō	deinde
cornū	novus	mīror	fortiter
cursus	nūllus	obtineō	suprā
facultās	reliquus	perterreō	umquam
mors	vīvus	petō	unde
negōtium		prōgredior	
opus	aperiō	prōjiciō	etsī
palūs	coepī	relinquō	
pellis	committō	sequor	contrā
vēstīgium	cōnsequor	spectō	praeter
	cōnsistō	trahō	
ingēns	currō		

necāre. Hae avēs rōstra aēnea habēbant, et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit; in hōc autem lacū, quī nōn procul erat ab oppidō, avēs habitābant. Nūlla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās. Lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē līmō cōnstitit; Herculēs igitur neque pedibus neque lintre prōgredī potuit.

Tandem, postquam magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Vulcānum sē contulit auxiliumque ab eō petiit. Vulcānus, quī ā fabrīs maximē colēbātur, crepundia, quae ipse ex aere fabricātus erat, Herculī dedit. Hīs Herculēs dīrum crepitum fēcit, et avēs perterritae āvolāvērunt; ille autem, dum āvolant, magnum numerum eōrum sagittīs trānsfīxit.

19. Seventh Labor—The Cretan Bull

Tum jussit Herculem Eurystheus taurum quendam ferōcissimum ex īnsulā Crētā vīvum referre. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit et, cum prīmum ventus idōneus fuit, solvit. Ubi tamen īnsulae jam appropinquābat, magna tempestās subitō coörta est, nāvisque cursum tenēre nōn poterat. Nautae paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuērunt; tantus timor

---

193. carne: from *carō;* the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, take as their object an ablative, not an accusative.

196. appropinquandī: a gerund in the genitive case, like *respīrandī*, line 97.

197. cōnstitit: from *cōnstō.*

198. pedibus, *on foot;* ablative of means, here suggesting in addition the idea of manner.

206. ferōcissimum, *very savage.* The translation of the superlative by *very* is frequently necessary.

208. cum prīmum, *as soon as.* With this phrase, as with *ubi*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, the perfect indicative is most frequently employed, as explained in the note on Perseus, 12.

solvit, *set sail.*

209. īnsulae: the verb *appropinquō* takes either a dative, as here, or *ad* with an accusative.

animōs eōrum occupāverat. Herculēs, tamen, etsī nāvigandī imperītus erat, haudquāquam territus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōnsecūta est, et nautae, quī sē ex timōre jam recēperant, nāvem incolumem ad terram perdūxērunt. Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus est, et, ubi ad rēgem Crētae vēnit, causam veniendī docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vīdit, et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, cornua ejus prehendit. Tum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit et cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

20. Eighth Labor — Capture of the Horses of Diomede

Postquam ex īnsulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est et equōs Diomēdis redūcere jussus. Hī equī carne hominum vēscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crūdēlissimus, iīs prōjiciēbat peregrīnōs omnēs quī in eam regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magnā celeritāte in Thrāciam contendit et hōs equōs ab Diomēde postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs, īrā commōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver ejus equīs prōjicī jussit.

Ita mīra rērum commūtātiō facta est; is enim quī anteā multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, omnēs quī eam regiōnem incolēbant maximā laetitiā affectī sunt, et Herculī meritam grātiam referēbant. Nōn modo maximīs honōribus et praemiīs eum decorāvērunt, sed rēgnum etiam eī obtulērunt.

---

212. nāvigandī imperītus, *ignorant of, unskilled in, navigation.* The genitive of the gerund here depends upon an adjective; in line 196 it was used with a noun, *facultās.*

215. sē recēperant, *had recovered.*

225. carne: why ablative? See note on line 193.

234. meritam grātiam referēbant: for the translation consult the note on Perseus, 86.

Ille tamen rēgnum accipere nōlēbat et, postquam ad mare rediit, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit; deinde idōneam tempestātem nactus, sine morā ē portū solvit et paulō post equōs in lītus Argolicum exposuit.

21. Ninth Labor — The Girdle of Hippolyte

Gēns Amāzonum dīcitur omnīnō ex mulieribus cōnstitisse. Hae summam scientiam reī mīlitāris habēbant et maximam virtūtem praebēbant; nam etiam cum virīs proelium committere audēbant. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit celeberrimum, quem Mārs eī dederat. Admēta autem, Eurystheī fīlia, fāmam dē hōc balteō accēperat, et eum possidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eurystheus igitur Herculem jussit cōpiās cōgere et bellum Amāzonibus īnferre. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsit et, postquam magna multitūdō convēnit, eōs dēlēgit quī maximum ūsum in rē mīlitārī habēbant.

22. The Girdle Refused

Hīs virīs Herculēs causam itineris exposuit; illī auctōritāte ejus adductī iter cum eō facere cōnstituērunt. Tum cum iīs

---

238. nāvem occupāvit, *went on board his ship.*

ad nāvigandum, *for sailing;* one of the commonest uses of the gerund is the accusative with *ad* in expressions of purpose.

239. tempestātem, *weather;* with what meaning has the word been used previously? Compare Perseus, 7.

240. nactus: from *nancīscor.* The past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning.

paulō post: see note on line 27.

242. cōnstitisse: from *cōnstō.*

243. reī mīlitāris, *military science, art of war.*

244. proelium committere, *to engage in battle.*

249. bellum Amāzonibus īnferre, *to make war on the Amazons.*

253. Hīs virīs: dative of indirect object.

auctōritāte: ablative of cause.

quibus persuāserat nāvem cōnscendit et, ventum idōneum nactus, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis appulit. Postquam in fīnēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium ad Hippolytam mīsit, quī causam veniendī docuit et balteum poposcit. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere volēbat, quod dē Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; quod tamen reliquae Amāzones nōlēbant, negāvit. At Herculēs, ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, bellī fortūnam temptāre cōnstituit.

Proximō igitur diē cōpiās ēdūxit. Tum locum idōneum dēlēgit et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzones quoque cōpiās suās ex castrīs ēdūxērunt et nōn magnō intervāllō aciem īnstrūxērunt.

23. The Battle

Palūs erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutrī tamen initium trānseundī facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs signum dedit et, ubi palūdem trānsiit, proelium commīsit.

Amāzones impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et contrā opīniōnem omnium magnam virtūtem praestitērunt; multōs quidem eōrum occīdērunt, multōs etiam in fugam conjēcērunt. Virī enim novō genere pugnae perturbābantur, nec solitam virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, ubi haec

---

255. quibus: *persuādeō* is one of the special verbs that govern the dative.

256. post paucōs diēs: in this phrase *post* is employed as a preposition.

ad ōstium Thermōdontis: the Thermodon was a river in Pontus, a country on the southern coast of the Black Sea. The Amazons were also represented as dwelling to the north on the river Don.

259. volēbat, *was willing.*

261. nōlēbant: the words *balteum trādere* are to be understood.

265. nōn magnō intervāllō, *at no great distance* (*interval*).

267. nōn magna, *of no great extent.*

neutrī: *neither side,* a rather frequent meaning for the plural of *neuter.*

270. Amāzones magnam virtūtem praestitērunt: the Amazons were said to have ventured to attack the territories of other nations, and to have made their way even into Attica, the district about Athens.

274. nec: translate *and not.*



AN AMAZON

vīdit, dē suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coepit. Mīlitēs igitur vehementer cohortātus ad prīstinam virtūtem tantum dēdecus dēprecātus est; quibus verbīs animī omnium ērēctī sunt; nam multī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī erant, proelium sine morā redintegrāvērunt.

24. Defeat of the Amazons

Diū et ācriter pugnātum est; tandem tamen ad sōlis occāsum magna commūtātiō rērum facta est, et mulierēs terga vertērunt atque fugā salūtem petiērunt. Multae autem vulneribus dēfessae, dum fugiunt, captae sunt; in quō numerō ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam clēmentiam praestitit et, postquam balteum accēpit, lībertātem omnibus captīvīs dedit. Post haec sociōs ad mare redūxit et, quod nōn multum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit. Nāvem igitur cōnscendit et, tempestātem idōneam nactus, statim solvit. Antequam tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad urbem Trojam nāvem appellere cōnstituit; frūmentum enim quod sēcum habēbat jam dēficere coeperat.

---

275. Mīlitēs . . . dēprecātus est, *urged his soldiers to (display) their old-time courage (and) deplored*, etc.

277. quibus: translate by a demonstrative, *these.*

278. etiam quī, *even those who.*

280. Diū . . . pugnātum est, *the battle was long and fierce;* literally, *it was fought long and fiercely.*

ad sōlis occāsum, *about sunset.*

286. haec, *this.*

nōn multum aestātis, *not much of the summer; multum* is neuter of the adjective used as a noun.

290. Trojam: another example of an appositive where English would use a phrase with *of.*

---

1. What is the Latin for "after a few days"? 2. What part of speech is *procul*? 3. Give a synopsis of *dō* and *cōnsūmō* in the third person singular, active voice. 4. Give the gerunds of *videō* and *veniō* in all cases. 5. Conjugate *nōlō* in the present and imperfect indicative. 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "itinerary."

25. Laomedon and the Sea Monster

Lāomedōn quīdam illō tempore rēgnum Trojae obtinēbat; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, quod Troja nōndum moenia habēbat, ad hoc opus auxilium obtulerant. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōnfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat persolvere.

Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam īrātī, mōnstrum quoddam mīsērunt speciē horribilī, quod cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs pecudēsque vorābat. Trojānī igitur, timōre perterritī, in urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex agrīs intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, hīs rēbus commōtus, ōrāculum cōnsuluit; ā deō autem jussus est fīliam Hēsionem mōnstrō objicere.

26. The Rescue of Hesione

Lāomedōn, ubi hoc respōnsum renūntiātum est, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Sed tamen, quod cīvēs suōs tantō perīculō

---

301. continēbantur: here equivalent to *sē continēbant, were confining themselves.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aestās	ūsus	dēficiō	supersum
auctōritās		dēspērō	trānseō
commūtātiō	dēfessus	ēdūcō	
cruciātus	imperītus	ēvocō	ācriter
genus	incolumis	īnferō	anteā
initium	neuter	mātūrō	modo
mulier	prīstinus	nancīscor	quidem
occāsus		negō	quoque
portus	audeō	perturbō	
rōstrum	cohortor	poscō	cum
signum	collocō	postulō	
socius	cōnstō	praebeō	
supplicium	coörior	redintegrō	

līberāre volēbat, ōrāculō pārēre cōnstituit et diem sacrificiō dīxit. Sed, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, Herculēs tempore opportūnissimō Trojam attigit; ipsō enim temporis pūnctō quō puella catēnīs vīncta ad lītus dēdūcēbātur ille nāvem appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvī ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur certior factus est; tum, īrā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit et auxilium suum obtulit. Rēx libenter ejus auxilium accēpit; deinde Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudiō fīliam suam accēpit, et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam rettulit.

27. Tenth Labor — The Oxen of Geryon

Post haec jussus est Herculēs ad īnsulam Erythīam īre bovēsque Gēryonis arcessere. Rēs erat summae difficultātis, quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite custōdiēbantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem praebēbat; habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē conjūncta. Herculēs tamen, etsī intellegēbat perīculum magnum esse, negōtium suscēpit, et, postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam partem Libyae pervēnit quae Eurōpae proxima est. Ibi in utrāque parte fretī quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dīvidit columnās cōnstituit, quae posteā Herculis Columnae appellātae sunt.

---

307. ōrāculō: dative with the special verb *pārēre.*

sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice,* dative.

309. ipsō . . . temporis pūnctō quō, *at the very moment at which.*

312. certior factus est, *was informed;* literally, the words mean *was made more certain.*

322. inter sē, *together, to one another.*

323. perīculum magnum esse, *that the danger was great;* an example of indirect discourse.

325. Eurōpae: dative, depending on the adjective *proxima.*

in utrāque parte, *on both sides.*

327. Herculis Columnae: usually referred to as the Pillars of Hercules; the Rock of Gibraltar and a hill on the opposite side of the Straits doubtless gave rise to this legend.

28. The Golden Ship

Dum hīc morātur, Herculēs magnum incommodum ex calōre sōlis accipiēbat. Tandem igitur, īrā commōtus, arcum suum intendit et sōlem sagittīs petiit. Sōl tamen, audāciam virī admīrātus, lintrem auream eī dedit. Herculēs hoc dōnum libentissimē accēpit; nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenīre potuerat. Tum lintrem dēdūxit et, ventum nactus idōneum, post breve tempus ad īnsulam pervēnit. Postquam ex incolīs cognōvit dē locō ubi bovēs erant, eō statim profectus est et ā rēge Gēryone bovēs postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs et rēgem ipsum et gigantem Eurytiōnem interfēcit.

29. A Miraculous Hail-Storm

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniam et Liguriam compellere cōnstituit. Postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs ex īnsulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per fīnēs eōrum iter facit, magnīs cōpiīs convēnērunt, atque eum longius prōgredī prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficultātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs superiōribus cōnstiterant, et saxa tēlaque in eum conjiciēbant. Ille quidem paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat; sed tem-

---

330. petiit, *attacked,* a somewhat infrequent meaning of the verb.

331. admīrātus, *admiring;* the past participles of certain deponent verbs are frequently best rendered by an English present participle.

335. eō: an adverb.

337. et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

342. fīnēs: not *boundaries.*

magnīs cōpiīs, *with large forces,* ablative of accompaniment; in expressing accompaniment *cum* may be omitted in military expressions if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

343. eum . . . prōgredī prohibēbant, *tried to prevent him from proceeding.* The infinitive with subject accusative often depends on *prohibeō.* The imperfect tense here denotes an attempted action.

345. cōnstiterant: from *cōnsistō.*

346. quidem: this word often means *it is true, to be sure;* it is then followed in the next sentence by some word denoting opposition or contrast, here *sed, but, nevertheless.*

pore opportūnissimō Juppiter imbrem lapidum ingentium ē caelō dēmīsit. Hī magnā vī cecidērunt et magnum numerum Ligurum occīdērunt; ipse tamen Herculēs, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit, nihil incommodī cēpit.

30. Passage of the Alps

Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt, Herculēs quam celerrimē prōgressus est et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs pervēnit. Necesse erat hōs trānsīre, quod in Italiam bovēs dūcere volēbat; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis. Hī enim montēs, quī Galliam ulteriōrem ab Italiā dīvidunt, nive perennī teguntur; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque pābulum in his regiōnibus invenīrī potest. Herculēs igitur, antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et pābulī comparāvit, et bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus trēs diēs cōnsūmpserat, quārtō diē profectus est et contrā omnium opīniōnem, bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

31. Cacus Steals the Oxen

Post breve tempus ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit; illō tamen tempore nūlla erat urbs in eō locō. Rōma enim nōndum

---

349. in tālibus rēbus: *i.e.*, when favored with divine help.

350. cōnsuēvit: the force of the tenses of this verb is explained in the note on line 32.

nihil incommodī, *no harm;* literally *nothing of harm.*

351. quam celerrimē, *as rapidly as possible.*

355. Galliam ulteriōrem: *i.e.*, Gaul north of the Alps; the valley of the Po in Italy was also inhabited at one time by Gallic tribes and was known to the Romans as *Gallia citerior, Nearer Gaul.*

356. quam ob causam, *for this reason;* for the position of the preposition see the note on *hōc in templō*, line 73.

362. Tiberim: a few third declension nouns have *-im* instead of *-em* as the ending of the accusative singular.

---

1. Give the principal parts of *praestō, solvō, prōpōnō, proficīscor.* 2. Decline *cīvis* and *lītus.* 3. Give the ablative plural of *vulnus, annus, rēx, rēgnum, diēs.* 4. Conjugate *mittō* and *jubeō* in the future active. 5. Who were the Amazons? 6. Who was Neptune? 7. What was the Hydra? 8. How many labors was Hercules to perform?

condita erat. Herculēs, itinere fessus, cōnstituit ibi paucōs diēs morārī atque sē ex labōribus recreāre. Haud procul a valle ubi bovēs pāscēbantur antrum erat, in quō gigās quīdam, nōmine Cācus, tum habitābat. Hic speciem terribilem praebēbat, nōn modo quod ingentī magnitūdine corporis erat, sed quod ignem ex ōre expīrābat. Cācus autem dē adventū Herculis fāmam accēperat; noctū igitur vēnit et, dum Herculēs dormit, quattuor pulcherrimōrum boum abripuit. Hōs caudīs in antrum trāxit; hōc enim modō putāvit Herculem vēstīgiīs dēceptum bovēs nōn inventūrum esse.

32. Hercules Discovers the Theft

Posterō diē, simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs fūrtum animadvertit, et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat. Hōs tamen nusquam reperīre poterat, nōn modo quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, sed quod vēstīgiīs falsīs dēceptus est. Tandem, ubi magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, cum reliquīs bōbus prōgredī cōnstituit. At, dum proficīscī parat, ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit mūgīre coepit. Extemplō iī quī in antrō inclūsī erant mūgītum reddidērunt; hōc modō Herculēs locum invēnit. Tum vehementer īrātus, ad spēluncam quam celerrimē sē contulit. At Cācus saxum ingēns dējēcerat et aditum spēluncae omnīnō obstrūxerat.

---

368. ingentī magnitūdine: ablative of description; what other case might have been employed?

373. Herculem . . . nōn inventūrum esse, *that Hercules, deceived by the tracks, would not find;* see note on line 323.

374. diē: ablative denoting time at which. What idea of time is expressed by *diēs* in line 365?

375. bovēs āmissōs, *the lost oxen;* the participle is employed as an adjective.

380. ūnus ē bōbus: with cardinal numbers and with *quīdam* an ablative with *ex* or *dē* is more common than a genitive; the latter, however, sometimes occurs, as in line 371.

383. quam celerrimē: see note on line 351.

33. Recovery of the Oxen

Herculēs, quoniam nūllum alium introitum reperīre poterat, hoc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ejus magnitūdinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū labōrābat, neque quidquam efficere poterat. Tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum āmōvit et spēluncam patefēcit. Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō cum gaudiō cōnspexit. Sed Cācum ipsum vix cernere potuit, quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre suō ēvomēbat. Herculēs, inūsitātā speciē turbātus, breve tempus haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrūpit et collum mōnstrī bracchiīs complexus est. Ille, etsī multum relūctātus est, nūllō modō sē līberāre potuit; et, quod nūlla facultās respīrandī dabātur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est.

34. Eleventh Labor — The Golden Apples of the Hesperides

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprā nārrāvimus. Jussit enim eum aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferre. Hesperides autem nymphae erant quaedam fōrmā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant, et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Jūnōne commissa erant. Multī hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inductī, haec pōma auferre

---

387. neque, *but not;* occasionally *neque* is used as the equivalent of *sed nōn* instead of *et nōn.*

391. mōre suō, *according to his custom;* the ablative is sometimes employed to express the idea of "in accordance with."

392. breve tempus: accusative of duration of time.

396. quod (*a thing*) *which,* or *as;* neuter, because the relative refers to the fact in *exanimātus est.*

398. Herculī: see note on line 179.

quam: supply *eī erant.*

400. quaedam: with *nymphae.*

jam anteā cōnātī erant; rēs tamen difficillima erat. Nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; praetereā dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habēbat, portam hortī dīligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat summae difficultātis, nōn modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs situm hortī omnīnō ignōrābat.

35. Atlas, Who Upheld the Heavens

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōnstituit tamen Eurystheō pārēre; et simul ac jussa ejus accēpit, proficīscī mātūrāvit. Multōs mercātōrēs interrogāverat dē sēde Hesperidum; nihil tamen certum reperīre potuerat. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa perīcula subiit; tandem, postquam in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsit, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hīc stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī magnitūdine corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umerīs suīs, sustinēbat et in terram dēcidere prohibēbat. Herculēs, tantum labōrem magnopere mīrātus, post paulō in colloquium cum

---

408. Herculī, *had imposed upon Hercules; Herculī* is a dative governed by the special verb *imperāverat.*

412. Eurystheō: what case is governed by verbs of obeying?

417. orbis: supply *terrārum;* the two words together mean *the world.*

419. ita trādunt, *so legend has it, as the legend goes;* literally *so they hand down.*

umerīs: ablative of means, but to be translated *on his shoulders.*

caelum dēcidere, *from falling upon the earth;* see note on line 343.

421. mīrātus, *wondering at.*

---

1. Conjugate *possum* in the present, imperfect, and future. 2. Decline *diēs.* 3. Conjugate *veniō* in the past perfect. 4. Give the principal parts of *auferō, reddō, irrumpō.* 5. What is the meaning of *quam celerrimē*? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "ignite."

Atlante vēnit et, postquam causam itineris exposuit, auxilium ejus petiit.

36. A Substitute

Atlās autem potuit Herculī maximē prōdesse; ille enim, quoniam ipse erat pater Hesperidum, situm hortī bene scīvit. Postquam igitur audīvit causam itineris Herculis, "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ībō; ego sī hortābor, fīliae certē pōma suā sponte trādent." Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, magnopere gāvīsus est; cupiēbat enim rem sine vī fierī. Cōnstituit igitur oblātum auxilium accipere. Sed quod Atlās abitūrus erat, necesse erat aliquem caelum umerīs sustinēre. Hoc igitur negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs erat

---

424. Herculī: dative with *prōdesse, benefit.*

427. hortābor: supply *eās* as object.

suā sponte, *of their own accord.*

429. gāvīsus est: from *gaudeō.*

430. abitūrus erat, *was about to go away;* the future active participle is often thus used with a form of the verb *sum.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

colloquium	accidō	efficiō	turbō
cupiditās	āmittō	indūcō	
incommodum	arcessō	intellegō	longē
lapis	auferō	memorō	noctū
mercātor	cadō	moror	quam
ōs	circumdō	pāreō	ut
pābulum	condō	patefaciō	
	conjungō	putō	quoniam
posterus	cōnor	renūntiō	
ulterior	custōdiō	subeō	
uterque	dēcipiō	tegō	
	dēmittō	trādūcō	

summī labōris, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūrēs diēs sōlus sustinuit.

37. Return of Atlas

Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō ubi vēnit, causam veniendī exposuit et ā fīliābus suīs pōma vehementer petīvit. Illae diū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Jūnōne, dē quā ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba iīs persuāsit et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs intereā, quī plūrēs diēs expectāverat neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēperat, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem vīdit redeuntem, et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit.

38. Twelfth Labor — Cerberus, the Three-headed Dog

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus modo relinquēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Eurystheus Herculī praecēperat. Eurystheus autem, quod Herculem magnopere timēbat, sē ab eō in perpetuum līberāre volēbat. Jussit igitur eum canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere.

---

435. pauca mīlia passuum, *a few miles.* The use of *mīlle* in the plural is explained in the note on line 181.

436. Eō: an adverb.

437. fīliābus: the noun *fīlia* has *fīliābus* (not *fīliīs*) as the dative and ablative plural; *dea* (*goddess*) also has *-ābus* as the ending of these cases; in other forms these nouns have the regular endings of the first declension.

439. dictum est, *we have spoken.*

448. quōs Eurystheus Herculī praecēperat, *which Eurystheus had imposed upon Hercules;* the compound verb *praecipiō* is transitive and so takes both a dative, *Herculī*, and an accusative, *quōs*.

450. in perpetuum, *forever;* the neuter adjective is used as a noun.

Hoc opus omnium difficillimum erat; nēmō enim umquam ex Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat horribilī speciē, quī tria capita serpentibus saevīs cīncta habēbat. Antequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus, nōn aliēnum vidētur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere.

39. Orcus, or Hades, the Abode of the Dead

Dē Orcō, quī īdem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque ē vītā discesserat, mānēs ejus ad Orcum, sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēdūcēbantur. Hujus regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse dīcitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cujus uxor erat Prōserpina, Jovis et Cereris fīlia. Mānēs igitur, ā Mercuriō dēductī, prīmum ad rīpam veniēbant Stygis flūminis, quō continētur rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hoc omnēs trānsīre necesse erat quī in Orcum veniēbant. Quoniam tamen in hōc flūmine nūllus pōns erat, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam, quī cum parvā scaphā ad rīpam expectābat. Charōn prō hōc officiō mercēdem postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam sine hōc praemiō trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam mōs erat apud antīquōs nummum in ōre mortuī pōnere; eō modō, ut putābant, mortuus ad Stygem veniēns pretium trājectūs solvere poterat. Iī autem quī post mortem in terrā nōn sepultī

---

455. aliēnum, *out of place.*

456. pauca, *a few things.*

458. īdem, *also,* a frequent meaning of the word.

459. Ut, *when.* **quisque,** *each person.*

mānēs: a plural noun, but to be translated as singular.

460. Mercuriō: one of the functions ascribed to the god Mercury was that of guide of souls into the lower world.

464. omnēs trānsīre necesse erat, *all must cross.* The subject of *erat* is the infinitive clause *omnēs trānsīre.*

465. in (*flūmine*), *over.*

469. mōs erat . . . pōnere, *it was the custom to place; pōnere* is the subject of *erat.*

470. mortuī, *of the dead person.*

erant Stygem trānsīre nōn potuērunt, sed in lītore per centum annōs errāre coāctī sunt; tum dēmum licuit Orcum intrāre.

40. The Realm of Pluto

Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alterum veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellātum est. Ex hōc flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur. Quod ubi fēcerant, rēs omnēs in vītā gestās ē memoriā dēpōnēbant. Dēnique ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cujus introitus ā cane Cerberō custōdiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestītū indūtus, cum uxōre Prōserpinā in soliō sedēbat. Stābant etiam nōn procul ab eō locō tria alia solia, in quibus sedēbant Mīnōs, Rhadamanthus, et Aeacus, jūdicēs īnferōrum. Hī mortuīs jūs dīcēbant et praemia poenāsque cōnstituēbant. Bonī enim in Campōs Ēlysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbī autem in Tartarum mittēbantur, et multīs variīsque suppliciīs ibi excruciābantur.

---

475. intrāre: subject of *licuit.*

478. Quod ubi fēcerant, *and when they had done this.* The Latin relative pronoun often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. When thus used it is often followed by *ubi*, as in this instance, or by *cum.* In this use it is translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.

rēs omnēs . . . gestās, freely, *all the experiences of life;* literally, *all things done in life.*

482. Stābant, *there stood;* see note on line 146.

484. mortuīs jūs dīcēbant, *dispensed justice to the dead.*

486. Campōs Ēlysiōs: in early Greek literature the Elysian Fields were spoken of as lying in the far west, at the earth's extremity, or in the Islands of the Blest. At a later time they were represented as a part of the lower world.

---

1. Give the principal parts of *cupiō, capiō, parō, pāreō, fīō.* 2. Give the ablative plural of *mercātor, fīlia, fīlius, orbis.* 3. Give a synopsis of *hortor* in the third person plural. 4. Decline *reditus* in the singular number. 5. What is the case of *iīs*, line 440, and why used? 6. Explain the derivation and meaning of "volition".

41. Charon's Ferry

Herculēs, postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacōniam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat ingentī magnitūdine, per quam (ut trādēbātur) hominēs ad Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō ubi vēnit et ex incolīs situm spēluncae cognōvit, sine morā dēscendere cōnstituit. Nec tamen sōlus hoc iter faciēbat. Mercurius enim et Minerva sē sociōs eī adjūnxerant. Ubi ad rīpam Stygis vēnit, Herculēs scapham Charontis cōnscendit. Quod tamen Herculēs vir erat ingentī magnitūdine corporis, Charōn solvere nōlēbat; arbitrābātur enim tantum pondus scapham suam in mediō flūmine mersūrum esse. Tandem tamen, minīs Herculis territus, Charōn scapham solvit et eum incolumem ad ulteriōrem rīpam perdūxit.

42. The Twelve Labors Accomplished

Postquam flūmen Stygem tālī modō trānsiit, Herculēs in sēdem ipsīus Plūtōnis vēnit et, postquam causam veniendī docuit, ab eō facultātem Cerberum auferendī petīvit. Plūtō, quī dē Hercule fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit et facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Jussit tamen Herculem imperāta Eurystheī facere et posteā Cerberum in Orcum rūrsus redūcere. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cerberum, quem nōn sine magnō perīculō manibus prehenderat, summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit. Eō ubi vēnit, Eurystheus ex ātriō statim refūgit;

---

491. ut trādēbātur: the clause has the same sense as *ita trādunt*, line 419.

492. Eō, *to that place.*

495. sociōs, *as companions.*

498. tantum pondus . . . mersūrum esse, *that such a weight would sink*, etc.

504. auferendī: the genitive of the gerund of a transitive verb may have a direct object, here *Cerberum*.

510. in lūcem, *into the light*, *i.e.*, to the upper world.

tantus pavor animum ejus occupāverat. Postquam autem paulum sē ex timōre recēpit, multīs cum lacrimīs clāmitāvit sē velle mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūcī. Sīc, contrā omnium opīniōnem, duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Eurystheus praecēperat intrā duodecim annōs cōnfectī sunt. Itaque Herculēs, servitūte tandem līberātus, magnō cum gaudiō Thēbās rediit.

43. Nessus, the Centaur

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscrībere longum est. Tandem, jam aetāte prōvectus, Dēianīram, Oeneī fīliam, in mātrimōnium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occīdit. Mōre antīquō necesse erat Herculem ob eam rem in exilium īre; itaque cum uxōre suā ē fīnibus ejus cīvitātis exīre mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, in quō nūllus pōns erat, et dum quaerunt modum trānseundī, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō trānsiit. At Nessus, paulum in aquam prōgressus, ad rīpam subitō revertit et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod ubi animadvertit Herculēs, īrā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfīxit.

---

513. sē recēpit, *recovered.*

514. sē velle: again indirect discourse, *that he wished; velle* in turn governs an infinitive clause, *mōnstrum . . . redūcī.*

518. Thēbās, *to Thebes;* the name of a city without a preposition is used to express the place to which.

519. praeclāra, *famous exploits.*

quae: object of *perscrībere.*

520. longum est, *it would take too long.*

523. Mōre: an ablative expressing accordance, used as in line 391.

529. nandō, *by swimming,* ablative of the gerund expressing means and manner.

531. Quod ubi: the note on line 478 should be consulted.

44. The Poisoned Robe

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfīxus, moriēns humī jacēbat; at nōlēns occāsiōnem Herculem ulcīscendī dīmittere, ita locūtus est. "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis audī: sī vīs amōrem marītī tuī cōnservāre, aliquid sanguinis hujus quī ē pectore meō effunditur sūme ac repōne; tum, sī umquam suspīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem marītī hōc sanguine īnficiēs." Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem, nihil malī suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem Oechaliae, suscēpit et, ubi rēgem ipsum cum fīliīs interfēcit, Iolēn, fīliam Eurytī, captīvam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit. Ibi in terram ēgressus, quod Jovī sacrificāre volēbat, āram cōnstituit. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum īre et vestem albam referre jussit; mōs enim erat apud antīquōs in sacrificandō vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra, arbitrāta Herculem amōrem ergā Iolēn habēre, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī īnfēcit.

45. The Death of Hercules

Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit. Post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia

---

535. Herculem ulcīscendī: the genitive of the gerund with a direct object, as in line 504.

536. morientis, *of one who is dying;* a present participle (from *morior*) used as a noun.

537. aliquid sanguinis hujus, *some of this blood.*

541. nihil malī, *no harm.*

suspicāta, *suspecting.*

544. domum, *home;* the accusative of this noun, like that of the names of cities, is used without a preposition to express the place to which.

549. sacrificandō: ablative of the gerund governed by a preposition.

arbitrāta, *thinking.*

550. Herculem . . . habēre, *that Hercules was in love with Iole.*

membra sēnsit; sed, quod causam ejus reī ignōrābat, magnopere mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem dētrahere cōnātus est. Illa tamen in corpore haesit, neque ūllō modō dīvellī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hoc ubi fēcit, voluit eōs quī circumstābant rogum quam celerrimē accendere. Omnēs diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vēlātus, ā Jove in Olympum abreptus est.

---

562. ignem subdidit, *set fire to* (*the pile*).

---

1. Decline *quisque*. 2. Give a synopsis of *cōgō* in the third person singular, active and passive. 3. Give the principal parts of *cōnferō, dēscendō, cognōscō, polliceor, perscrībō*. 4. Find the derivation and meaning of "conservation." 5. What was the last of the twelve labors of Hercules? 6. What was the result of drinking from the river Lethe? 7. How did Nessus take vengeance on Hercules? 8. What was the name of the dog that guarded the lower world? 9. Who were king and queen of the lower world? 10. What were the Elysian Fields?

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aetās	complūrēs	exeō	sciō
anima	perpetuus	fīō	suspicor
cīvitās	sōlus	hortor	ulcīscor
comes	ūllus	licet	videor
imperium	aliquis	loquor	certē
lūx	quisque	morior	dēnique
mēns		perficiō	sīc
nēmō	absum	polliceor	
pretium	arbitror	pōnō	priusquam
	cōnservō	recūsō	
aliēnus	errō	revertō	ante

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from; by.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go away, go.

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, carry off, steal.

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut off.

absēns, *gen.* **absentis,** absent.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be absent, be distant.

absūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, destroy, kill.

ac, *see* **atque.**

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, kindle, set on fire.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, happen.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, accept.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, recline.

accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, run up, come up.

ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, eager.

acerbus, -a, -um, bitter.

Achaeī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Achaeans.

aciēs, -ēī, F., line of battle.

Ācrisius, -ī, M., Acrisius, *grandfather of Perseus.*

ācriter, *adv.*, vigorously, fiercely.

acuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, sharpen.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward; until; near; at.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring, influence.

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go to, come to, approach.

adeō, *adv.*, to such an extent, so.

adhūc, *adv.*, as yet, still.

aditus, -ūs, M., entrance.

adjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, join to, attach.

adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, help.

Admēta, -ae, F., Admeta, *daughter of Eurystheus.*

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, admire.

adstō, -stāre, -stitī, stand near, stand.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be present, be at hand, be here.

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, M., young man.

adūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, burn, scorch, sear.

advena, -ae, M., stranger.

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come to, approach, arrive at.

adventus, -ūs, M., approach, arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, opposite, in front, facing; unfavorable.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn toward, turn.

Aeacus, -ī, M., Aeacus, *a judge in the lower world.*

aedificium, -ī, N., a building.

aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick.

aegra, *see* **aeger.**

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be sick.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian; *subst.*, M. *pl.*, the Egyptians.

aēneus, -a, -um, of bronze.

āēr, āeris, M., the air.

aes, aeris, N., bronze.

aestās, -ātis, F., summer.

aestāte, in summer.

aetās, -ātis, F., age; lifetime.

Aethiopēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Ethiopians, *a people of Africa.*

afferō, (adferō), afferre, attulī, allātum, bring to, bring.

afficiō (**adficiō**), **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, affect, treat.
ager, **agrī**, M., field, farm, land.
agitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, drive, disturb, move; wave, shake.
agmen, **agminis**, N., column, line, army, band.
agnōscō, **-nōscere**, **-nōvī**, **-nitum**, recognize.
agnus, **-ī**, M., lamb.
agō, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctum**, drive; do; spend, pass.
agricola, **-ae**, M., farmer.
albus, **-a**, **-um**, white.
Alcmēna, **-ae**, F., Alcmena, *mother of Hercules.*
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um**, of another, another's, strange, unfavorable.
aliēnus, **-ī**, M., stranger.
aliquis (**aliquī**), **aliquid**, someone, somebody, something, anyone, anything.
alius, **alia**, **aliud**, another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; *pl.*, **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others.
allātus, *participle of* **afferō**.
alligō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, bind, tie.
Alpēs, **-ium**, F. *pl.*, the Alps *Mountains.*
alter, **altera**, **alterum**, one of two, the other of two, a second, another; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.
altus, **-a**, **-um**, high, tall, deep.
amāmus, we love.
amant, (they) love.
amās, you love.
amat, (he, she, it) loves.
amātor, **-ōris**, M., lover.
Amāzones, **-um**, F. *pl.*, the Amazons, *a fabulous race of women warriors.*
ambrosia, **-ae**, F., ambrosia (*the food of the gods*).
ambulant, (they) walk.
ambulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, walk.
America, **-ae**, F., America.
amīcī, friends.
amīcus, **-a**, **-um**, friendly.
amīcus, **-ī**, M., friend.
āmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, lose.
amō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, love.
amoenus, **-a**, **-um**, pleasant.
amor, **-ōris**, M., love.
āmoveō, **-movēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, move away, remove.
Amphinomus, **-ī**, M., Amphinomus, *one of Penelope's suitors.*
amphora, **-ae**, F., jar.
amplector, **amplectī**, **amplexus sum**, embrace; **sē amplectuntur**, they embrace each other.
an, *conj.*, or.
ancilla, **-ae**, F., maid-servant, maid.
Andromeda, **-ae**, F., Andromeda, *the daughter of Cepheus.*
anima, **-ae**, F., breath; life.
animadvertō, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versum**, observe, notice.
animal, **-ālis**, N., animal.
animus, **-ī**, M., mind, spirit.
annōn, *conj.*, or not.
annuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, nod, nod assent.
annus, **-ī**, M., year.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of.
anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before.
antehāc, *adv.*, before this, heretofore.
antequam, *conj.*, before.
Antinous, **-ī**, M., Antinous, *one of Penelope's suitors.*
antīquitus, *adv.*, long ago, in former times.
antīquus, **-a**, **-um**, ancient; *subst.*, M. *pl.*, the ancients.

antrum, -ī, N., cavern.

apage, *interjection,* off with you, begone!

aper, aprī, M., wild boar.

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, open.

aperta, *see* **apertus.**

apertus, -a, -um, open.

Apollō, Apollinis, M., Apollo, *god of archery, prophecy, music, poetry, and medicine.*

appāreō, -ēre, -uī, appear.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, name.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive to, bring to; *with or without* **nāvem,** bring to land, come to land, land.

appetō, -petere, -petīvī *or* **-petiī, -petītum,** approach.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, draw near, approach.

aptē, *adv.,* skillfully, cleverly.

aptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adjust, fit.

apud, *prep. with acc.,* among; at the house of.

aqua, -ae, F., water.

āra, -ae, F., altar.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think.

arbor, -oris, F., tree.

arca, -ae, F., chest, box.

Arcadia, -ae, F., Arcadia, *a district of Greece.*

arcessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītum, summon, bring.

arcus, -ūs, M., bow.

ārdēns, *gen.* **ārdentis,** burning.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, burn.

arēna, *see* **harēna.**

Argolicus, -a, -um, of Argolis (*a district of Greece*).

Argus, -ī, M., Argus, *Ulysses's dog.*

ariēs, -etis, M., ram.

arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.,* arms, weapons.

armātus, -a, -um, armed.

armilla, -ae, F., bracelet.

ars, artis, F., art.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, ascend, climb, mount.

at, *conj.,* but.

Atlās, -antis, M., Atlas, *a giant who held up the heavens on his shoulders.*

atque (*before consonants* **ac**), *conj.,* and, and also.

ātrium, -ī, N., atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house.*

attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, turn toward; **animum attendere,** give attention.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch, reach, arrive at.

auctōritās, -ātis, F., influence, authority.

audācia, -ae, F., boldness, insolence.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to, listen.

aufer, *imperative singular of* **auferō.**

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, carry off, take away, bring away.

Augēās, -ae, M., Augeas, *a king of Elis.*

aureus, -a, -um, of gold, gold (*as adjective*).

auris, -is, F., ear.

aurum, -ī, N., gold.

aut, *conj.,* or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

autem, *conj.* (*never stands first in a sentence*), but, however, on the other hand; furthermore.

auxilium, -ī, N., help, assistance.

avidus, -a, -um, greedy.

avis, avis, F., bird.

āvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly away.

avunculus, -ī, M., a mother's brother, uncle.

avus, -ī, M., grandfather.

B

baculum, -ī, N., wand, staff.
bālātus, -ūs, M., bleating.
balteus, -ī, M., girdle, belt.
barbarī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the barbarians.
barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous.
beātus, -a, -um, happy.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.
bellum, -ī, N., war.
bēlua, -ae, F., wild beast, beast.
bene, *adv.*, well; **bene facere,** treat kindly (*with dative*).
beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, favor.
benigna, *see* **benignus.**
benignē, *adv.*, kindly.
benignus, -a, -um, kind.
bēstia, -ae, F., beast, wild animal.
bibō, bibere, bibī, drink.
biceps, *gen.* **bicipitis,** two-headed.
bona, *see* **bonus.**
bonus, -a, -um, good.
bōs, bovis, M. *and* F., bull, ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle, oxen.
bracchium, -ī, N., forearm, arm.
brevī, *adv.*, in a short time.
brevis, -e, short, brief.
Britannia, -ae, F., Great Britain.
Būsīris, -idis, M., Busiris, *a king of Egypt.*

C

Cācus, -ī, M., Cacus, *a giant slain by Hercules.*
cadāver, -eris, N., a dead body.
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall.
caecus, -a, -um, blind.
caedēs, caedis, F., killing, slaughter.
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut.
caelum, -ī, N., sky, heaven.
calathus, -ī, M., basket.
calidus, -a, -um, hot, warm.
callidissimus, -a, -um, shrewdest, wisest.
callidus, -a, -um, skillful, shrewd, wise.
calor, -ōris, M., heat.
campus, -ī, M., plain.
cancer, -crī, M., crab.
canis, canis, M., *and* F., dog.
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sing; crow.
caper, caprī, M., goat.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, seize; capture, receive; **cōnsilium capere,** to form a plan.
captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner.
caput, capitis, N., head.
cāra, *see* **cārus.**
carō, carnis, F., meat; flesh; *plur.*, pieces of meat.
cārus, -a, -um, dear, precious.
casa, -ae, F., cottage, hut.
caseus, -ī, M., cheese.
castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt.
castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp.
cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, chance.
catēna, -ae, F., chain.
cauda, -ae, F., tail.
causa, -ae, F., cause, reason; *abl.* **causā,** *preceded by genitive,* for the sake (of), for the purpose (of).
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, be careful, take care, beware of.
caverna, -ae, F., cavern, cave.
celeber, -bris, -bre, famous.
celeritās, -ātis, F., speed, swiftness.
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly.
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal.
cēna, -ae, F., dinner.
Cēnaeum, -ī, N., Cenaeum, *a promontory of the Island of Euboea.*
cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dine.
cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, think, believe.

centaurus, -ī, M., a Centaur, *a mythical creature with a horse's body and a man's head.*

centum, *numeral adj.*, hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion.

Cēpheus, -ī, M., Cepheus, *a king of Ethiopia.*

Cerberus, -ī, M., Cerberus, *the watch-dog of the lower world.*

Cerēs, -eris, F., Ceres, *goddess of agriculture.*

cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum (crētum), discern, see.

certāmen, -inis, N., contest.

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely.

certus, -a, -um, certain, definite; **prō certō,** as certain.

cervus, -ī, M., stag, deer.

cēterī, -ae, -a, the other, the rest of, the others.

Charōn, -ontis, M., Charon, *the ferryman over the River Styx.*

cibus, -ī, M., food.

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, encircle.

Circē, Circae, F., Circe, *an enchantress.*

circulus, -ī, M., circle; ring, hoop.

circum, *prep. with acc.*, around.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, put around, surround.

circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look around.

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, —, stand around.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround.

cithara, -ae, F., cithara.

cīvis, cīvis, M., citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis, F., the state, state.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, shout, cry out.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, shout, cry out.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shout, cry.

clāra, *see* **clārus.**

clārus, -a, -um, bright, clear; famous.

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close; enclose.

clausus, -a, -um, closed.

clāva, -ae, F., club.

clēmentia, -ae, F., mercy, clemency.

coepī, coepisse, coeptum, began, has begun.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, think.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, find out, know, recognize.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect; compel.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge on.

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tie together.

collis, collis, M., hill.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, place, put.

colloquium, -ī, N., interview, conversation.

collum, -ī, N., neck.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate, worship.

columna, -ae, F., column, pillar.

comedō, -edere, -ēdī, -ēsum, eat up.

comes, -itis, M. *and* F., companion.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust; **proelium committere,** begin battle, engage in battle.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, arouse, stir, alarm.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., change.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare.

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, clasp, embrace.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill.

complūrēs, -plūra *or* **-plūria,** several, a number of.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize.

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, squeeze.

cōnātus, -ūs, M., attempt, effort.

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, found, establish.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum, bring together; **sē cōnferre,** betake oneself, go.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, complete; weaken, overcome.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, strengthen, establish.

cōnfricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rub together.

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw, hurl; **in fugam conjicere,** put to flight.

conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, join.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, climb; go on board.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consecrate.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow, overtake.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, retain, preserve.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down.

cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan, design, advice.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, take a stand.

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight, view.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, observe, see.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, erect, set up; determine, decide upon.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statūrus, consist.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; *perfect,* be accustomed.

cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, consult.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, consume, spend.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, hasten, contend.

continēns, -entis, F., continent, mainland.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, shut in, confine.

continuus, -a, -um, successive.

contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, turn, twist.

contrā, *prep. with acc.,* against, contrary to.

contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy.

contumēlia, -ae, F., disrespect.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, assemble, come together.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn.

convīvium, -ī, N., banquet.

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, arise.

cōpia, -ae, F., plenty, supply; *plural,* forces, troops.

coquus, -ī, M., cook.

Cornēlia, -ae, F., Cornelia (*name of a woman or girl*).

cornū, -ūs, N., horn; flank *or* wing (*of an army*).

corpus, -oris, N., body.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize.

cotīdiē, *adv.,* daily, every day.

crās, *adv.,* tomorrow.

Crassus, -ī, m., Crassus (*name of a ram in Polyphemus's flock*).

crātēra, -ae, f., bowl.

crēdibilis, -e, credible.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, believe, trust.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, elect, choose.

Creōn, -ontis, m., Creon, *a king of Thebes.*

crepitus, -ūs, m., noise.

crepundia, -ōrum, n. *pl.*, a child's rattle, a rattle.

Crēta, -ae, f., Crete, *an island in the Mediterranean Sea.*

cruciātus, -ūs, m., torture.

crūdēlis, -e, cruel.

crūs, crūris, n., leg.

cubiculum, -ī, n., bedroom.

cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubitum, lie down, lie.

cuiquam, *dative of* **quisquam.**

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame, censure.

culter, -trī, m., knife.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.

cum, *conj.*, when.

cum prīmum, as soon as.

cumulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pile up.

cūnae, -ārum, f. *pl.*, cradle.

cupiditās, -ātis, f., desire.

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, wish, desire.

cupit, (he, she, it) wishes.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, -ae, f., care, anxiety.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, care for, take care of.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run.

cursus, -ūs, m., running, course.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, guard.

cyathus, -ī, m., cup.

Cyclōps, Cyclōpis, m., a Cyclops.

D

Danaē, *Greek gen. form* **Danaēs,** f., Danaë, *mother of Perseus.*

dant, (they) give.

dat, (he, she, it) gives.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; regarding, concerning, about.

dea, -ae, f., goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought.

dēbilis, -e, weak.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall down.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, deceive.

decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn, honor.

dēdecus, -decoris, n., disgrace.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, conduct; **nāvem dēdūcere,** to launch a ship.

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, defend.

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, exhausted.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail, run out.

Dēianīra, -ae, f., Deianira, *wife of Hercules.*

deinde, *adv.*, next, then.

dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw down.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, delight.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy, blot out.

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deliberate.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select.

Delphicus, -a, -um, of Delphi, at Delphi.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send down, let down, lower, drop.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, take down.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, show.

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length.

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last.

dēnsus, -a, -um, dense.

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deplore, lament.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, put down, deposit, lay aside, give up.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, deprecate.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, come down, descend.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, desert, abandon.

dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, desire, long for; miss.

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum, jump down.

dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situm, cease.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, desist from.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, despair, despair of.

dēsuper, *adv.*, from above.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw off, strip off.

deus, -ī, M., a god; *plur.* **dī,** the gods.

dēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, turn aside.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour.

dextra, -ae, F., right hand, right (*as opposed to left*).

dī, *plural of* **deus.**

Diāna, -ae, F., Diana, *goddess of hunting.*

dīc, *imperative singular of* **dīcō.**

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say; appoint.

diēs, -ēī, M. *and* F., day.

difficilis, -e, difficult.

difficultās, -ātis, F., difficulty.

difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty; **haud difficulter,** with no difficulty.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, spread, diffuse.

dīligenter, *adv.*, industriously, diligently.

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, send out; lose.

Diomēdēs, -is, M., Diomede, *a king of Thrace.*

dīrus, -a, -um, dreadful.

dīs, *dative and ablative plural of* **deus.**

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart, go away.

discimus, we learn.

discit, (he, she, it) learns.

discō, -ere, didicī, learn.

discus, -ī, M., discus, quoit.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, station, arrange.

dissimilis, -e, unlike.

dissimulātus, -a, -um, concealed, disguised, pretended.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal.

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long.

dīvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear away.

dīves, *gen.* **dīvitis,** rich.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach; explain.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, suffer; grieve.

dolor, -ōris, M., sorrow, grief, pain.

dolus, -ī, M., trick, treachery, deceit.

domī, at home.

domina, -ae, F., mistress, madam.

dominus, -ī, M., master.

domus, -ūs (-ī), F., home, house; **domum** (*as place to which*), homeward.

dōnec, *conj.*, until.

dōnum, -ī, N., gift.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep.

dracō, -ōnis, M., serpent, dragon.

dubium, -ī, N., doubt.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful; **haud dubius,** unmistakable.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, bring; marry.

dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; **jam dūdum,** this long time, a long time ago.

dulcis, -e, sweet, delicious.

dulcissimus, -a, -um, sweetest, very delicious.

dum, *conj.*, while.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, *numeral adj.*, twelve.

duodēvīgintī, *numeral adj.*, eighteen.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hold out, endure.

dūrus, -a, -um, hard.

dux, ducis, M., leader.

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from within, out of, from.

ecce, *interjection*, behold, see!

edepol, *interjection*, by heavens. really!

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, appoint.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give out, give forth.

edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out.

edunt, (they) eat.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, render, make.

efflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe out; **animam efflāre,** die.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, flee, escape.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour out; **sanguinem effundere,** shed blood.

ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go out, come out; disembark.

ēheu, *interjection*, alas, oh! oh dear!

eia, *interjection*, ah!

ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum, choose, select.

Ēlis, -idis, F., Elis, *a district in Greece.*

Ēlysius, -a, -um, Elysian.

ēn, *interjection*, ah! there!

enim, *conj.* (*never stands first in its clause*), for; **at enim,** but indeed.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, proclaim, reveal.

eō, īre, iī *or* **īvī, itum,** go.

eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.

epistula, -ae, F., letter.

equidem, *adv.*, indeed, for my part; *sometimes merely emphasizing the pronoun I.*

equus, -ī, M., horse.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward, for.

Ergīnus, -ī, M., Erginus, *a king of the Minyae.*

ergō, *adv.*, therefore.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, lift up, arouse, encourage.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander.

error, -ōris, M., wandering.

ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, instruct.

Erymanthius, -a, -um, Erymanthian.

Erythīa, -ae, F., Erythia, *an island.*
est, (he, she, it) is.
este (*imperative plural of* **sum**), be.
ēsuriō, -īre, be hungry, hunger.
et, *conj.*, and.
etiam, *adv.*, also, even.
Etrūscī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Etruscans.
Etrūscus, -a, -um, Etruscan.
etsī, *conj.*, though, although, even if.
euge, *interjection*, good, hurrah!
Eumaeus, -ī, M., Eumaeus, *a servant of Ulysses.*
Eunomus, -ī, M., Eunomus, *a youth slain by Hercules.*
Eurōpa, -ae, F., Europe.
Eurylochus, -ī, M., Eurylochus, *one of the companions of Ulysses.*
Eurystheus, -ī, M., Eurystheus, *a king of Tiryns.*
Eurytiōn, -ōnis, M., Eurytion, *a giant.*
Eurytus, -ī, M., Eurytus, *a king of Oechalia.*
ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, escape.
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, challenge.
ēvomō, -vomere, -vomuī, -vomitum, vomit forth.
ex, *see* **ē.**
exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, overcome, exhaust, kill.
excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart.
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, entertain.
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, stir up, rouse, arouse.
exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cry out, call out.
excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, torture.
exemplar, exemplāris, N., copy, specimen.
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out.
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, train, exercise.
exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., exercise.
exercitus, -ūs, M., army.
exilium, -ī, N., exile.
exorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, come forth, arise.
expectat, (he, she, it) expects, awaits.
expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, expect, await, wait for, wait.
expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum, drive out.
expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, atone for, expiate.
expīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe out.
explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.
expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain; set ashore.
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm, capture.
extemplō, *adv.*, immediately.
extinguō, -tinguere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum, put out, extinguish.
extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of; *as adv.*, outside.
extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw out; save, release.
extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, most distant.
extruō, -ere, extrūxī, extrūctum, heap up, build.
exul, exulis, M., an exile.
exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, take off, remove.

F

faber, -brī, M., workman, smith.
fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum, make, fashion.
fābula, -ae, F., story, play.

fac, *imperative singular of* **faciō**.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, easy.
facinus, facinoris, N., crime, deed.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do.
facit, (he, she, it) makes *or* does.
facultās, -ātis, F., means, opportunity.
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive.
falsus, -a, -um, deceptive, misleading.
falx, falcis, F., sickle.
fāma, -ae, F., report, reputation.
famēs, famis, F., hunger.
fār, farris, N., grain, meal.
fās, *indeclinable*, N., heaven's will; *translated as adjective*, right.
fātum, -ī, N., fate, destiny.
faucēs, -ium, F. *pl.*, throat.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, favor (*takes dative*).
fax, facis, F., torch, firebrand.
fēlīx, *gen.* **fēlīcis**, happy, fortunate.
fēmina, -ae, F., woman.
fenestra, -ae, F., window.
fera, -ae, F., wild animal, animal.
ferē, *adv.*, almost, about.
feriō, -īre, strike.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, carry, bring, endure.
ferōx, *gen.* **ferōcis**, fierce.
ferreus, -a, -um, of iron, iron (*as adjective*).
fert, *third person singular of* **ferō**.
ferula, -ae, F., ferule, ruler.
ferus, -a, -um, wild.
fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry.
fidēlis, -e, faithful.
figūra, -ae, F., figure.
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter.
fīlius, -ī, M., son.
fīnis, fīnis, M., end, limit; *pl.* country, territory.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; **fīnitimī, -ōrum**, M. *pl.*, neighbors.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, become.
flamma, -ae, F., flame.
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, turn, bend.
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow.
flōs, flōris, M., flower.
flūmen, -inis, N., river.
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow.
foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dishonor, disgrace.
fōrma, -ae, F., form, beauty.
fōrmōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beautiful.
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps.
forte, *adv.*, perhaps, by chance.
fortis, -e, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortūna, -ae, F., fortune.
fossa, -ae, F., ditch.
frāctus, -a, -um, broken.
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, break down.
frāter, frātris, M., brother.
fremitus, -ūs, M., a roar, a loud noise.
fretum, -ī, N., strait, channel.
frīgidus, -a, -um, cold.
frōns, frontis, F., forehead, brow.
frūctus, -ūs, M., fruit, products.
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fuga, -ae, F., flight.
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee.
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive away, drive, put to flight.
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine.
fūmus, -ī, M., smoke, odor.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; **lacrimās fundere,** shed tears.

fūnis, fūnis, M., rope.

furibundus, -a, -um, frantic, mad; *sometimes translated as adverb,* madly.

furor, -ōris, M., madness, insanity.

fūrtum, -ī, N., theft.

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, welcome, grateful.

gravis, -e, heavy; difficult, severe.

graviter, *adv.,* heavily, severely; greatly, deeply.

grex, gregis, M., flock, herd.

gubernāculum, -ī, N., helm, rudder.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, taste.

G

galea, -ae, F., helmet.

Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul, *a country.*

gallus, -ī, M., rooster.

Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul, *an inhabitant of* **Gallia.**

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad, rejoice.

gaudium, -ī, N., joy, happiness.

geminī, -ōrum, M. *pl.,* twins.

generōsus, -a, -um, noble-minded.

gēns, gentis, F., nation.

genus, generis, N., kind, sort.

Germānus, -a, -um, German.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry, wear; carry on, wage, do.

Gēryōn, -onis, M., Geryon, *name of a Spanish giant.*

gigās, -antis, M., giant.

gladius, -ī, M., sword.

glāns, glandis, F., acorn.

Gorgō, -onis, F., a Gorgon.

Graeae, -ārum, F. *pl.,* the Graeae.

Graecia, -ae, F., Greece.

Graecus, -ī, M., a Greek; *plur.,* the Greeks.

grāmen, grāminis, N., grass.

grandis, -e, large.

grāta, *see* **grātus.**

grātia, -ae, F., favor, gratitude; **grātiās agere,** thank; **grātiam referre,** requite, repay in appropriate manner.

H

habent, (they) have.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold; regard.

habet, (he, she, it) has.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, live, dwell.

habitus, -ūs, M., appearance.

Hādēs, -ae, M., Hades, *the abode of the dead.*

haedus, -ī, M., kid.

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, stick, cling; hesitate.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hesitate.

Hammōn, -ōnis, M., Hammon, *an Egyptian god.*

harēna (arēna), -ae, F., sand, shore, beach.

hasta, -ae, F., spear.

haud, *adv.,* not at all, not; **haud procul,** not far away.

haudquāquam, *adv.,* by no means, not at all.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, draw, drain; drink.

hei, *interjection,* oh, woe! **hei mihi,** oh!

hem, *interjection,* ha, well!

hercle, *interjection,* by heavens, good heavens!

Herculēs, -is, M., Hercules, *a famous Greek hero.*

herī, *adv.,* yesterday.

Hēsionē, *Greek gen. form,* **Hēsionēs,** F., Hesione, *daughter of Laomedon.*

Hesperides, -um, F. *pl.*, the Hesperides.

heu, *interjection*, alas!

heus, *interjection*, here, hello!

Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland.

hic, haec, hoc, this; *as pronoun*, he, she, it; *plur.*, these, they.

hīc, *adv.*, here.

hieme, in the winter.

hinc, *adv.*, from here, hence.

Hippolytē, *Greek gen. form* **Hippolytēs,** F., Hippolyte, *queen of the Amazons.*

Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain.

hodiē, *adv.*, today.

homō, hominis, M., man, human being.

honestus, -a, -um, honorable.

honor, -ōris, M., honor, esteem.

hōra, -ae, F., hour.

Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius (*a Roman name*); **Horātius Cocles,** *name of a Roman hero.*

horribilis, -e, horrible, dreadful.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge.

hortus, -ī, M., garden.

hospes, hospitis, M., host, guest; friend.

hostis, hostis, M., enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, here.

humerus, *see* **umerus.**

humī, *adv.*, on the ground.

Hydra, -ae, F., the Hydra.

I

ibi, *adv.*, there.

ictus, -ūs, M., blow, stroke.

īdem, eadem, idem, same, the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, favorable.

igitur, *adv.*, therefore.

ignāvus, -a, -um, idle; cowardly; *masculine form as noun*, coward.

ignis, ignis, M., fire.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, pardon (*takes dative*).

ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown.

ille, illa, illud, that; *as pronoun*, he, she, it; *plur.*, those, they.

illūc, *adv.*, to that place, there.

illuviēs, *no genitive, ablative* **illuviē,** dirt, filth.

imāgō, -inis, F., image, likeness.

imbecillus, -a, -um, weak, helpless.

imber, -bris, M., rain, storm.

imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, dip, wet.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send in, let in.

immō, *adv.*, on the other hand; **immō vērō,** rather, much more likely.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, immortal.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, impel, urge on.

imperātor, -ōris, M., general, commander.

imperātum, -ī, N., command, order; **imperāta facere,** to obey commands.

imperītus, -a, -um, inexperienced (in), unskilled (in).

imperium, -ī, N., authority; command.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command.

impetus, -ūs, M., attack.

impiger, -gra, -grum, industrious, energetic.

impigra, *see* **impiger.**

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place upon, impose.

impotēns, *gen.* **impotentis,** weak.

improbus, -a, -um, wicked, bad.

impudēns, *gen.* **impudentis,** shameless, impudent.

impūne, *adv.*, with impunity, without punishment.

in, *prep. with abl. and acc.*; *with abl.*, in, on; over; *with acc.*, into, on, against, at.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall in, fall into.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut up, enclose.

incola, -ae, M., F., inhabitant.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, inhabit.

incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe.

incommodum, -ī, N., annoyance; harm.

incrēdibilis, -e, incredible.

inde, *adv.*, from there, thence.

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, induce, move.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on; clothe.

ineō, -īre, -iī (*or* **-īvī**), **-itum**, enter, enter upon; form.

īnfāns, -antis, M., F., infant.

īnfēlīx, *gen.* **-fēlīcis**, unfortunate.

īnferī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the dead, the shades.

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring upon; **bellum īnferre**, make war on.

īnfestus, -a, -um, unsafe, hostile, hateful.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, stain, dye, dip.

īnfīdissimus, -a, -um, most faithless.

īnfirmus, -a, -um, weak.

ingēns, *gen.* **-entis**, huge, very great.

ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful.

inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy.

inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust.

initium, -ī, N., beginning.

injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw upon; inspire in (*takes dative*).

injūria, -ae, F., injury, injustice.

inquam, inquis, inquit, *employed with direct quotations*, say.

īnsigne, īnsignis, N., decoration, badge.

īnspergō, -spergere, -spersī, spersum, sprinkle.

īnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look into, look.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up.

īnsula, -ae, F., island.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand, know.

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, bend, aim.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.

interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.

intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.

intervāllum, -ī, N., distance.

intimus, -a, -um, innermost, interior of.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter.

introitus, -ūs, M., entrance.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, unusual.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite.

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling.

invocātus, -a, -um, uninvited; unwillingly.

iō, *interjection*, hurrah! **iō triumphe**, hurrah, triumph!

Iolāus, -ī, M., Iolaus, *a companion of Hercules.*

Iolē, *Greek genitive form* **Iolēs**, F., Iole, *daughter of Eurytus.*

Īphiclēs, -is, M., Iphicles, *brother of Hercules.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, himself, *etc.*
īra, -ae, F., anger.
īrātus, -a, -um, angry.
irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at.
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, rush into.
is, ea, id, that; he she, it.
iste, ista, istud, that of yours, that.
ita, *adv.*, so, thus; yes.
Italia, -ae, F., Italy.
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.
iter, itineris, N., road, journey, march.
iterō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, repeat.
iterum, *adv.*, again.
Ithaca, -ae, F., Ithaca, *an island, home of Ulysses.*

J

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie.
jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw.
jaculātor, -ōris, M., javelin-thrower.
jaculum, -ī, N., javelin.
jam, *adv.*, now, already; **nōn jam,** no longer; **jam jam,** even now, very soon.
Jāniculum, -ī, N., the Janiculum, *a hill across the Tiber from the Palatine.*
jānua, -ae, F., door.
jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, order, command.
jūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant, delightful.
jūdex, -icis, M., judge.
jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, fasten together.
Jūnō, -ōnis, F., Juno, *queen of the gods.*
Juppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter.
jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swear.
jūs, jūris, N., right, law, justice.
jussum, -ī, N., order, command.
juvenis, -is, M., young man.
juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, help, assist.

L

labor, -ōris, M., labor, task.
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, slip, fall.
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, work, labor.
labrum, -ī, N., lip.
lāc, lactis, N., milk.
lacertus, -ī, M., arm, upper arm.
Lacōnia, -ae, F., Laconia, *a district in Greece.*
lacrima, -ae, F., tear.
lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, weep, cry.
lacus, -ūs, M., lake.
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, harm, injure.
Lāertēs, -ae, M., Laërtes, *the father of Ulysses.*
laeta, *see* **laetus.**
laetitia, -ae, F., joy, happiness.
laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad.
laeva, -ae, F., the left hand.
Lāomedōn, -ontis, M., Laomedon, *a king of Troy.*
lapis, lapidis, M., a stone.
laqueus, -ī, M., noose.
Lārissa, -ae, F., Larissa, *a city of Thessaly.*
lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, be concealed.
Latīna, *see* **Latīnus.**
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin.
lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.
laudāmus, we praise.
laudant, (they) praise.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise.
lectulus, -ī, M., couch, bed.

lēgātus, -ī, M., ambassador, envoy.
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion.
legit, (he, she) reads.
lentē, *adv.*, slowly.
leō, -ōnis, M., lion.
Lernaeus, -a, -um, of Lerna, *a marsh near Argos.*
Lēthē, *Greek genitive form* **Lēthēs,** F., Lethe, *the river of forgetfulness in the underworld.*
lētum, -ī, N., death.
levis, -e, light, slight.
leviter, *adv.*, slightly.
libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure.
liber, librī, M., book.
līberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, children.
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free, release.
lībertās, -ātis, F., freedom, liberty.
lībum, -ī, N., cake.
Libya, -ae, F., Libya, *a country of northern Africa.*
licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal verb,* it is permitted, it is allowed.
Lichās, -ae, M., Lichas, *a companion of Hercules.*
ligneus, -a, -um, wooden.
lignum, -ī, N., wood; *plur.*, firewood, wood.
ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tie.
Ligurēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Ligurians, *the people of Liguria.*
Liguria, -ae, F., Liguria, *a district of northern Italy.*
līlium, -ī, N., lily.
līmen, -inis, N., threshold, door.
līmus, -ī, M., mud, mire.
lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language.
linter, -tris, F., boat, skiff.
Linus, -ī, M., Linus, *a Centaur.*
lītus, lītoris, N., shore.
loculī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, book-satchel.
locus, -ī, M. (*pl. usually neuter,* **loca, -ōrum**), place.
longa, *see* **longus.**
longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance.
longinquus, -a, -um, distant.
longus, -a, -um, long.
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
Lūcius, -ī, M., Lucius (*name of a man or boy*).
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play.
lūdus, -ī, M., play, game, school.
lūmen, -inis, N., light, a light.
lūna, -ae, F., the moon.
lūx, lūcis, F., light; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak.

M

macer, -cra, -crum, lean, thin.
maga, -ae, F., enchantress.
magicus, -a, -um, magical, magic.
magis, *adv.*, more, rather.
magister, -trī, M., master, teacher.
magna, *see* **magnus.**
magnanimus, -a, -um, generous-spirited, noble.
magnitūdō, -inis, F., size, magnitude.
magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, very, very much.
magnus, -a, -um, large, great.
male, *adv.*, badly.
malum, -ī, N., evil.
malus, -a, -um, bad.
mālus, -ī, M., mast.
Mamilius, -ī, M., Mamilius, *a king of Tusculum.*
māne, *adv.*, in the morning.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, wait.
mānēs, -ium, M. *pl.*, departed spirit, shade.

manet, (he, she, it) remains.

manus, -ūs, F., hand; band (*of armed men*).

Mārcus, -ī, M., Marcus (*name of a man or boy*).

mare, maris, N., sea.

marītus, -ī, M., husband.

Mārs, Mārtis, M., Mars, *the Roman god of war.*

māter, -tris, F., mother.

mātrimōnium, -ī, N., marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry.

maximē, *adv.*, especially, very, very greatly.

maximus, -a, -um, greatest.

mē (*accusative or ablative case*), me.

mea, *see* **meus.**

mēcum, with me.

medicāmentum, -ī, N., medicine.

medicus, -ī, M., doctor.

medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of, in the middle; *neuter singular used as noun*, the middle.

Medūsa, -ae, F., Medusa, *a Gorgon.*

melius, *neuter comparative of* **bonus.**

membrum, -ī, N., limb.

mementō, *pl.* **mementōte**, *imperative* of **meminī**, remember.

meminī, meminisse, remember.

memor, *gen.* **memoris**, mindful.

memoria, -ae, F., memory.

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mention, relate.

mendīcus, -a, -um, beggarly, needy; *masculine as noun*, beggar; **senex mendīcus**, old beggar.

Menelāus, -ī, M., Menelaus, *a Greek hero.*

mēns, mentis, F., mind.

mentiō, -ōnis, F., mention.

mercātor, -ōris, M., merchant, trader.

mercēs, -ēdis, F., pay, fee.

Mercurius, -ī, M., Mercury, *the messenger-god and god of traders.*

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, dip, plunge, sink.

merīdiē, *adv.*, at noon.

meritus, -a, -um, deserved.

metuō, -ere, -uī, fear.

meus, mea, meum, my, mine.

mihi, to me, me (*as indirect object*).

mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier.

mīlitāris, -e, military; **rēs mīlitāris**, the art of war.

mīlle, *num. adj.* (*pl.* **mīlia, -ium**, *neuter noun*), thousand.

minae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, threats.

Minerva, -ae, F., Minerva, *the goddess of wisdom.*

minimē, *adv.*, least, not at all, no.

minister, -trī, M., attendant.

Mīnōs, Mīnōis, M., Minos, *a judge in the lower world.*

minus, *adv.*, less.

Minyae, -ārum, M. *pl.*, the Minyae, *neighbors of the Thebans.*

mīrificus, -a, -um, wonderful.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, be surprised, wonder.

mīrus, -a, -um, strange, remarkable.

misellus, -a, -um, poor (little), unfortunate.

miser, misera, miserum, unhappy.

misera, *see* **miser.**

miserē, *adv.* (*superlative* **miserrimē**), miserably, wretchedly.

misericordia, -ae, F., pity.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send, shoot.

modo, *adv.*, only; **modo . . . modo**, now . . . now.

modus, -ī, M., manner, way.

moenia, -ium, N. *pl.*, walls.

mola, -ae, F., meal, coarse flour.

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn, advise.
mōns, montis, M., mountain.
mōnstrat, (he, she) points out.
mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, show, display.
mōnstrum, -ī, N., monster.
mora, -ae, F., delay.
morbus, -ī, M., illness, disease.
mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, bite.
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die.
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay.
mors, mortis, F., death.
mortifer, -era, -erum, deadly.
mortuus, -a, -um, dead; *masculine singular as noun,* a dead person.
mōs, mōris, M., custom.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.
mox, *adv.,* soon.
mūgiō, -īre, -īvī, bellow.
mūgītus, -ūs, M., bellowing.
mulgeō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsum, milk.
mulier, -eris, F., woman.
multa, *see* **multus.**
multī, many.
multitūdō, -inis, F., multitude, large number.
multō, *adv., used with comparatives,* much.
multum, *adv.,* much, greatly.
multus, -a, -um, much; *plur.* many; *neuter singular as noun,* much.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify.
mūnus, mūneris, N., service, duty.
murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, murmur, complain.
mūrus, -ī, M., wall.
mūsica, -ae, F., music.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, change.

N

nam, *conj.,* for.
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, find, obtain.
nārrat, (he, she, it) tells.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, relate, tell a story.
natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swim, float.
nātūra, -ae, F., nature.
nātus, -a, -um, born; **duodecim annōs nātus,** twelve years old.
Naupactōus, -ī, M., Naupactous, *a companion of Ulysses.*
nauta, -ae, M., sailor.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sail, navigate.
nāvis, nāvis, F., ship, boat.
-ne, *an enclitic denoting a question to be answered by "yes" or "no."*
nē . . . quidem, not even.
nec, *see* **neque.**
necesse, *indeclinable adj.,* necessary, inevitable.
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, kill.
nectar, nectaris, N., nectar, *the drink of the gods.*
nefās, *indeclinable,* N., a sin, a crime.
neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum, neglect, disregard.
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.
negōtium, -ī, N., business, task.
Nemaeus, -a, -um, Nemean, of Nemea (*a city in Greece*).
nēmō, *dat.* **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem,** *no gen. or abl.,* M., F., no one, nobody.
nepōs, -ōtis, M., grandson.
Neptūnus, -ī, M., Neptune, *god of the sea.*
nēquāquam, *adv.,* by no means.
neque *or* **nec,** *conj.,* nor, and . . . not; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
nervus, -ī, M., bow-string.

nesciō, -īre, -īvī, not know.
Nessus, -ī, M., Nessus, *a Centaur.*
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.
niger, -gra, -grum, black.
nihil, *indeclinable,* N., nothing.
nīl, *same as* **nihil.**
nimis, *adv.*, too, too much.
nisi, *conj.*, unless, except, if not.
nix, nivis, F., snow.
nō, nāre, nāvī, swim.
nōbilis, -e, noble; M. *pl. as noun,* the nobles.
noctū, *adv.*, at night.
nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, night (*as adjective.*)
nōlī, *pl.* **nōlīte,** be unwilling, do not; *imperative of* **nōlō.**
nōlīte, *see* **nōlī.**
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, not wish.
nōmen, -inis, N., name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
nōnne, *a word used to introduce a question and implying an affirmative answer.*
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some; *plur.*, several.
nōs (*nominative and accusative*), we, us.
noster, -tra, -trum, our.
nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar.
novem, *numeral adj.*, nine.
nōvī, nōvisse, know (*perfect of* **nōscō,** learn).
novissimus, -a, -um (*superlative of* **novus**), last, latest.
novus, -a, -um, new; **quid novī,** what news?
nox, noctis, F., night.
nūbēs, nūbis, F., cloud.
nūbilō, -āre, be cloudy, cloud up.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, marry (*takes dative*).
nugae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, jests, nonsense; **aufer nugās,** enough of this nonsense.
nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.
num, *a word used to introduce a question implying a negative answer.*
numerus, -ī, M., number.
nummus, -ī, M., a coin.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger.
nūper, *adv.*, recently, a little while ago.
nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.
nympha, -ae, F., nymph.

O

Ō, *interjection,* O, oh!
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, offer.
obscūra, *see* **obscūrus.**
obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, darken.
obscūrus, -a, -um, dark, dim.
obserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, cover, fill.
obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, stop up, bar.
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess.
occāsiō, -ōnis, F., opportunity.
occāsus, -ūs, M., setting.
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize.
occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, meet.
Ōceanus, -ī, M., the ocean.
Octāvia, -ae, F., Octavia (*name of a woman or girl*).
octō, *numeral adj.*, eight.

oculus, -ī, M., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus (*perfect tense with present meaning*), hate.

odiōsus, -a, -um, hateful.

odor, -ōris, M., smell, odor.

Oechalia, -ae, F., Oechalia, *a town of Euboea.*

Oeneus, -ī, M., Oeneus, *father of Deianira.*

Oeta, -ae, F., Oeta, *a mountain in Thessaly.*

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, offend.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, offer.

officium, -ī, N., service.

ohē, *interjection,* hello, hello there; oh, oho!

olfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, smell.

ōlim, *adv.,* formerly, once upon a time.

Olympus, -ī, M., Olympus, *a mountain north of Greece.*

omnīnō, *adv.,* entirely.

omnis, -e, all.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, load.

opera, -ae, F., effort, labor.

opīniō, -ōnis, F., opinion, expectation.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, it is proper, one ought.

oppidum, -ī, N., town.

opportūnus, -a, -um, opportune.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, overcome, overpower.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack.

(**ops**), **opis,** F., power; *plur.* resources.

optimē, *adv.,* best, in the best way.

optimus, -a, -um, *adj.,* best.

opus, operis, N., work, task.

ōrāculum, -ī, N., oracle.

Orbilius, -ī, M., Orbilius (*a Roman name*).

orbis, orbis, M., circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world, the earth.

Orcus, -ī, M., Orcus, *the lower world.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, M., line, rank, order.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn.

ōs, ōris, N., mouth.

ostendit, (he, she, it) shows.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, show, display.

ōstium, -ī, N., door, mouth.

ovīle, ovīlis, N., sheep-pen.

ovis, ovis, F., sheep.

P

pābulum, -ī, N., pasture, feed (*for animals*).

paene, *adv.,* almost.

palaestra, -ae, F., wrestling-place, place of exercise.

Palātium, -ī, N., the Palatine Hill.

palma, -ae, F., palm, hand.

palūs, -ūdis, F., swamp, marsh.

pānis, pānis, M., bread.

pannōsus, -a, -um, ragged.

pannus, -ī, M., a cloth.

parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, obey (*takes dative*).

pariter, *adv.,* equally.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, obtain, get.

pars, partis, F., part, direction; side.

parum, *adv. and indeclinable noun,* too little, insufficiently, little.

parva, *see* **parvus.**

parvulus, -a, -um, little; *masculine plur. as noun,* little boys.

parvus, -a, -um, small, little.

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstum, pasture; *in passive,* graze.

passus, -ūs, M., pace; **mīlle passūs** *or* **mīlle passuum,** a mile.

pāstor, -ōris, M., shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, open, lay open.

pater, patris, M., father.

patera, -ae, F., a flat dish *or* bowl, a platter.

patiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** long-enduring.

patior, patī, passus sum, endure.

patria, -ae, F., native country, country.

patrius, -a, -um, of one's father, of one's native country.

paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat; a little way.

pavidus, -a, -um, trembling, alarmed, terrified.

pavor, -ōris, M., terror, alarm.

pāx, pācis, F., peace.

pectus, pectoris, N., breast.

pecūnia, -ae, F., money.

pecus, pecoris, N., cattle, flock, herd.

pecus, pecudis, F., a head of cattle, beast; *plur.*, flock, herd.

pellis, pellis, F., skin.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, rout.

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, hang.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, pay.

Pēnelopē, -ae, F., Penelope, *wife of Ulysses.*

pēnsum, -ī, N., task, lesson.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, all along.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, perceive, feel.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, strike.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, destroy, ruin, lose.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, bring.

peregrīnus, -ī, M., foreigner.

perennis, -e, lasting through the year, perpetual.

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, complete.

perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous.

perīculōsa, *see* **perīculōsus.**

perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous.

perīculum, -ī, N., danger.

perītē, *adv.*, skillfully.

perpetuus, -a, -um, continuous.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, break.

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, describe fully.

Perseus, -ī, M., Perseus, *a Greek hero.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, pay.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade (*takes dative*).

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, terrify.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw into disorder.

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive, come.

pēs, pedis, M., foot.

pessimus, -a, -um, worst.

petō, -ere, petiī *or* **petīvī, petītum,** seek, look for; ask, ask for; attack.

Phaeācēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Phaeacians.

Pholus, -ī, M., Pholus, *a Centaur.*

pictūra, -ae, F., picture.

piscātor, -ōris, M., fisherman.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please.

plāga, -ae, F., blow.

plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum, clap.

plēnus, -a, -um, full.

plūrēs, plūra (*plur. of* **plūs**), more, several, many.

plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very much; *plur.*, very many.

Plūtō, -ōnis, M., Pluto, *god of the lower world.*

pōculum, -ī, N., cup; dose.

poena, -ae, F., punishment; **poenās dare,** pay the penalty, be punished.

poēta, -ae, M., poet.

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.

Polydectēs, -is, M., Polydectes, *king of Seriphus.*

Polyphēmus, -ī, M., Polyphemus, *a Cyclops.*

pōmum, -ī, N., apple.

pondus, ponderis, N., weight.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch.

pōns, pontis, M., bridge.

populus, -ī, M., a people.

porcus, -ī, M., pork.

Porsena, -ae, M., Porsena, *a king of the Etruscans.*

porta, -ae, F., gate, door.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.

portus, -ūs, M., harbor.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand, request, ask for.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, have.

possum, posse, potuī, be able, can.

post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after, behind; afterwards, later.

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards, thereafter.

posterus, -a, -um, following, next.

postquam, *conj.*, after.

postrēmus, -a, -um, last.

postrīdiē, *adv.*, on the next day.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand.

potēns, *gen.* **-entis,** powerful.

potentia, -ae, F., power.

praebeō, -ēre, praebuī, praebitum, exhibit, show.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, impose upon.

praecipuē, *adv.*, especially.

praeclārus, -a, -um, very famous.

praeda, -ae, F., booty, prey.

praeditus, -a, -um, endowed with, provided with.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, put in charge of, put in command of (*takes dative*).

praemium, -ī, N., reward.

praestāns, *gen.* **-stantis,** extraordinary.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, exhibit, show, furnish.

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, past; in addition to, except.

praetereā, *adv.*, in addition, besides.

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, pray, beg, beg for, implore.

prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, take hold of.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard.

pretium, -ī, N., price.

prīdem, *adv.*, long ago.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, first.

prīnceps, -cipis, M., chief, prince.

prior, prius, first, in advance.

prīstinus, -a, -um, former.

priusquam, *conj.*, before.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, in return for, on behalf of; before, in front of.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approve, approve of.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, proceed, advance.

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, far.

procus, -ī, M., suitor.

prodeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, come forward, come forth.

proelium, -ī, N., battle.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, start.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, advance, proceed.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, forbid, prevent, hinder.

prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl down; throw to.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, promise.

prōmunturium, -ī, N., promontory.

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near.

properant, (they) hasten.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry, hasten.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, relate; offer.

proprius, -a, -um, one's own, own.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

Prōserpina, -ae, F., Proserpina (Proserpine), *queen of the lower world.*

prōspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look forth, look, look toward.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, knock down.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, benefit, help.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, protect.

Prōteus, -ī, M., Proteus, *a sea-god who assumed many different forms.*

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward; **aetāte prōvectus,** well on in years.

Proxenus, -ī, M., Proxenus, *a companion of Ulysses.*

proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.

prūdēns, *gen.* **-entis,** prudent, far-seeing.

Pūblius, -ī, M., Publius (*name of a man or boy*).

puella, -ae, F., girl.

puer, puerī, M., boy.

pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.

pugnus, -ī, M., fist.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful.

pulchra, *see* **pulcher.**

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, knock, knock at *or* upon.

Pulvillus, -ī, M., Pulvillus, *a Roman consul.*

pūnctum, -ī, N., point, moment.

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, punish.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, clean, cleanse.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.

Pȳthia, -ae, F., Pythia, *the priestess of Apollo at Delphi.*

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, inquire, ask; search for.

quālis, -e, what sort of, what kind of.

quam, *adv.*, how, as, than; **quam prīmum,** as soon as; *with superlatives,* as . . . as possible.

quamquam, *conj.*, although.

quandō, *adv.*, when?

quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great; **quantum** (*as noun*), how much; (*as adverb*), how greatly, how.

quārē, *adv.*, why.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, *adv.*, as if.

quatiō, -ere, —, quassum, shake

quattuor, *numeral adj.*, four.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

quendam, *see* **quīdam.**

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that; *interrog. adj.*, what?

quia, *conj.*, because.

quid, what?

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam, a certain, some one, some.

quidem, *adv.*, *never stands first in its clause*, indeed, certainly; nē . . . quidem, not even.

quiēs, -ētis, F., rest.

quīnquāgintā, *numeral adj.*, fifty.

quīnque, *numeral adj.*, five.

quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.

Quīntus, -ī, M., Quintus (*name of a man or boy*).

quis, quid, who, what?

quisquam, quicquam *or* quidquam, anyone, anything.

quisque, quidque, each, each one, each man.

quisquis, quicquid, whoever, whatever.

quō, *adv.*, to what place, whither, where.

quod, *adv.*, because.

quō modo (quōmodo), *adv.*, how?

quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.

quoque, *conj.*, *never stands first in its clause*, also.

quot, *indeclinable adj.*, how many.

quotannīs, *adv.*, every year, yearly.

quotiēns, *adv.*, as often as.

quotus, -a, -um, which in number? what? quota hōra, what hour?

quousque, *adv.*, how long?

R

rāmus, -ī, M., branch, bough.

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; sē recipere, to withdraw, to betake oneself, to recover.

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew, refresh.

rēctā, *adv.*, directly.

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, give; render.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew.

reditus, -ūs, M., return.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, bring; grātiam referre, requite, repay in appropriate manner.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee.

rēgia, -ae, F., palace.

rēgīna, -ae, F., queen.

regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, N., kingdom, royal power.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, direct, rule.

rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw away, throw back.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.

relūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, struggle against, resist.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, reward.

Remus, -ī, M., Remus, *the brother of Romulus*.

rēmus, -ī, M., oar.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report.

repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repel.

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, find.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill.

repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, put away, keep.

rēs, reī, F., thing, affair, fact, circumstance.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, resist (*takes dative*).

respīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe.

respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsum, reply, answer.

respōnsum, -ī, N., reply, answer.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, restore.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, retain, restrain.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw back.

rettulī, *perfect of* **referō.**

revēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reveal.

reveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come back (to), return.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, (*active regularly in perfect, past perfect, and future perfect only*), *or* **revertor, -vertī, -versus sum,** return.

rēx, rēgis, M., king.

Rhadamanthus, -ī, M., Rhadamanthus, *a judge in the lower world.*

Rhodius, -ī, M., Rhodius, *a companion of Ulysses.*

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh.

rīdiculus, -a, -um, absurd, ridiculous.

rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*).

rīsus, -ūs, M., laughter, laugh.

rītē, *adv.*, in a proper manner.

rīvus, -ī, M., stream.

rōbustus, -a, -um, strong.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.

rogus, -ī, M., funeral pile.

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman.

Rōmānus, -ī, M., a Roman.

Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus, *the founder of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, F., rose.

rōstrum, -ī, N., beak, prow.

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, break down, break.

ruō, -ere, ruī, rush.

rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rūrsus, *adv.*, again.

S

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, M., F., priest, priestess.

sacrificium, -ī, N., sacrifice.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, offer sacrifice, sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage.

sagāx, *gen.* **sagācis,** shrewd, sagacious.

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.

sagittārius, -ī, M., archer.

sāl, salis, M., salt.

salsus, -a, -um, salted.

saltem, *adv.*, at least.

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dance.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, greet.

salvē, *pl.* **salvēte,** hail, welcome, how do you do? (*Imperative of* **salveō.**)

salvus, -a, -um, safe.

sānē, *adv.*, of course.

sanguis, sanguinis, M., blood.

sānitās, -ātis, F., sanity.

sapiēns, *gen.* **-entis,** wise.

satis, *adv.*, enough.

saxum, -ī, N., stone, a stone, rock.

scaena, -ae, F., scene.

scapha, -ae, F., skiff, boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um, wicked; *masculine as noun,* wretch, scoundrel.

scelus, sceleris, N., crime.

schola, -ae, F., school.
scientia, -ae, F., knowledge, skill.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know, know how.
scrībit, (he, she, it) writes.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, write.
scūtum, -ī, N., shield.
secundus, -a, -um, second.
secūris, -is, F., ax.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit, be seated.
sēdēs, -is, F., residence, abode.
semper, *adv.*, always.
senātor, -ōris, M., senator.
senātus, -ūs, M., senate.
senectūs, -ūtis, F., old age.
senex, senis, M., old man.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, notice, think, know.
sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, bury.
septem, *numeral adj.*, seven.
sepultūra, -ae, F., burial.
sepultus, -a, -um (*participle of* **sepeliō**), overcome.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow, pursue.
Serīphus, -ī, F., Seriphus, *an island in the Aegean Sea.*
sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation.
sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.
serpēns, -entis, F., serpent.
servitūs, -ūtis, F., servitude, slavery.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save, preserve.
servus, -ī, M., slave, servant.
Sextus, -ī, M., Sextus (*name of a man or boy*); **Sextus Tarquinius,** *son of Tarquinius Superbus.*
sī, *conj.*, if; **sī quis,** if anyone.
sīc, *adv.*, thus, so.
siccus, -a, -um, dry.
signifer, -erī, M., standard-bearer.
signum, -ī, N., sign, mark, standard, signal.
silentium, -ī, N., silence.
sileō, -ēre, -uī, be silent.
silva, -ae, F., forest.
similis, -e, like, similar.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time.
simulātus, -a, -um, pretended, fictitious.
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pretend.
sīn, *conj.*, but if; **sīn minus,** if not.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, one at a time.
sinistra, -ae, F., left hand, left.
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, permit, allow.
sinus, -ūs, M., a fold, bosom.
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, thirst, be thirsty.
situs, -ūs, M., site, location.
sīve, *or* **seu,** *conj.*, whether, or if; **sīve . . . sīve,** whether . . . or, either . . . or.
socius, -ī, M., ally, comrade.
sōl, sōlis, M., the sun.
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.
solitus, -a, -um, customary, usual.
solium, -ī, N., throne.
sōlum, *adv.*, only, merely.
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen, unfasten, pay; *of ships, with or without* **nāvem,** weigh anchor, set sail.
somnus, -ī, M., sleep.
sonitus, -ūs, M., sound.
sonōrus, -a, -um, sonorous.
sonus, -ī, M., sound.
soror, -ōris, F., sister.
sors, sortis, F., lot.
Sparta, -ae, F., Sparta, *a city of Greece.*

spatium, -ī, N., space.

speciēs, -ēī, F., appearance, aspect.

spectātor, -ōris, M., spectator.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, watch, look at, look.

speculum, -ī, N., mirror.

spēlunca, -ae, F., cave, cavern.

spēs, speī, F., hope.

splendidus, -a, -um, splendid.

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plunder.

(spōns, spontis,) F., *only abl.* **sponte,** *usually with* **meā, tuā, suā,** of one's own accord, voluntarily.

Spurius, -ī, M., Spurius, *a Roman name;* Spurius Lartius, *a Roman senator.*

squalidus, -a, -um, squalid, dirty.

squālor, -ōris, M., squalor, filth.

stabulum, -ī, N., stable, stall.

statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.

stella, -ae, F., star.

stīpendium, -ī, N., tribute.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, strip, draw.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, apply oneself, study (*takes dative*).

studiōsus, -a, -um, studious.

stultus, -a, -um, foolish.

Stymphālis, *gen.* **-idis,** Stymphalian.

Stymphālus, -ī, M., Stymphalus, *a town of Greece.*

Styx, Stygis, F., the Styx, *a river of the lower world.*

suāvis, -e, sweet, agreeable.

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under.

subdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, put under, set to.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, undergo.

subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.

sublicius, -a, -um, resting on piles; **pōns sublicius,** a pile bridge.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, succeed, take the place of.

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down.

suī, sibi, sē, sē, *third person, sing. and pl. reflexive pronoun,* of himself, herself, itself, themselves.

suibus, *dative and ablative plural of* **sūs.**

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be.

summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, remove.

summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest, utmost; highest part of, top of.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, take up, assume.

sunt, (they) are.

superbus, -a, -um, haughty, proud.

superior, -ius, higher, preceding.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, defeat, overcome.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, remain, be left.

supplex, *gen.* **supplicis,** suppliant.

supplicium, -ī, N., punishment.

supplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pray to.

suprā, *adv.*, above, before.

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, rise.

sūs, suis, M., hog; *pl.*, swine.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake.

suspīciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold up, withstand.

suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their, *in reflexive meaning;* his own, her own, its own, their own.

T

tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent.

taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, be silent.

Taenarum, -ī, N., Taenarum, *a promontory on the coast of Greece.*

tālāria, -ium, N. *pl.*, winged sandals.
tālis, -e, such.
tam, *adv.*, so; **tam . . . quam,** as . . . as.
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, however.
tandem, *adv.*, at length.
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch.
tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large; **tantus . . . quantus,** as large . . . as.
Tarquinius, -ī, M., Tarquinius Superbus, *a king of Rome.*
Tartarus, -ī, M., Tartarus, *the place of punishment in the lower world.*
taurus, -ī, M., bull.
tēctum, -ī, N., house, roof.
tēcum, with you.
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect.
tēla, -ae, F., web (*a piece of cloth in a loom*).
Tēlemachus, -ī, M., Telemachus, *the son of Ulysses.*
tēlum, -ī, N., weapon.
temerārius, -a, -um, rash.
tempestās, -ātis, F., storm, weather.
templum, -ī, N., temple.
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try.
tempus, -oris, N., time.
tenebrae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, darkness.
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, hold, hold to; keep back.
tergum, -ī, N., back.
ternī, -ae, -a, three by three, by groups of three.
terra, -ae, F., land, the earth.
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum, frighten.
terribilis, -e, terrible, dreadful.
terror, -ōris, M., terror, fright.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
texō, -ere, texuī, textum, weave.
Thēbae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, Thebes, *a city of Greece.*
Thēbānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Thebans.
Thermōdōn, -ontis, M., the Thermodon, *a river in Asia Minor.*
Thracia, -ae, F., Thrace.
Tiberis, -is, M., the Tiber, *a river of Italy.*
tibi, to you, you (*as indirect object*).
timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear.
timet, (he, she, it) fears.
timidus, -a, -um, timid, cowardly.
timor, -ōris, M., fear.
Tīryns, Tīrynthis, F., Tiryns, *a city in Greece.*
Titus, -ī, M., Titus (*name of a boy or man*); Titus Herminius, *a Roman senator.*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift.
torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostum, roast.
tostus, -a, -um, roasted.
tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.
tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all.
tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat; handle.
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender, give up; report.
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across, bring across.
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag, draw, pull.
trājectus, -ūs, M., crossing, passage.
trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, pierce.
tranquillē, *adv.*, quietly.
tranquillitās, -ātis, F., a calm *at sea.*
tranquillus, -a, -um, calm, still.
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, cross.
trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, pierce.
trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry across, transport.

trānsvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, convey across.

tremō, -ere, -uī, tremble.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be in confusion, hurry about in alarm.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūtum, -ī, N., tribute; *plur.*, tribute, indemnity.

triumphus, -ī, M., triumph.

Troja, -ae, F., Troy.

Trojānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Trojans.

tū, *gen.* **tuī,** you (*of one person*).

tua, *see* **tuus.**

tum, *adv.*, then.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb.

turpis, -e, disgraceful.

Tusculum, -ī, N., Tusculum, *a town not far from Rome.*

tūtō, *adv.*, safely.

tūtus, -a, -um, safe.

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*of one person*).

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ubinam, *adv.*, where in the world? where?

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, punish, take vengeance on.

Ulīxēs, Ulīxis, M., Ulysses, *a Greek hero.*

ūllus, -a, -um, any.

ulterior, -ius, farther.

ululō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, howl, bark.

umerus, -ī, M., upper arm, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever.

unda, -ae, F., wave.

unde, *adv.*, from where, whence.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, eleventh.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides, from all sides.

ūnus, -a, -um, one; **ad ūnum,** to a man.

urbs, urbis, F., city.

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even; **usque ad,** as far as, until.

ūsus, -ūs, M., experience.

ut, *adv.*, as, when, how.

uter, -tra, -trum, which *of two?*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each *of two*, both.

uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, vacant, empty.

vae, *interjection*, woe, alas (for)!

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander.

valdē, *adv.*, very, very much.

valē, farewell, good-by (*imperative of* **valeō**).

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be well, be strong.

Valerius, -ī, M., Valerius, *a Roman consul.*

validus, -a, -um, strong, well.

vallēs, vallis, F., valley.

vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall.

vāpulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (*active forms translated as passive*), be beaten, be whipped.

varius, -a, -um, various, different.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste, destroy.

vehementer, *adv.*, violently, strongly, earnestly, very much, very.

vel, *adv.*, even; *conj.*, or.

vellus, velleris, N., fleece.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, envelop, veil.

venēnum, -ī, N., poison, magic drug.

veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, worship, reverence.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come.

venter, ventris, M., stomach, belly.

ventus, -ī, M., wind.

verbera, -um, N. *pl.*, blows.

verbum, -ī, N., word.
vērō, *adv.*, in truth, indeed. *See* **immō**.
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn.
vērus, -a, -um, true; **vērum** *or* **vēra** *as noun*, the truth.
vēscor, vēscī, feed upon.
vesper, -erī, M., evening.
vesperī, in the evening.
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*of more than one person*).
vēstīgium, -ī, N., footstep, track.
vestīmentum, -ī, N. garment, coverlet, blanket.
vestis, vestis, F., garment, clothing.
vestītus, -ūs, M., clothing.
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid.
via, -ae, F., street, road, way.
viātor, -ōris, M., traveler.
victī, -ōrum, M. *pl.* (*past participle of* **vincō** *as noun*), the conquered, the vanquished.
victima, -ae, F., victim (*for sacrifice*).
victōria, -ae, F., victory.
vidēmus, we see.
vident, (they) see.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see.
videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem.
videt, (he, she, it) sees.
vigil, vigilis, M., sentinel.
vigilia, -ae, F., watch (*a division of time*).
vīgintī, *numeral adj.*, twenty.
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, bind.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat.
vinculum, -ī, N., chain, bond.
vīnum, -ī, N., wine.
vir, virī, M., man, husband.
vīrēs, *plural of* **vīs**.
virgō, virginis, F., young woman, maiden, virgin.
virtūs, -ūtis, F., manhood, manly spirit, courage.
vīs, F., violence, force; *plur.*, **vīrēs, vīrium**, strength.
vīs, *second person of* **volō**, wish.
vīta, -ae, F., life.
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid.
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live, be alive.
vīvus, -a, -um, alive.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call.
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, fly.
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing.
voluntās, -ātis, F., will, wish.
vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour.
vōs, you (*plural nominative and accusative*).
vōx, vōcis, F., voice; **magna vōx**, a loud voice; **parva vōx**, a low voice.
Vulcānus, -ī, M., Vulcan, *the god of fire*.
vulnerātus, -a, -um (*participle of* **vulnerō** *as adj.*), wounded.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound.
vulnus, vulneris, N., a wound.
vulpēs, vulpis, F., fox.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

about, dē, *prep. with abl.*
accept, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
again, iterum, *adv.*
aid, auxilium, -ī, N.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um.
all, omnis, -e.
ally, socius, -ī, M.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
also, quoque; etiam, *advs.*
always, semper, *adv.*
America, America, -ae, F.
Amphinomus, Amphinomus, -ī, M.
and, et, -que, *conjs.*
animal, bestia, -ae, F.; animal, animālis, N.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
answer, respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
appear, appāreō, -ēre, -uī.
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
archer, sagittārius, -ī, M.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
ask, interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
at once, statim, *adv.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
away, be away, be distant, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
ax, secūris, secūris, F.

B

bank, rīpa, -ae, F.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.
battle, proelium, -ī, N.
be, am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
beast, bestia, -ae, F.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod, *conj.*
began, coepī, coepisse.
beggar, mendīcus, -ī, M.
behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
believe, crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
bend, flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
bird, avis, avis, F.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
body, corpus, corporis, N.
book, liber, librī, M.
bow, arcus, -ūs, M.
boy, puer, puerī, M.
branch, rāmus, -ī, M.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
bread, pānis, pānis, M.
break down, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, bring into, addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.
brother, frāter, frātris, M.
but, sed, *conj.*
by, ā, ab, *prep.*

C

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
can, am able, possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cave, antrum, -ī, N.; caverna, -ae, F.
cavern, caverna, -ae, F.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.

certain, certus, -a, -um; **to be certain**, prō certō habēre; **a certain (person** *or* **thing)**, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Circe, Circē, Circae, F.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, M.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.
cloud, nūbēs, nūbis, F.
column, columna, -ae, F.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
companion, comes, comitis, M.
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.
cottage, casa, -ae, F.
country, terra, -ae, F.; **(native) country**, patria, -ae, F.
credible, crēdibilis, -e.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cup, pōculum, -ī, N.
Cyclops, Cyclōps, Cyclōpis, M.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, N.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēī, M., F.
daybreak, prīma lūx.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deer, cervus, -ī, M.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.
delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desert, dēserō, -ere, uī, -tum.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
dinner, cēna, -ae, F.
divide, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.
dog, canis, canis, M.
door, jānua, -ae, F.
doubt, dubium, -ī, N.
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
drive out, expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum.

E

easy, facilis, -e.
eat, edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum.
eight, octō, *indeclinable numeral.*
enchantress, maga, -ae, F.
enemy, inimīcus, -ī, M.; hostis, hostis, M.
enter, intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus.
Etruscan, Etrūscus, -ī, M.
Eumaeus, Eumaeus, -ī, M.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, F.
evening, in the evening, vesperī.
expect, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
eye, oculus, -ī, M.

F

fact, *see* **thing**.
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
faithless, perfidus, -a, -um.
far, longē, *adv.*
farewell, valē, *pl.* valēte.
farmer, agricola, -ae, M.
father, pater, patris, M.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
few, a few, paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, agrī, M.
fierce, ferus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā, *indeclinable numeral.*
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
find, inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
fire, ignis, ignis, M.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleece, vellus, velleris, N.
flight, fuga, -ae, F.
flock, grex, gregis, M.
flower, flōs, flōris, M.
food, cibus, -ī, M.
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
for, on behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
forehead, frōns, frontis, F.
forest, silva, -ae, F.
form (*noun*), fōrma, -ae, F.
form (*a plan*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
formerly, ōlim, *adv.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
from, ē, ex; dē; ā, ab, *preps.*
front, in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

G

garden, hortus, -ī, M.
gate, porta, -ae, F.
Gaul (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, F.
Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī.
general, imperātor, -ōris, M.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
girl, puella, -ae, F.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
go, eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum; **go out,** exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum; **go away,** abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
goat, caper, caprī, M.
god, a god, deus, deī (*pl.* dī), M.
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um; **very good,** optimus, -a, -um.
Greek, a, Graecus, -ī, M.
ground, on the ground, humī.
guest, hospes, hospitis, M.
hall, ātrium, -ī, N.
happy, fēlīx, *gen.* fēlīcis.

H

hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
he, is, *gen.* ejus.
head, caput, capitis, N.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
helmet, galea, -ae, F.
help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, N.
help (*verb*), juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
here, hīc, *adv.*
himself, herself, itself, suī, sibi, sē (sēsē).
his, her, its, *when reflexive,* suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive,* ejus.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
home, domus, -ūs, F.; **at home,** domī.
horn, cornū, -ūs, N.
horse, equus, -ī, M.
house, tēctum, -ī, N.
hungry, be hungry, hunger, ēsuriō, -īre.
hurry, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
husband, vir, virī, M.; marītus, -ī, M.

I

if, sī, *conj.*
immortal, immortālis, -e.
impudent, impudēns, *gen.* impudentis.
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*
in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*
industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, M., F.
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, F.
island, īnsula, -ae, F.
it, is, ea, id.

J

jar, amphora, -ae, F.
javelin, pīlum, -ī, N.
jump, dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum.

K

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
kindle, accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
kind, benignus, -a, -um.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

L

lamb, agnus, -ī, M.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
lay down, dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī. -positum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
leader, dux, ducis, M.
left, left hand, sinistra, -ae, F.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
letter, epistula, -ae, F.
lie, jaceō, -ēre, -uī.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
light, lūx, lūcis, F.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
look around, circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

M

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, F.
man, vir, virī; homō, hominis, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march (*noun*), iter, itineris, N.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
master, dominus, -ī, M.
me, *as direct object*, mē; *as indirect object*, mihi.
Menelaus, Menelāus, -ī, M.
Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, M.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um.
mine, *see* **my**.
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
monster, mōnstrum, -ī, N.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
morning, in the morning, māne, *adv.*
mother, māter, mātris, F.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
murmur, murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
native country, patria, -ae, F.
near, prope, *prep. with acc.*
Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, M.
news, what news, quid novī.

night, nox, noctis, F.; **at night,** noctū, *adv.*
no (*adjective*), nūllus, -a, -um; **no longer,** nōn jam.
nobody, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem (*gen. and abl. from* nūllus).
not, nōn, *adv.*
now, nunc, *adv.*

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī.
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
often, saepe, *adv.*
old man, senex, *gen.* senis, M.
on all sides, undique, *adv.*
once, at once, statim, *adv.*
one by one, singulī, -ae, -a.
open, aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum.
others, the others, reliquī, -ōrum; cēterī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; (*impersonal*) oportet, -ēre, -uit.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
outside, extrā, *prep. with acc.*

P

Palatine, Palātīnus, -ī, M.
part, pars, partis, F.
perhaps, fortasse, *adv.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
permit, it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit.
picture, pictūra, -ae, F.
pierce, trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum.
place, locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, N.).
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī.
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
present, dōnum, -ī, N.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.
protect, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
put out, extinguō, -tinguere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, F.

R

ram, ariēs, arietis, M.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
rear, tergum, -ī, N.
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
recognize, agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitum.
redoubt, castellum, -ī, N.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī.
restore, restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
return (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, M.
return (*verb*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
right, right hand, dextra, -ae, F.
river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
Roman (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, M.
Roman (*adjective*), Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
rose, rosa, -ae, F.
rouse, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
school, schola, -ae, F.
sea, mare, maris, N.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seek, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum (*passive of* videō).
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
self, himself, herself, itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
sentinel, vigil, vigilis, M.
servant, servus, -ī, M.
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M.
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um.
sheep, ovis, ovis, F.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
shore, lītus, lītoris, N.
shout, clāmor, clāmōris, M.
show, ostendō, -dere, -dī, -tum.
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, M.
silence, silentium, -ī, N.
sing, cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sister, soror, sorōris, F.
sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.
slave, servus, -ī, M.
sleep, somnus, -ī, M.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, M.
sometimes, interdum, *adv.*
son, fīlius, -ī, M.
sound, sonus, -ī, M.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
Sparta, Sparta, -ae, F.
spear, hasta, -ae, F.
speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.
staff, baculum, -ī, N.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum.
stand about, circumstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statum.
star, stella, -ae, F.
story, fābula, -ae, F.
street, via, -ae, F.
strength, vīrēs, vīrium, F. *pl.*
strong, validus, -a, -um.
suddenly, subitō, *adv.*
sufficiently, satis, *adv.*
suitor, procus, -ī, M.
summer, aestās, aestātis, F.; **in summer,** aestāte.
sweet, dulcis, -e.
swim, natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sword, gladius, -ī, M.

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.
talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
tell, narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tent, tabernāculum, -ī, N.
thank, grātiās agō (agere, ēgī, āctum).
that (*pl.* **those**), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.
themselves, suī, sibi, sē (sēsē).
thing, rēs, reī, F.
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
Tiber, Tiberis, Tiberis, M.
throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum; conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
throw away, rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.
thus, ita, *adv.*

tie together, colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
time, tempus, temporis, N.
tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.
Titus, Titus, -ī, M.
to, ad, in, *preps. with acc.*
today, hodiē, *adv.*
tomorrow, crās, *adv.*
toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, N.
triumph, triumphus, -ī. M.
Troy, Troja, -ae, F.
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.
twist, contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

Ulysses, Ulīxēs, Ulīxis, M.
uncle, avunculus, -ī, M.
unfortunate, miser, misera, miserum.
unhappy, miser, misera, miserum.

V

vain, in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*
victory, victōria, ae, F.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wander, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
watch (*noun*), vigilia, -ae, F.
watch (*verb*), spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
weapons, arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
well, bene, *adv.*
where, ubi, *adv.*
which, *relative pronoun,* quī, quae, quod.
who, *interrogative,* quis, quid; *relative,* quī, quae, quod.
why, cūr, *adv.*
window, fenestra, -ae, F.
wine, vīnum, -ī, N.
winter, hiems, hiemis, F.; **in winter,** hieme.
wise, sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis.
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *prep. with abl.*
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, F.
work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.
yesterday, herī, *adv.*
young man, juvenis, -is, M.
your, *of one person,* tuus, -a, -um; *of more than one person,* vester, -tra, -trum.

INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections, unless page reference is specified.)

ā, *ab*, with ablative, 126 *b*.
as prefix, 180, 288.
ABLATIVE CASE, absolute, 399-403.
of accompaniment, 264-265.
of agent, 264-265.
of cause, App. 45 (12).
of degree of difference, App. 45 (9).
of description, 430.
of manner, App. 45 (6).
of means, 263-265.
of respect, App. 45 (10).
of separation, App. 45 (1).
of time at which, 328.
with prepositions, 55, 126 *b*.
with *ūtor*, etc., App. 45 (13).
ACCENT, p. xv.
ACCUSATIVE CASE, as direct object, 26.
of duration of time, 329.
of extent, 441.
with prepositions, 137.
ad, with accusative, see ACCUSATIVE.
as prefix, 180, 233-234, 288.
ADJECTIVES, defined, (3) p. xix.
agreement of, 18, 25, 32, 39, 56, 87, 93, 112.
comparison of, 431, 433, 434, 435
declension of comparatives, 432
numeral, cardinal, 423-424.
ordinal, 447.
interrogative, 161-162.
position of, 14.
possessive, 18 *a*, 120.
predicate, (9) p. 5, 410 *a*.
substantive use of, 113.
first and second declension of, 111, 118.
third declension of, 306-307, 312.
ADVERB, defined, (11) p. 8.
comparison of, 437-438.
formation of, 436, 438.
AGREEMENT, of adjectives, 18, 25, 32, 39, 56, 87, 93, 112.
of appositives, 62.
of participles, 235.
of relative pronouns, 301.
of verbs, (19) p. 28.
aliquis, declension of, 392.
alius, genitive and dative of, 255 *a*.
ALPHABET, p. xiii.
ante, with accusative, 137.
ANTECEDENT, defined, (5) p. xx.
APPOSITION, and appositive, defined (18) p. 23.
cases in apposition, 62.
ARTICLE, defined, (3) *a*, p. xx.
lack of in Latin, 13.
ASSIMILATION OF CONSONANTS, 233-234, 289-291.
CARDINAL NUMERALS, 423-424.
CASE, defined, (13) p. 10.
of English nouns and pronouns, (13) p. 10.
names of Latin cases, 26, 32, 39.
CASE ENDINGS, first declension, 24, 37, 59, 61.
second declension, 104, 105, 106.
third declension, 105, 202.
fourth declension, 317.
fifth declension, 415.
castra, form and meaning, 126 *a*.
circum, as prefix, 180-181, 288.
coepī, use of, 325 *a*.
COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES, declension of, 432.
COMPARISON, of adjectives, 431 433-435.
of adverbs, 437-438.
COMPOUND VERBS, with dative, 429
CONJUGATION, first, 76, 77, 123 154, 155, 167, 184, 225, 246, 247, 358, 359, 370, 371.
second, 143, 144, 154, 155, 167, 184, 225, 246, 247, 358, 359, 370, 371.
third, 252, 258, 276, 292.
fourth, 270, 276, 292.
see under *eō*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *possum*, *sum*, *volō*.

CONJUNCTIONS, defined, (15) p. 17.
cum, preposition, with ablative, 55.
enclitic, 351 *c*.
as a prefix, 289.

DATIVE CASE, with adjectives, 48.
with compound verbs, 429.
with special verbs, 377.
as indirect object, 37, 39.
position of, 49 (2).
DECLENSION, defined, 83 *a*.
how determined, 61 *a*.
first declension, 59, 61.
second, 83, 84, 92, 98, 99, 104, 106.
third, 200, 201, 207, 212, 213, 218, 219.
fourth, 317.
fifth, 415.
of comparative adjectives, 432.
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES, 132, 149, 172.
DEPONENT VERBS, defined, 440.
DERIVATIVES, English, from Latin, 5-9, 68-70, 130-131, 233-234, 288-291, 337.
DESCRIPTION, ablative of, 430.
genitive of, 430 *a*.
"do" in negative sentences, 19.
duo, declension of, 424.

ego, declension of, 351.
EMPHATIC FORMS OF ENGLISH VERBS, 76 *a*.
ENCLITICS, 351 *c*, 379 *a*, 382.
eō, conjugation of, 322, 340.
compounds of, 323.
ē, *ex*, with ablative case, 55.
use of in distinction from *ā* and *ab*, 126 *b*.
as a prefix, 131, 181.
EXPLETIVE "there" not translated into Latin, 54.

ferō, conjugation of, App. 36.
fīō, conjugation of, 439.
FUTURE TENSE, see TENSE.
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, see TENSE.

GENDER, of nouns and pronouns, (22) p. 34.
in first declension, 85.
in second declension, 86.
in third declension, 219.
in fourth declension, 317.
in fifth declension, 415 *a*.
GENITIVE CASE, English, defined, (13) p. 10; 32.
Latin genitive defined, 31-32.
of description, 430 *a*.
of possession, 31.
of the whole, App. 42 (2).
position of, 49 (1).
GERUND, defined, 445.
declension of, 445.
uses of, 445.
GRAMMAR, elementary principles of, (1)-(25).

hic, declension of, 132.
as adjective, 132.
as pronoun, 174.

īdem, declension of, 364.
ille, declension of, 149.
as adjective, 149.
as pronoun, 174.
IMPERATIVE MOOD, defined, 338.
conjugation of, 339-340.
IMPERFECT TENSE, see TENSE.
IMPERSONAL VERBS, 416-418.
in, preposition with ablative, 55.
as a prefix, 290.
in-, inseparable prefix, 291.
INDICATIVE MOOD, defined, 123 *b*, App. 47.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 408-410.
INDIRECT OBJECT, defined, (14) p. 14.
dative of, in Latin, 37, 39.
English phrase with "to" as equivalent, 38.
INFINITIVE MOOD, defined, (21) p. 31.
future, 444.
present, of regular verbs, 77, 143, 294.
past, of regular verbs, 247.
of deponent verbs, 440.
of *sum*, 189 *a*.
complementary, App. 49 (1).
in indirect discourse, 409.
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE, 160-162.
INTRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, (20) p. 29.
ipse, declension of, App. 25.

is, declension of, 172.
as adjective, 173.
as pronoun, 172-173, 352.

Latin, in ancient times, 1.
modern Latin (Romance languages), 2-4.
Latin Element in English, 5.
Latin terms in law and medicine, 7.
forms of English derivatives from Latin, 8-9.
new words from Latin, 6.
licet, use of, 416, 418.

meus, use of, 350.
Mood, see Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive.
"my," an adjective in Latin, 18 *a*.

-ne, sign of a question, 382.
Nominative Case, defined, (13) p. 10.
as subject, 26.
in predicate, (9) p. 5, 12, 410 *a*.
nōnne, sign of a question, 382.
nōs, declension of, 351.
noster, use of, 350.
Noun, defined, (1) p. xix.
num, sign of a question, 382.
Number, of nouns and pronouns, (12) p. 10.
of verbs, (19) p. 28.
Numerals, adjectives, cardinal, 423-424.
ordinal, 447.

ob, as a prefix, 233-234.
Object, direct, defined, (10) p. 5; 12.
accusative of, 26.
Object, indirect, defined, (14) p. 14.
dative of, 37.
phrases in English equivalent to, 38.
oportet, use of, 416-417.
Order of Words, in Latin, 14, 49.
verb and adjective, 14.
position of genitive, 49 (1).
position of dative, 49 (2).
Ordinal Numerals, 447.

Participles, defined, (25) p. 98.
agreement of, 235.
future, 442-443.
past, 235.
present, 393.
declension of, 394.
use of, 394 *a*.
Past Perfect Tense, see Tense.
Perfect Tense, see Tense.
Person of Nouns and Pronouns, (16) p. 19.
of verbs, (19) p. 28.
Personal Endings of Verbs in Latin, active, 78.
passive, 124.
in perfect tense, 225 *b*.
Personal Pronouns, 350-352.
Possessives, of the first and second persons, 18 *a*, 120.
of the third person, reflexive, 194.
of third person, not reflexive, 195.
omission of, 195 *a*.
possum, conjugation of, 345.
Predicate, defined, (9) p. 5.
adjective, (9) p. 5; 410 *a*.
noun, (9) p. 5; 12, 410 *a*.
Prefixes, inseparable, 182, 291.
changes in spelling, 183.
prepositions as, 131, 180, 181, 233, 234, 288, 290.
Prepositions, defined, (17) p. 21.
with English nouns, (17) p. 21.
with Latin ablative, 55, 126 *b*.
with Latin accusative, 137.
as prefixes, 131, 180, 181, 183, 233, 234, 288-290.
Present Tense, see Tense.
Principal Parts of Verbs, 240, 241, 243, 245, 253.
Progressive Forms of English Verbs, 76 *a*, 123 *a*, 154, 394 *a*.
Pronoun, defined, (4) p. xx.
omitted in Latin as subject, 44.
antecedent of, (5) p. xx.
classes of, (6) p. xx.
interrogative, 160, 162.
personal, declension of, 351.
use of, 350, 352.
reflexive, 281-282.
relative, 299-301.

Pronunciation, xiii-xix.
Roman method, xiii-xv.
English method, xvi-xix.

-que, enclitic use of, 379 *a*.
Questions, forms of with *-ne*, *nōnne*, *num*, 382.
quīdam, declension of, 390.
quis, declension of, 160, 162.
quisquam, declension of, 446.
quisque, declension of, 448.
Quotations, see Indirect Discourse.

Reflexive Pronouns, 281-282.
Relative Pronouns, 299-301.
Romance Languages, 2-4.
numerals, from Latin, 388.

Signs of Tenses, see Tense.
Special Verbs with the Dative, 377.
Stem of Verbs, present, 242.
perfect, 242.
participial, 242.
use of, 244.
sub, with ablative and accusative, 277*a*.
Subject, defined, (8) p. 4; 12.
Substantive Use of Adjectives, 113.
Suffixes, Latin, 335-336.
sum, conjugation of, 71, 189, 226, 247, 340.
suus, use of, 194.
Synopsis of Verbs, 372.

Tense, defined, (24) pp. 62-63.
present, 71, 76, 123, 144, 270.
imperfect, 154-155, 167, 276.
imperfect and perfect distinguished, 227.
future, 184 *a*, 293.
perfect, 224, 225, 246, 271; personal endings of, 225 *b*.
past perfect, 357-359.
future perfect, 369, 370, 371.
signs of tenses, imperfect, 155 *a*; future, 184 *a*, 293; past perfect, 358; future perfect, 370.
"there," as an expletive, 54.
Time, at which, ablative, 328.
duration, accusative, 329.
"to," in English phrases equivalent to indirect objects, 38.
in English phrases denoting place to which, 138.
in English phrases after verbs of motion, 138.
Transitive Verbs, defined, (20) p. 29.
trēs, declension of, 424.
tū, declension of, 351.
tuus, use of, 350.

Verbs, defined, (2) p. xix.
agreement of, (19) p. 28.
number of, (19) p. 28.
person of, (19) p. 28.
transitive and intransitive, defined, (20) p. 29.
compound verbs with dative, 429.
deponent verbs, 440.
impersonal verbs, 416-418.
position of, 14.
vester, use of, 350.
vir, declension of, 104 *a*.
vīs, declension of, App. 7(3).
Vocative Case, defined, 105.
form of, 105, 389.
Voice, defined, (23) p. 49.
volō, conjugation of, 391.
vōs, declension of, 351.

Word Order, 14, 49.
Word Study, 68-70, 130-131, 180-183, 233-234, 288-291, 335-337.

"yes," how expressed in Latin, 382 *b*.
"you," English uses and Latin equivalents, 71 *a*.
"your," an adjective in Latin, 18 *a*.

YB 36262

605550

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY